Acta Numerica (2012), pp. 89–305
doi:10.1017/S0962492912000037
© Cambridge University Press, 2012
Printed in the United Kingdom

Numerical-asymptotic boundary integral methods in high-frequency acoustic scattering*

Simon N. Chandler-Wilde[1]
Ivan G. Graham[2]
Stephen Langdon[1]
Euan A. Spence[2]

[1] *Department of Mathematics and Statistics,*
University of Reading,
Reading RG6 6AX, UK
E-mail: {S.N.Chandler-Wilde,S.Langdon}@reading.ac.uk

[2] *Department of Mathematical Sciences,*
University of Bath,
Bath BA2 7AY, UK
E-mail: {I.G.Graham,E.A.Spence}@bath.ac.uk

In this article we describe recent progress on the design, analysis and implementation of hybrid numerical-asymptotic boundary integral methods for boundary value problems for the Helmholtz equation that model time harmonic acoustic wave scattering in domains exterior to impenetrable obstacles. These hybrid methods combine conventional piecewise polynomial approximations with high-frequency asymptotics to build basis functions suitable for representing the oscillatory solutions. They have the potential to solve scattering problems accurately in a computation time that is (almost) independent of frequency and this has been realized for many model problems. The design and analysis of this class of methods requires new results on the analysis and numerical analysis of highly oscillatory boundary integral operators and on the high-frequency asymptotics of scattering problems. The implementation requires the development of appropriate quadrature rules for highly oscillatory integrals. This article contains a historical account of the development of this currently very active field, a detailed account of recent progress and, in addition, a number of original research results on the design, analysis and implementation of these methods.

* Colour online for monochrome figures available at journals.cambridge.org/anu.

CONTENTS

1	Introduction	90
2	BVPs and integral equation formulations	100
3	Asymptotics and hybrid approximation spaces	146
4	Numerical treatment of oscillatory integrals	168
5	Conditioning and coercivity	195
6	Error analysis	227
7	Numerical results	245
Appendix: Function spaces on Lipschitz domains		269
References		290

1. Introduction

Acoustic, elastic and electromagnetic wave scattering problems arise in many applications of mathematical, physical and engineering interest, including the modelling of radar, sonar, noise barrier design and atmospheric particle scattering. Often the scattering problem comprises the forward map in the formulation of an inverse problem, for example in non-destructive testing or in methods for detecting hydrocarbon-bearing deposits under the sea bed. While in general the scattered wave has to be found in an inhomogeneous medium, there are a substantial number of applications in which the material is either homogeneous or piecewise homogeneous, at least sufficiently far away from the scatterer. In these cases boundary integral equation (BIE) methods are of considerable interest and form the basis for several commercial scattering codes; see, for example, Chew *et al.* (2004).

This review focuses on the efficient solution of high-frequency acoustic scattering problems in homogeneous media, using integral equation methods. Hence we consider the Helmholtz equation,

$$\Delta u + k^2 u = 0, \tag{1.1}$$

in a domain $\Omega_+ := \mathbb{R}^d \backslash \overline{\Omega_-}$, $d = 2$ or 3, where Ω_- is some bounded open set with surface Γ, and (1.1) is to be solved subject to some suitable boundary condition on Γ and radiation condition in the far field. The Helmholtz equation is of course derived from the linear wave equation under the assumption that all quantities vary harmonically ($\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega t}$) in time. Here ω is the angular frequency and $k := \omega/c > 0$ is the wavenumber, where c is the speed of sound.

The problem (1.1) has solutions which oscillate in space with wavelength $\lambda = 2\pi/k$. For example the plane waves $u(x) = \exp(\mathrm{i}kx \cdot \hat{a})$, where $\hat{a} \in \mathbb{R}^d$ is a unit vector, are solutions. The number of oscillations grows linearly in

k and so the application of conventional (piecewise polynomial) boundary elements to this problem leads to full matrices of dimension at least $N = O(k^{d-1})$ and a solution time of this order or worse as $k \to \infty$. (Domain finite elements lead to sparse matrices but require even larger N.) Since this lack of robustness with respect to increasing values of k puts high-frequency problems beyond the reach of many standard algorithms, much recent research has been devoted to finding more robust methods.

Of course, saying that k, which has dimension 1/length, is large is meaningless without reference to the size of the scatterer. The dimensionless quantity that *can* meaningfully be thought of as quantifying the oscillatory character of our problem is kL, where L is an appropriate characteristic length of the scattering surface Γ (*e.g.*, the diameter of Γ). Thus a problem can be highly oscillatory even if k is not large provided that L is sufficiently large. But without loss of generality, throughout the review we consider k as the relevant large parameter, equivalently assuming that the unit of length is chosen so that the surface Γ has characteristic length $O(1)$.

The aim of this review is to describe a currently very active area of research which seeks algorithms for scattering problems which (ideally) have bounded error for fixed computational effort as $k \to \infty$, and have computational complexity which is either independent of k, or grows only mildly as k increases. To achieve this aim, the methods we describe explicitly build into the numerical method a certain amount of asymptotic information about the oscillatory nature of the solution as $k \to \infty$, and seek to approximate only the slowly varying components by (piecewise) polynomials. By now these methods have been supported by substantial theoretical justification, as we shall describe.

It is well known that the scattering problem described above is in general a multiscale problem. Figure 1.1 illustrates the resulting total field $u := u^I + u^S$ induced by a scatterer Ω_- composed of the union of a disk and a triangle, when the incident field u^I is a plane wave $u^I(x) = \exp(\mathrm{i}kx \cdot \hat{a})$, with unit incident direction $\hat{a}$. The scattered field u^S is found as the solution of the classical 'sound-soft' scattering problem, that is, u^S satisfies (1.1) in Ω_+, the Dirichlet condition $u^S = -u^I$ (and so $u = 0$) on the scattering surface Γ (in this case the union of the circle and the boundary of the triangle) and, in addition, u^S satisfies the usual Sommerfeld radiation condition (given by (2.9)) in the far field. While the incident field u^I oscillates on the single scale k^{-1}, the total field u contains several other scales coming from the scattered field u^S. These include scales of $k^{-1/2}$ (respectively $k^{-1/3}$) associated with widths of zones of transition from illuminated to shadow regions behind diffracting corners (respectively tangency points) These oscillatory and multiscale properties of scattered fields – known for many years in the asymptotics literature – are described in a form useful for numerical analysis in Section 3 of this review.

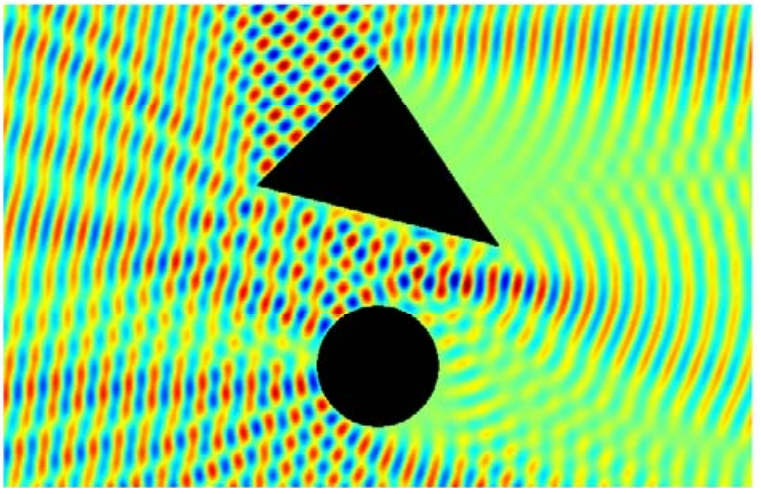


Figure 1.1. The total field when the incident field is a plane wave in the direction $\hat{a} = (\cos\theta, \sin\theta)$, with $\theta = -\pi/18$, and the wavelength is $\lambda = 0.2$ (so $k = 2\pi/\lambda = 10\pi \approx 31.42$). The scatterer has two components, a disk of unit diameter and a triangle.

To formulate BIEs for (1.1), we introduce the standard fundamental solution of the Helmholtz equation, given, in the two-dimensional (2D) and three-dimensional (3D) cases, by

$$\Phi_k(x,y) := \begin{cases} \dfrac{\mathrm{i}}{4} H_0^{(1)}(k|x-y|), & d=2, \\ \dfrac{\exp(\mathrm{i}k|x-y|)}{4\pi|x-y|}, & d=3, \end{cases} \tag{1.2}$$

for $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^d$, $x \neq y$, where $H_\nu^{(1)}$ denotes the Hankel function of the first kind of order ν. Using Φ_k, we can build layer potentials that provide solutions to (1.1) in the exterior domain Ω_+, and automatically satisfy the radiation condition at infinity. These potentials conveniently also provide solutions to (1.1) in the interior domain Ω_-. In general all the standard boundary value problems (BVPs) for the Helmholtz equation (1.1) can be formulated as integral equations on Γ using these layer potentials.

For example, in the case of sound-soft scattering, the solution u is fully determined on Ω_+ by its Neumann data $\partial u/\partial n$ on Γ; see Section 2 for details. Moreover the 'far-field' behaviour of u (often of interest in the solution of inverse scattering problems) can be determined by the action of a simple oscillatory linear operator applied to the Neumann data. The required Neumann data can be obtained, for example, by solving the combined potential

integral equation

$$\frac{1}{2}\frac{\partial u}{\partial n}(x) + \int_\Gamma \left(\frac{\partial \Phi_k(x,y)}{\partial n(x)} - \mathrm{i}\eta \Phi_k(x,y) \right) \frac{\partial u}{\partial n}(y)\, \mathrm{d}s(y) = f_{k,\eta}(x), \quad x \in \Gamma, \tag{1.3}$$

where, throughout the review, we adopt the convention that the normal derivative is taken outward from Ω_-, and the source term is given by

$$f_{k,\eta}(x) := \frac{\partial u^I}{\partial n}(x) - \mathrm{i}\eta u^I(x), \quad x \in \Gamma. \tag{1.4}$$

The problem (1.3) is well-posed for any fixed choice of the coupling parameter $\eta \in \mathbb{R}\backslash\{0\}$ (see Theorem 2.46). We write (1.3) more compactly as

$$A'_{k,\eta} v := \left(\frac{1}{2} I + D'_k - \mathrm{i}\eta S_k \right) v = f_{k,\eta}, \quad \text{where} \quad v := \partial u/\partial n. \tag{1.5}$$

The operators S_k, D'_k and $A'_{k,\eta}$ will be discussed in detail in Section 2.

Turning to numerical methods, for an operator equation of the general form $Av = f$ posed in $L^2(\Gamma)$, the Galerkin method consists of choosing a finite-dimensional approximating space $\mathcal{V}_N$ and then seeking an approximate solution $v_N \in \mathcal{V}_N$ such that

$$(Av_N, w_N)_{L^2(\Gamma)} = (f, w_N)_{L^2(\Gamma)}, \quad \text{for all } w_N \in \mathcal{V}_N. \tag{1.6}$$

For the discretization of the second-kind integral equation (1.5) there is a classical theory, which holds at least when Γ is sufficiently smooth and when the approximating space consists of piecewise polynomials. Suppose that we solve (1.5) using the Galerkin method (1.6) on a family of N-dimensional spaces $\mathcal{V}_N$ of piecewise polynomial functions of fixed degree on a quasi-uniform sequence of meshes on Γ with diameter $h \to 0$ (so that N is proportional to h^{1-d}). Then it can be shown, using the methods in Atkinson (1997), for example, that there exist constants $C > 0$ and $N_0 > 0$ such that the Galerkin solution v_N satisfies the quasi-optimal error estimate

$$\|v - v_N\| \leq C \inf_{w_N \in \mathcal{V}_N} \|v - w_N\|, \tag{1.7}$$

for all $N \geq N_0$, where here and throughout this review $\|\cdot\|$ represents $\|\cdot\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}$, unless otherwise specified. (This theory also extends to some collocation and, with the addition of quadrature, Nyström-like methods.) However, the classical theory does not tell us how C and N_0 depend on k.

These subtle questions are discussed in some detail in Section 6.1 of this review, but we can easily see that the error $\|v - v_N\|$ will be highly k-dependent. This is because v is in general oscillatory, and the jth derivative of v will, roughly speaking, be $O(k^j)$ times bigger than v itself. Thus, using standard estimates for piecewise polynomial approximation of degree p, the

error in best approximation appearing on the right-hand side of (1.7) will have an estimate of the form

$$\inf_{w_N \in \mathcal{V}_N} \|v - w_N\| \leq C'(hk)^{p+1}, \tag{1.8}$$

for some constant C' (which may itself grow with k). Thus h will need to decrease with $O(k^{-1})$, and possibly faster, in order to keep the error bounded as $k \to \infty$. Hence, standard (piecewise) polynomial BEMs applied directly to approximate the oscillatory solution v of (1.5) on a surface in $\mathbb{R}^d$ will have complexity at least $O(h^{1-d}) = O(k^{d-1})$ as $k \to \infty$.

By contrast, the *hybrid numerical-asymptotic methods* which are the main subject of this review article exploit more detailed information about the oscillations in v (obtained via asymptotic analysis or exact integral representations) directly in the numerical method. Known highly oscillatory components of v are treated exactly in the algorithm, leaving only more slowly varying components to be approximated by piecewise polynomials. This yields a method which is much more 'robust' as $k \to \infty$.

One of the simplest hybrid numerical-asymptotic methods, and one which we shall discuss at length in Section 3, can be seen as an extension of the 'physical optics' (also called the 'Kirchhoff') approximation. This method assumes that the scattered wave u^S oscillates on the same scale as the incoming plane wave, leading to the ansatz

$$v(x) = kV(x,k)\exp(\mathrm{i}kx \cdot \hat{a}), \quad x \in \Gamma. \tag{1.9}$$

For some geometries (*e.g.*, smooth convex scatterers), $V(\cdot,k)$ is much less oscillatory than v, and methods based on approximating $V(\cdot,k)$ using piecewise polynomials have been proposed by a number of authors. This procedure is equivalent to approximating v using a hybrid space $\mathcal{V}_N$ with a basis consisting of products of the plane wave $\exp(\mathrm{i}kx \cdot \hat{a})$ and appropriate piecewise polynomial basis functions. Using such a hybrid space $\mathcal{V}_N$, it is possible to show that the best approximation error on the left-hand side of (1.8) increases much more slowly as $k \to \infty$ than the estimate on the right-hand side of (1.8) (which holds for conventional piecewise polynomial spaces). Thus good approximation for large k on relatively coarse meshes (and with relatively few degrees of freedom) can potentially be achieved by hybrid methods.

Unfortunately the benefits of these hybrid methods do not come without cost. When the mesh is fairly coarse and k is large, integration of the kernel of S_k or D'_k over the support of a basis function requires computing an oscillatory integral. The additional oscillations arising via the basis functions further complicate these integrals, which have to be evaluated with a work count growing at worst modestly in k if the overall algorithm is to be

successful. Hence this field requires a substantial investment in research into numerical methods for oscillatory integrals; see Section 4 for details.

To do a full numerical analysis of hybrid methods, not only do we require good estimates for the best approximation error (on the right-hand side of (1.7)), but also we need k-explicit estimates for the constants N_0 and C in (1.7). This issue is discussed in Sections 5 and 6.

Summarizing these points, one can think of the numerical analysis of hybrid methods as requiring research on three related questions.

Q1 The design of k-dependent finite-dimensional approximation spaces $\mathcal{V}_N$, with the property that the best approximation error, that is, $\inf_{w_N \in \mathcal{V}_N} \|v - w_N\|$, remains within a given tolerance as $k \to \infty$, with N fixed or growing only slowly with k.

Q2 The design of k-robust methods for computing the oscillatory integrals arising in implementation.

Q3 The proof of sharp estimates for the dependence on k of the 'stability constant' C and the space dimension threshold N_0, ideally showing that these grow only slowly as $k \to \infty$.

This review describes research on these three fundamental issues and related topics, and we summarize its contents here. In Section 2 we describe fundamental solvability results on the relevant BVPs for (1.1) and the reformulation of these BVPs as BIEs, including new BIE formulations that have recently been proposed for high-frequency scattering problems. Given that many scatterers in applications involve corners and edges, we work on general Lipschitz domains. Background results for this section, some of which are not easily found in the literature, are given as an appendix. Section 3 describes the design of good hybrid spaces for a range of scattering problems and the proof of k-robustness of the best approximation error for these spaces (**Q1**). While this section is concerned mostly with 2D problems, hybrid spaces for a class of 3D screen problems are also discussed later in Section 7.6. In Section 4 the question of robust computation of oscillatory integrals which arise in hybrid methods is considered (**Q2**), and rigorous error estimates for these integration schemes, which have been the subject of recent research, are described. Section 5 describes the recently very active field which seeks k-explicit bounds on the conditioning of integral operators such as that in (1.5) (in particular, bounds on the operator, bounds on its inverse, coercivity properties, *etc.*). These results are required for estimating the constants N_0 and C appearing in the formulation of **Q3** above. This is done in Section 6, which in fact gives error estimates for standard as well as hybrid boundary element methods, valid as $k \to \infty$. Finally, Section 7 presents a series of illustratory numerical examples, supporting the estimates of Section 6 and showing that, for a range of scattering

problems, arbitrary accuracy is achieved with a computational cost that grows only very mildly with respect to k.

We finish this introduction with some historical remarks on the development of hybrid numerical-asymptotic methods, concluding with some remarks on other methods for the accurate solution of high-frequency scattering problems.

Methods that combine numerical and asymptotic approaches in order to reduce computational cost have been applied within the electromagnetics community for many years. Two papers dating back to 1975 suggest reducing the computational cost at high frequencies by splitting the boundary into different regions, and using numerical methods in some regions and asymptotic approximations in others (Thiele and Newhouse 1975, Burnside, Yu and Marhefka 1975). The BIE method proposed in Burnside *et al.* (1975), for an electromagnetic problem equivalent to plane wave scattering by a sound-hard square, can sensibly be viewed as a prototype of the methods that we develop for scattering by convex polygons in Section 3.3 (and see Sections 7.2–7.4). The related method proposed in Thiele and Newhouse (1975) is a first instance of what has become a popular hybrid BIE-based methodology, whereby high-frequency physical optics approximations (see (3.4) below) are employed on part of the scattering surface, and standard BEM approximations on the remainder, with coupling between these subdomains: see Djordjević and Notaroš (2005), Zhang *et al.* (2010) and the references therein for recent developments.

A hybrid numerical-asymptotic BIE method in exactly the sense of this article was proposed at almost the same time in the acoustics literature by Uncles. In a short proof-of-concept paper, Uncles (1976) proposed the use of essentially the ansatz (1.9), computing scattering by a sound-hard sphere using a piecewise constant approximation for the unknown $V(\cdot, k)$. This hybrid BIE idea (approximating the ratio of scattered to incident field rather than the scattered field itself) was used for the 2D problem of scattering by an impedance half-plane (which we treat with more sophisticated hybrid methods in Section 3.2), by Chandler-Wilde (1988), with numerical results demonstrating the efficiency of this approach at moderate frequencies.

Essentially the same hybrid BIE method to that in Uncles (1976) was proposed independently in the electromagnetics literature in James (1990). Numerical results for the case of a circular scatterer (solving the integral equations (2.109) and (2.111) below) again demonstrated a significant reduction in the number of unknowns required compared to a conventional BEM. A more elaborate method, using hybrid spaces which are close to but less sophisticated than those described below in Sections 3.3.1–3.3.2, was proposed by Wang (1991), whose numerical results demonstrate some accuracy for a number of 2D geometries. The work of Aberegg and Peterson (1995) developed the methods of Uncles and Wang. To tackle 2D problems

of electromagnetic scattering by piecewise smooth convex obstacles, solving the Helmholtz equation (1.1), they used the same ansatz (1.9) but introduced a number of aspects that are key to the effective implementation of hybrid methods and which we will study in some detail in Section 3, namely higher-order basis functions, the treatment of corner singularities (via special basis functions in Aberegg and Peterson (1995)), and the use of mesh grading. They report, for many geometries, reasonably accurate results ($\leq 3.5\%$ relative error) with ten times fewer degrees of freedom compared to standard BEMs, and note that the method is robust in that, in cases where the ansatz (1.9) does not capture accurately the oscillation in the solution, the method should in any case be no less accurate for the same number of degrees of freedom than conventional BEMs.

Since 1994 there has been significant numerical analysis interest in hybrid methods for scattering problems, with the majority of investigations focusing (either implicitly or explicitly) on the case of a smooth convex obstacle. This started with the contributions of Abboud *et al.* (1994, 1995), who considered (1.1) subject to an impedance boundary condition on Γ, and formulated this as a first-kind BIE, somewhat different to (1.3) (see (3.10) for details). The ansatz (1.9) was then applied, with the 'slow variable' $V(\cdot, k)$ being approximated using the h-version BEM. This analysis and numerical scheme was subsequently developed by Darrigrand (2002), who proposed fast multipole-based methods to evaluate the oscillatory integrals that arise.

A more advanced approach than that taken by Abboud, Nédélec and Zhou (1995), taking special care to approximate $V(\cdot, k)$ accurately near the shadow boundary (see Section 3 for details), was proposed by Bruno, Geuzaine, Monro and Reitich (2004). They developed a high-frequency Nyström approach, substituting (1.9) directly into (1.5) to obtain a second-kind integral equation for the slow variable $V(\cdot, k)$ (see (3.11)), and then devising a frequency-robust, fast quadrature method for discretizing the corresponding integral operators. This was extended further, with strong emphasis on integration in 3D problems, by Bruno and Geuzaine (2007). At around the same time, Giladi and Keller (2004) – see also Giladi (2007) (following earlier work by Giladi and Keller (2001) on finite element methods) – solved the same equation considered by Bruno *et al.* (2004) using a collocation method, but also took into account the exponentially damped 'creeping waves' behind the shadow boundary. Subsequently Huybrechs and Vandewalle (2006) developed steepest descent-based methods for oscillatory integration and applied these in the implementation of a collocation-type scheme for the BIE (2.109), again using the ansatz (1.9) (Huybrechs and Vandewalle 2007*b*), with the advantage that their approach leads to a sparse linear system.

The same problem of scattering by a sound-soft smooth convex 2D obstacle was considered in Domínguez, Graham and Smyshlyaev (2007), where the ansatz (1.9) was again used. By extending the asymptotic analysis of Melrose and Taylor (1985), Domínguez *et al.* were able to derive rigorous estimates demonstrating that their Galerkin method achieved an error that depended only very mildly on k (see Section 3.1).

For the problem of scattering by an impedance half-plane (see Section 3.2), Chandler-Wilde, Langdon and Ritter (2004), and then Langdon and Chandler-Wilde (2006), proposed and analysed a hybrid Galerkin BEM, proving rigorous error estimates independent of k, as $k \to \infty$. These ideas were extended to scattering by sound-soft convex polygons (Chandler-Wilde and Langdon 2007, Hewett, Langdon and Melenk 2012), curvilinear polygons (Langdon, Mokgolele and Chandler-Wilde 2010), convex polygons with impedance boundary conditions (Chandler-Wilde, Langdon and Mokgolele 2012*b*), and non-convex polygons (Chandler-Wilde, Hewett, Langdon and Twigger 2012*a*), and are described in detail in Sections 3.3 and 3.4.

A Galerkin method in the same spirit, utilizing a high-frequency ansatz similar to those described in Section 3, was applied to the 2D problem of scattering by a flat strip in Davis and Chew (2008), with numerical results suggesting only a very mild dependence of the error on the frequency.

For the case of scattering by a smooth convex obstacle in 3D, Ganesh and Hawkins (2011) again used the ansatz (1.9), and the integral equation for $V(\cdot, k)$ was solved using a discrete Galerkin method with a global polynomial basis and a specially chosen global quadrature rule to handle the oscillatory integrals.

The design of hybrid spaces for the case of multiple scattering (scattering by two or more disjoint convex scatterers) has been considered by Geuzaine, Bruno and Reitich (2005), and a detailed analysis of the phase structure of the solution has been given in Ecevit (2005), Ecevit and Reitich (2009) and Anand, Boubendir, Ecevit and Reitich (2009).

Further discussion of many of the above approaches will be given in Sections 3 and 4. Due to space considerations, this review has not been able to discuss in detail three other techniques which also address the efficient solution of high-frequency scattering problems, and here we give only a few representative references.

The first seeks fast implementations (often specifically tuned to the high-frequency case) of standard discretization methods and includes fast multipole and related fast iterative methods. Research in this direction is still very active and here we mention Rokhlin (1990), Amini and Maines (1998), Christiansen and Nédélec (2000), Farhat, Macedo and Lesoinne (2000), Bruno and Kunyansky (2001), Chandler-Wilde, Rahman and Ross (2002), Donepudi, Jin and Chew (2003), Harris and Chen (2003), Darve and Havé (2004), Livschits and Brandt (2006), Erlangga, Oosterlee and Vuik

(2006), Engquist and Ying (2007), Banjai and Hackbusch (2008), Bruno, Domínguez and Sayas (2012), Ernst and Gander (2012) and Engquist and Ying (2012).

The second is research on partition of unity and related methods in which a number of plane waves is introduced on each element in addition to standard piecewise polynomial boundary elements. These methods are accurate and rapidly convergent for general Helmholtz problems and do not require any prior knowledge of the asymptotics of the solution, but they do not enjoy the k-robustness of the hybrid methods for classes of scattering problems which we describe in this review; in particular, in each of these methods, the degrees of freedom need to increase in proportion to k^{d-1} to maintain accuracy as $k \to \infty$, just as for conventional BEMs, albeit with a lower constant of proportionality. Examples of this approach include de La Bourdonnaye (1994), Perrey-Debain, Trevelyan and Bettess (2003*a*), Perrey-Debain, Trevelyan and Bettess (2003*b*), de La Bourdonnaye and Tolentino (2004), Perrey-Debain, Laghrouche, Bettess and Trevelyan (2004), Perrey-Debain, Trevelyan and Bettess (2005), and Honnor, Trevelyan and Huybrechs (2010). There also exists an extensive literature applying similar ideas within a finite element context; see, for example, Melenk and Babuška (1996), Babuška and Melenk (1997), Cessenat and Després (1998), Monk and Wang (1999), Giladi and Keller (2001), Laghrouche, Bettess and Astley (2002), Huttunen, Monk and Kaipio (2002), Cessenat and Després (2003), Laghrouche, Bettess, Perrey-Debain and Trevelyan (2005), Buffa and Monk (2008), Gittelson, Hiptmair and Perugia (2009), Luostari, Huttunen and Monk (2009), Hiptmair, Moiola and Perugia (2011*a*) and Esterhazy and Melenk (2012).

The third is the solution of appropriate limiting problems, which are valid only if the frequency is sufficiently high (so-called 'ray tracing' methods). Considerable progress has been made on extending these to practical geometries and obtaining error estimates; see, for example, Engquist and Runborg (2003), Benamou (2003), Bleszynski, Bleszynski and Jaroszewicz (2004) and Motamed and Runborg (2009).

Finally we mention that earlier reviews on the subject matter of this article include Bruno and Reitich (2007) and Chandler-Wilde and Graham (2009).

We finish with a brief word on notations and assumed prior knowledge. Throughout we use function space notations that are explained in the Appendix (with cross-referencing from other sections). This use is mild in the more algorithmic Sections 3, 4, and 7, and more pronounced in Sections 2, 5, and 6, where we also need some functional analysis concepts and results which are briefly listed with references at the beginning of the Appendix. We are a little cavalier throughout as to whether we write γu (the trace of u) or $u|_\Gamma$ (the restriction of u to Γ) for the value of the total field on Γ,

and likewise whether we write $\partial_n u$ or $\partial u/\partial n$ for the normal derivative. The distinction in these definitions, and that they coincide for the scattering problems that we study, is explained in Section 2.1 (see Theorem 2.12) and Section 2.8.

2. BVPs and integral equation formulations

In this section we formulate the relevant BVPs for the Helmholtz equation, giving details as appropriate of function spaces, radiation conditions, *etc.* We also formulate BIEs, and study properties of the layer potentials and integral operators which these give rise to. We make explicit the relationship between integral equations and BVPs, in particular the conditions under which BIE and BVP formulations are equivalent.

There is much in this section regarding the theory of BIEs for acoustic problems which is not found in other reviews or monographs, in part because many of the results we describe are very recent. In particular, we develop new BIE formulations and new representations for boundary integral operators, which are essential components in the wavenumber-explicit error and stability analysis in Sections 5 and 6.

However, those readers whose primary interest is in the design of hybrid algorithms and their implementation may well prefer to start with Sections 3 and 4, which can be read largely independently of this section.

This article is concerned with scattering problems, so that our focus is naturally on exterior BVPs, that is, problems set in the unbounded exterior of a scatterer. But the theory of BIEs, particularly perhaps BIEs for acoustic problems, depends inextricably on an understanding of the well-posedness of both interior and exterior BVPs, so that necessarily we shall consider interior problems too.

When it comes to the formulation of BVPs and BIEs, there is a degree of choice in the function space setting, in the sense in which the boundary conditions are to be understood, and indeed in the class of domains that one wishes to consider. Overwhelmingly the literature of the modern theory of BIE methods and their numerical solution, especially the solution of these problems on non-smooth domains, uses Sobolev space settings, for which a standard reference is McLean (2000). There is some variation in notations and definitions in respect of Sobolev spaces. We spell out our definitions precisely in the Appendix, mainly following McLean (2000), which has become a standard reference for the theory of BIEs on Lipschitz domains, but indicating explicitly wherever our notations and definitions vary from those of McLean, in which case we usually follow Sauter and Schwab (2011).

For many of the scattering problems we consider, formulations in spaces of continuous functions, or Hölder-continuous functions, are also possible, particularly where the boundary is sufficiently smooth. A standard

reference for these is Colton and Kress (1983). We will indicate to what extent and under what conditions these formulations are equivalent in what follows. Some of the results that we wish to use and develop in this article are associated with a third setting for the BVPs, that associated with the harmonic analysis of Calderón–Zygmund operators on the boundaries of Lipschitz domains. There one studies BVPs with data in L^p spaces, understands boundary conditions to hold in a sense of almost everywhere non-tangential convergence, and supplements this with a requirement on the behaviour of maximal functions.

Much of the above material, in particular the deep results using harmonic analysis methods, is not available in an accessible form in the BIE literature, and their implications for BIE methods are not fully understood. At the same time a number of the recent results which we will describe, and which are key to a rigorous error analysis of the new boundary element methods that we will propose, make essential use of these methods of analysis. For this reason the Appendix includes a brief account of these results, which use function spaces specified in terms of maximal functions, and of the relationship of these function spaces to usual Sobolev spaces.

2.1. Acoustic boundary value problems

All the BVPs that we consider are for the Helmholtz equation (1.1) with wavenumber k, which arises in acoustics from the wave equation, satisfied by the perturbation in pressure on an assumption of harmonic ($\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega t}$) time dependence. We will impose most often the *sound-soft* or Dirichlet boundary condition, namely that u is specified on the boundary Γ, which has been the focus of most of the theory and computation for hybrid numerical-asymptotic methods to date. We will also show numerical results and analysis for problems where an impedance boundary condition (much more widely used in acoustic modelling) is imposed. This is

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial n} - \mathrm{i}k\beta u = h \tag{2.1}$$

on Γ, where n is the normal directed outwards from the domain of propagation, and β is the *normalized admittance* of the surface. In general β is a function of position (and generally also a function of frequency ω), given by $\beta = \rho c/\zeta$, where ζ is the *surface impedance*, and ρ the density of the fluid in which the acoustic wave propagates; the product ρc is termed the *impedance* of the medium of propagation. The h in (2.1) is given; usually $h = 0$ in scattering problems whenever u denotes the total field. Physical considerations, namely the requirement that the boundary does not emit energy, imply that

$$\mathrm{Re}\,\beta \geq 0. \tag{2.2}$$

In the special case $\beta = 0$, the impedance boundary condition reduces to the Neumann or *sound-hard* boundary condition. One of many examples where (2.1) is a widely used boundary condition is in outdoor noise propagation, an application we will return to in Section 3.2, where (2.1) with $\beta = 0$ is an appropriate boundary condition on a hard road surface, while (2.1), with $\mathrm{Re}\,\beta > 0$ and frequency dependent, is a widely used model of a range of sound-absorbing outdoor surfaces; *e.g.*, Taraldsen and Jonasson (2011).

This review contains some new BIE methods which give rise to the study of a generalization of the above boundary condition. Let Z be a bounded vector field defined (at least) on the boundary Γ. The generalization we make replaces the normal derivative in the boundary condition by an oblique derivative, so that the boundary condition is

$$Z \cdot \nabla u - \mathrm{i}k\beta u = h \tag{2.3}$$

on Γ.

We will formulate all of our problems in the Sobolev space setting, and selected problems also in alternative function space settings. In the interior problems below, D is a bounded Lipschitz domain (see Definition A.2 and the paragraph that follows that definition) with boundary Γ, and γ is the trace operator (see Section A.3). We state first the *interior Dirichlet problem*:

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{Given } h \in H^{1/2}(\Gamma), \text{ find } u \in C^2(D) \cap H^1(D) \\ &\text{such that (1.1) holds in } D \text{ and } \gamma u = h \text{ on } \Gamma. \end{aligned} \tag{2.4}$$

The solvability of this standard interior problem is well understood, *e.g.*, McLean (2000, p. 286).

Theorem 2.1. There exists a sequence $0 < k_1 < k_2 < \cdots$ of positive wavenumbers, with $k_m \to \infty$ as $m \to \infty$, such that the interior Dirichlet problem with $h = 0$ has a non-trivial solution. For all other values of $k > 0$ the interior Dirichlet problem has exactly one solution.

The other interior BVPs that are relevant to us are the interior impedance problem and what we will call *the interior oblique impedance problem*, by which we will mean the Helmholtz equation subject to the boundary condition (2.3). Note that, in these Sobolev space formulations, we understand the normal derivative of u in (2.1) as $\partial_n u \in H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$, where ∂_n is the normal derivative operator defined in equation (A.28). (Of course – see (A.18) – $\partial_n u$ coincides with classical definition of the normal derivative $\partial u/\partial n$ when u is sufficiently regular.) We understand the oblique derivative $Z \cdot \nabla u$ as meaning

$$Z \cdot \nabla u = Z_n \partial_n u + Z \cdot \nabla_\Gamma \gamma u,$$

where $Z_n := Z \cdot n$ is the normal component of Z and ∇_Γ is the surface

gradient operator (see (A.14)). Thus the *interior impedance problem* is

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{Given } h \in H^{-1/2}(\Gamma), \text{ and } \beta \in L^\infty(\Gamma), \text{ find } u \in C^2(D) \cap H^1(D)\\ &\text{such that (1.1) holds in } D \text{ and } \partial_n u - \mathrm{i}k\beta\gamma u = h \text{ on } \Gamma;\end{aligned} \tag{2.5}$$

and the *interior oblique impedance problem* is

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{Given } h \in L^2(\Gamma),\ Z \in (L^\infty(\Gamma))^d, \text{ and } \beta \in L^\infty(\Gamma), \text{ find}\\ &u \in C^2(D) \cap H^1(D), \text{ with } \gamma u \in H^1(\Gamma), \text{ such that (1.1)}\\ &\text{holds in } D \text{ and } Z_n \partial_n u + Z \cdot \nabla_\Gamma \gamma u - \mathrm{i}k\beta\,\gamma u = h \text{ on } \Gamma.\end{aligned} \tag{2.6}$$

Note that the requirement, in (2.5), that $\partial_n u = h + \mathrm{i}k\beta\gamma u$ holds, means, in view of the definition of the normal derivative operator ∂_n in (A.28) and (A.29), nothing more or less than the requirement that

$$\int_\Gamma h\,\gamma v\,\mathrm{d}s + \mathrm{i}k \int_\Gamma \beta\,\gamma u\,\gamma v\,\mathrm{d}s = \int_D \big(\nabla u \cdot \nabla \bar{v} + \bar{v}\,\Delta u\big)\,\mathrm{d}x, \quad v \in H^1(D), \tag{2.7}$$

in the case that $h \in L^2(\Gamma)$. In the case that $h \in H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ but $h \notin L^2(\Gamma)$, the integral $\int_\Gamma h\,\gamma v\,\mathrm{d}s$ in (2.7) is understood as the limit

$$\int_\Gamma h\,\gamma v\,\mathrm{d}s = \lim_{j\to\infty} \int_\Gamma h_j\,\gamma v\,\mathrm{d}s,$$

where $(h_j) \subset L^2(\Gamma)$ is any sequence which is convergent to h in the $H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ norm. The boundary condition in (2.6) has an analogous interpretation to that of (2.7).

The part of the solvability theory for the interior impedance BVP that we need (Colton and Kress 1983, McLean 2000) is encapsulated in the following theorem. In the statement of this theorem we make the first reference to the following assumption.

Assumption 2.2. Either: (a) $\mathrm{Re}\,\beta \geq 0$ and $\mathrm{Re}\,\beta > 0$ on some relatively open subset of Γ; or: (b) $\mathrm{Re}\,\beta \leq 0$ and $\mathrm{Re}\,\beta < 0$ on some relatively open subset of Γ.

Theorem 2.3.

(i) Suppose that Assumption 2.2 holds. Then the interior impedance problem has exactly one solution.

(ii) Suppose that $\beta = 0$ (the Neumann boundary case). Then there exists a sequence $0 = k_1 < k_2 < \cdots$ of positive wavenumbers, with $k_m \to \infty$ as $m \to \infty$, such that the interior impedance problem with $h = 0$ has a non-trivial solution. For all other values of $k > 0$ the interior impedance problem with $\beta = 0$ has exactly one solution.

The existence statement in (i) can be obtained by a variety of arguments, not least by BIE methods as a corollary of Theorem 2.30 below. The uniqueness statement in (i) is a consequence of (2.7). In more detail, if u_1 and u_2 are solutions of (2.5) then, defining $u := u_1 - u_2$, it follows from (2.7) applied with $v = u$, since $\Delta u = -k^2 u$, that

$$\mathrm{i}k \int_\Gamma \beta \, |\gamma u|^2 \, \mathrm{d}s = \int_D \left(|\nabla u|^2 - k^2 |u|^2 \right) \mathrm{d}x. \tag{2.8}$$

Taking imaginary parts, we see that $\int_\Gamma \mathrm{Re}\, \beta |\gamma u|^2 \, \mathrm{d}s = 0$, so that in case (i) we deduce that γu vanishes on some relatively open subset of Γ. Since $\partial_n u = \mathrm{i}k\beta\gamma u$, it follows that $\partial_n u$ vanishes on the same open subset of Γ. By the following version of Holmgren's uniqueness theorem it follows that u is identically zero and so $u_1 = u_2$.

Theorem 2.4. Suppose that D is a bounded Lipschitz open set and that $u \in C^2(D) \cap H^1(D)$ satisfies the Helmholtz equation (1.1) in D and $\gamma u = \partial_n u = 0$ on Γ_0, some non-empty, relatively open subset of $\Gamma = \partial D$. Then $u = 0$ (in D).

Proof. Let $G = (\mathbb{R}^d \backslash \Gamma) \cup \Gamma_0$, so that G is the open set which is the union of Γ_0 and the interior and exterior of Γ. Extend the definition of u from D to G by setting $u(x) = 0$ for $x \in G \setminus D$. Then it follows from Theorem 2.20 below that u in $G \backslash \Gamma_0$ is the difference of two layer potentials, each with density that vanishes on Γ_0. Hence, by Theorem 2.14, $u \in C^2(G)$ and (1.1) holds in G. But (see, *e.g.*, Colton and Kress 1983) solutions of the Helmholtz equation in a domain are real analytic in that domain and, if they vanish in some open subset, vanish identically. Thus $u = 0$ in the component of G that includes $D \cup \Gamma_0$, and in particular $u = 0$ in D. □

Of course, the focus of this article is on solving exterior problems in unbounded domains, for which radiation conditions need to be imposed to ensure uniqueness of solution, expressing mathematically the physical idea that any acoustic field is radiating away from the physical boundary. In the case when the Helmholtz equation (1.1) holds outside some bounded set, the standard radiation condition to impose is the *Sommerfeld radiation condition*, that

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial r}(x) - \mathrm{i}ku(x) = o(r^{-(d-1)/2}), \tag{2.9}$$

as $r := |x| \to \infty$, uniformly in $\hat{x} := x/r$. The following lemma is an important consequence of this radiation condition; for a proof see, *e.g.*, Colton and Kress (1983). In this lemma, and the remainder of the article, we use the notations $B_R := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^d : |x| < R\}$, $\Gamma_R := \partial B_R = \{x : |x| = R\}$, and $\mathbb{S}^{d-1} := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^d : |x| = 1\}$.

Lemma 2.5. If, for some $R > 0$, u satisfies (1.1) in $\mathbb{R}^d \setminus \overline{B_R}$ and the Sommerfeld radiation condition (2.9), then there exists a function $F \in C^\infty(\mathbb{S}^{d-1})$ (the *far-field pattern*) such that

$$u(x) = \frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}kr}}{r^{(d-1)/2}}\big(F(\hat{x}) + O(r^{-1})\big) \tag{2.10}$$

as $r \to \infty$, uniformly in $\hat{x} := x/r$.

A consequence of Lemma 2.5 is the following lemma, derived by applying Green's first identity (A.29) to u in the domain $B_R \cap \Omega_+$ and then letting $R \to \infty$. In this lemma and for the next paragraphs up to and including Theorem 2.10, we suppose that Ω_- is a bounded Lipschitz open set such that $\Omega_+ := \mathbb{R}^d \setminus \overline{\Omega_-}$ is a Lipschitz domain with boundary $\Gamma = \partial\Omega_+$. In this configuration, as noted in Sections 1 and A.5, the normal vector n will always be taken to point out from Ω_- into Ω_+, and $H^1_{\mathrm{loc}}(\Omega_+)$ is as defined in (A.30).

Lemma 2.6. If $u \in C^2(\Omega_+) \cap H^1_{\mathrm{loc}}(\Omega_+)$ and u satisfies the Helmholtz equation (1.1) in Ω_+ and the Sommerfeld radiation condition (2.9), then

$$\int_{\Omega_+} \big(|\nabla u|^2 - k^2|u|^2\big)\,\mathrm{d}x = I - \int_\Gamma \gamma\bar{u}\,\partial_n u\,\mathrm{d}s \tag{2.11}$$

where

$$I := \lim_{R\to\infty} \int_{\Gamma_R} \bar{u}\,\frac{\partial u}{\partial r}\,\mathrm{d}s = \mathrm{i}k \lim_{R\to\infty} \int_{\Gamma_R} |u|^2\,\mathrm{d}s = \mathrm{i}k \int_{\mathbb{S}^{d-1}} |F(\hat{x})|^2\,\mathrm{d}\hat{x},$$

and the integral over Ω_+ in (2.11) is understood as the improper integral $\lim_{R\to\infty} \int_{B_R\cap\Omega_+} \big(|\nabla u|^2 - k^2|u|^2\big)\,\mathrm{d}x$.

We will study, in the unbounded domain Ω_+, the *exterior Dirichlet problem*:

Given $h \in H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$, find $u \in C^2(\Omega_+) \cap H^1_{\mathrm{loc}}(\Omega_+)$ such that (1.1) holds in Ω_+, $\gamma u = h$ on Γ, and u satisfies the radiation condition (2.9). (2.12)

We will also study the *exterior impedance problem*:

Given $h \in H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ and $\beta \in L^\infty(\Gamma)$, find $u \in C^2(\Omega_+) \cap$ $H^1_{\mathrm{loc}}(\Omega_+)$ such that (1.1) holds in Ω_+, $\partial_n u + \mathrm{i}k\beta u = h$ on Γ, and u satisfies the radiation condition (2.9). (2.13)

(The sign change in this impedance boundary condition compared to (2.1) is because the normal n here points *into* the domain of propagation.)

In contrast to the interior Dirichlet and Neumann problems, both problems (2.12) and (2.13) have at most one solution for all $k > 0$. This is a consequence of Lemma 2.8 below, which in turn follows from the following key lemma due to Rellich (for a proof see Colton and Kress 1983).

Lemma 2.7. (Rellich) If $u \in C^2(\Omega_+)$ satisfies (1.1) in Ω_+ and the radiation condition (2.9), and $\lim_{R\to\infty} \int_{\Gamma_R} |u|^2 \, \mathrm{d}s = 0$, then u is identically zero.

Rellich's lemma implies the following result (Colton and Kress 1983).

Lemma 2.8. If $u \in C^2(\Omega_+) \cap H^1_{\mathrm{loc}}(\Omega_+)$ satisfies (1.1) in Ω_+, the radiation condition (2.9), and

$$\mathrm{Im} \int_\Gamma \gamma \bar{u} \partial_n u \, \mathrm{d}s \leq 0,$$

then $u = 0$ (in Ω_+).

Proof. The conditions of the lemma imply, by Lemma 2.6, that

$$k \int_{\mathbb{S}^{d-1}} |F(\hat{x})|^2 \, \mathrm{d}\hat{x} = \mathrm{Im} \int_\Gamma \gamma \bar{u} \partial_n u \, \mathrm{d}s \leq 0, \tag{2.14}$$

so that $F = 0$ in $L^2(\mathbb{S}^{d-1})$. It follows from Lemma 2.6 that

$$\lim_{R\to\infty} \int_{\Gamma_R} |u|^2 \, \mathrm{d}s = 0$$

and hence, by Rellich's lemma, that $u = 0$. □

An immediate consequence of Lemma 2.8 is the following uniqueness result for the exterior Dirichlet and impedance problems.

Corollary 2.9. The exterior Dirichlet BVP (2.12) and the exterior impedance BVP (2.13), with $\mathrm{Re}\, \beta \geq 0$, each have at most one solution.

Corollary 2.9 is the uniqueness part of the following theorem.

Theorem 2.10. The exterior Dirichlet BVP and the exterior impedance BVP, with $\mathrm{Re}\, \beta \geq 0$, each have exactly one solution.

Proof. Existence follows from Corollary 2.28 below, which uses results about invertibility of boundary integral operators. □

Our prime interest in the above exterior Dirichlet and impedance problems is that they arise in the context of acoustic scattering. By acoustic scattering we mean the problem of computing the scattered acoustic field u^S produced when an incident field u^I interacts with an obstacle or obstacles (the *scatterer*) occupying some closed set Ω, such that $\Omega_+ := \mathbb{R}^d \setminus \Omega$ is an unbounded domain. By an incident field we mean the following.

Definition 2.11. We call $u^I \in L^1_{\mathrm{loc}}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ an *incident field* if, for some open neighbourhood G of Ω, $u^I|_G \in C^\infty(G)$ and satisfies the Helmholtz equation (1.1) in G. We will refer throughout to the sum $u := u^I + u^S$ as the *total acoustic field* (total field for short).

We deal exclusively with the case when Ω is bounded, except in Section 3.2. Further, except in Section 7.6, we deal exclusively with the case where $\Omega = \overline{\Omega_-}$, with Ω_-, the interior of Ω, a Lipschitz open set, in which case Γ, the surface of the scatterer, is the common boundary of Ω_+ and Ω_-.

We will focus particularly on the case when the incident field is a plane wave, that is, for some $\hat{a} \in \mathbb{R}^d$ with $|\hat{a}| = 1$,

$$u^I(x) = \exp(\mathrm{i}kx \cdot \hat{a}), \quad x \in \mathbb{R}^d.$$

However, many of our results apply to general incident fields, for example the field generated by a point source, that is, for some $z \in \mathbb{R}^d \setminus \Omega$,

$$u^I(x) = \Phi_k(x, z), \quad x \in \mathbb{R}^d \setminus \{z\},$$

where Φ_k is the fundamental solution of the Helmholtz equation defined in (1.2).

In this article we will focus on the cases of the *sound-soft scatterer* (where $u = 0$ on Γ), the *impedance scatterer*, where (2.13) with $h = 0$ holds on Γ, and the *sound-hard scatterer*, the special case of the impedance scatterer in which $\partial u/\partial n = 0$ on Γ.

Considering first the *sound-soft scattering problem*, one natural formulation, where our requirement on u^S is continuity rather than membership of a particular Sobolev space, is the following:

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{Find } u^S \in C^2(\Omega_+) \cap C(\overline{\Omega_+}) \text{ such that (1.1) holds in } \Omega_+,\ u = 0 \\ &\text{(so } u^S = -u^I \text{) on } \Gamma, \text{ and } u^S \text{ satisfies the radiation condition (2.9).}\end{aligned} \tag{2.15}$$

In the case that Ω_+ is a Lipschitz domain, a second natural formulation is to require that the scattered field u^S satisfy the exterior Dirichlet problem (2.12), with boundary data $-u^I|_\Gamma$. In other words u^S satisfies:

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{Find } u^S \in C^2(\Omega_+) \cap H^1_{\mathrm{loc}}(\Omega_+) \text{ such that (1.1) holds in } \Omega_+,\ \gamma u = 0 \\ &\text{(so } \gamma u^S = -u^I|_\Gamma \text{) on } \Gamma, \text{ and } u^S \text{ satisfies the radiation condition (2.9).}\end{aligned} \tag{2.16}$$

It is shown in Colton and Kress (1998, Theorem 3.7) that problem (2.15) has at most one solution, and the argument in the proof of that theorem shows that if u^S satisfies (2.15) and Ω_+ is Lipschitz, then u^S satisfies (2.16). Further, in the case that Ω_+ is Lipschitz, it is a corollary of Theorem 2.10 that (2.16) has exactly one solution which also satisfies (2.15); to see this it is a matter of showing that if u^S satisfies (2.16) then $u^S \in C(\overline{\Omega_+})$. This does not follow from the Sobolev embedding theorem (Theorem A.1), but is a consequence of elliptic regularity results up to the boundary; *e.g.*, Kenig (1994). Thus the following result holds.

Theorem 2.12. The Dirichlet scattering problem (2.15) has at most one solution. In the case that Ω_+ is a Lipschitz domain, (2.15) and (2.16) share the same unique solution, which satisfies $\partial_n u \in L^2(\Gamma)$.

Proof. In view of the discussion above it remains only to show that $\partial_n u \in L^2(\Gamma)$. But, by Definition 2.11, for some neighbourhood G of Γ, $u^I|_G \in C^\infty(G)$ so that $u^I|_\Gamma \in C^\infty(\Gamma) \subset H^1(\Gamma)$ (see Section A.3). Thus $\gamma u^S \in H^1(\Gamma)$, and the fact that $\partial_n u \in L^2(\Gamma)$ follows from Theorem A.5. □

We remark that, while it is common (following the lead of Colton and Kress 1983, for instance) to make use of the formulation (2.15) in the case when Ω_+ is sufficiently smooth, precisely when Ω_+ is $C^{1,\mu}$ for some $\mu \in (0,1]$, overwhelmingly the recent numerical analysis literature for the case of Lipschitz Ω_+ uses the formulation (2.16). Theorem 2.12 makes clear that the formulation (2.15) is a valid alternative even in the Lipschitz case.

Consider next the *impedance scattering problem* formulated as follows. Restricting attention to the case when Ω_+ is Lipschitz, we require that u^S satisfies the exterior impedance problem (2.13) with

$$h := -\left(\frac{\partial u^I}{\partial n} + \mathrm{i}k\beta u^I\right)\Big|_\Gamma \in L^2(\Gamma). \tag{2.17}$$

In other words, with h given by (2.17), u^S satisfies:

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{Find } u^S \in C^2(\Omega_+) \cap H^1_{\mathrm{loc}}(\Omega_+) \text{ such that (1.1) holds in}\\ &\Omega_+,\ \partial_n u + \mathrm{i}k\beta\gamma u = 0 \text{ (so } \partial_n u^S + \mathrm{i}k\beta\gamma u^S = h) \text{ on } \Gamma,\\ &\text{and } u^S \text{ satisfies the radiation condition (2.9).}\end{aligned} \tag{2.18}$$

Analogously to Theorem 2.12, an immediate corollary of Theorem 2.10 and Theorem A.5, is the following result.

Corollary 2.13. The impedance scattering problem (2.18) has exactly one solution, which satisfies $\partial_n u \in L^2(\Gamma)$ and $\gamma u \in H^1(\Gamma)$.

2.2. Layer potentials

In Section 2.5 we will formulate the BVPs in the previous subsection as BIEs. Here we introduce the required *layer potentials* and recall some of their properties.

Suppose that Ω_+ is an unbounded Lipschitz open set with boundary Γ, in which case $\Omega_- := \mathbb{R}^d \setminus \overline{\Omega_+}$ is a bounded Lipschitz open set. For $\phi \in L^1(\Gamma)$ and $k > 0$ let

$$\mathcal{S}_k\phi(x) := \int_\Gamma \Phi_k(x,y)\phi(y)\,\mathrm{d}s(y), \quad x \in \mathbb{R}^d \setminus \Gamma, \tag{2.19}$$

and

$$\mathcal{D}_k\phi(x) := \int_\Gamma \frac{\partial \Phi_k(x,y)}{\partial n(y)}\,\phi(y)\,\mathrm{d}s(y), \quad x \in \mathbb{R}^d \setminus \Gamma, \tag{2.20}$$

where the normal n is directed into Ω_+. Note that, in particular, these definitions apply for $\phi \in H^s(\Gamma)$ with $0 \le s \le 1$, since of course $H^s(\Gamma) \subset L^2(\Gamma) \subset L^1(\Gamma)$. Further, they extend in a natural way, via the duality pairing $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_\Gamma$ defined by (A.24), to the case that $\phi \in H^s(\Gamma)$ for $-1 \le s < 0$. In this case, for example, noting that $\Phi_k(x, \cdot) \in C^\infty(\Gamma) \subset H^{-s}(\Gamma)$, $\mathcal{S}_k\phi(x)$ is understood as $\mathcal{S}_k\phi(x) = \langle \Phi_k(x, \cdot), \phi \rangle_\Gamma$, and $\mathcal{D}_k\phi(x)$ is understood similarly. Equivalently, $\mathcal{S}_k\phi(x)$ and $\mathcal{D}_k\phi(x)$ can be understood as the limits

$$\mathcal{S}_k\phi(x) = \lim_{j\to\infty} \mathcal{S}_k\phi_j(x), \quad \mathcal{D}_k\phi(x) = \lim_{j\to\infty} \mathcal{D}_k\phi_j(x), \tag{2.21}$$

where $(\phi_j) \subset L^2(\Gamma)$ is any sequence converging in $H^s(\Gamma)$ to $\phi \in H^s(\Gamma)$.

We will use the above definitions also for $k = 0$ with Φ_0 given by (1.2) in the 3D case ($d = 3$). The definition (1.2) does not make sense when $d = 2$ and here we define Φ_0 by

$$\Phi_0(x, y) := \frac{1}{2\pi} \log\left(\frac{a}{|x - y|}\right), \tag{2.22}$$

for some constant $a > 0$ (the usual choice $a = 1$). In both 2D and 3D, Φ_0 is the standard fundamental solution for the Laplace equation.

Boundary integral equation methods for solving the BVPs of Section 2.1 are based on solutions in terms of layer potentials. This is effective because of the following simple result whose proof we sketch.

Theorem 2.14. For $k \ge 0$ and $\phi \in H^{-1}(\Gamma)$, $\mathcal{S}_k\phi, \mathcal{D}_k\phi \in C^2(\mathbb{R}^d \setminus \Gamma)$ and satisfy (1.1) in $\mathbb{R}^d \setminus \Gamma$. For $k > 0$, $\mathcal{S}_k\phi$ and $\mathcal{D}_k\phi$ satisfy the Sommerfeld radiation condition (2.9).

Proof. For a proof in the case that $\phi \in C(\Gamma)$, see Colton and Kress (1983). For $\mathcal{S}_k\phi$ the result follows for $\phi \in H^{-1}(\Gamma)$ since $C(\Gamma)$ is dense in $H^{-1}(\Gamma)$, so that there exists a sequence $(\phi_j) \subset C(\Gamma)$ with $\|\phi - \phi_j\|_{H^{-1}(\Gamma)} \to 0$ as $j \to \infty$, which implies that $\mathcal{S}_k\phi_j(x) \to \mathcal{S}_k\phi(x)$ uniformly on compact subsets of $\mathbb{R}^d \setminus \Gamma$, from which it follows that $\mathcal{S}_k\phi$ satisfies (1.1). In the case $k > 0$ also, for all sufficiently large R,

$$\max_{|x|\ge R} \big(|x|\,|\mathcal{S}_k\phi_j(x) - \mathcal{S}_k\phi(x)|\big) \to 0, \quad \text{as } j \to \infty,$$

from which it follows that $\mathcal{S}_k\phi$ satisfies the Sommerfeld radiation condition. The same arguments work for $\mathcal{D}_k\phi$ when $\phi \in H^{-1}(\Gamma)$. □

The above theorem, coupled with Lemma 2.5, implies that, for $k > 0$, $\mathcal{S}_k\phi$ and $\mathcal{D}_k\phi$ both have the representation (2.10) at infinity. In fact (see Colton and Kress 1998, or McLean 2000, p. 294), the far-field patterns of

$\mathcal{S}_k\phi$ and $\mathcal{D}_k\phi$ are, respectively,

$$F_{\mathcal{S}}(\hat{x}) = c_d\, k^{(d-3)/2} \int_\Gamma \exp(-\mathrm{i}k\hat{x}\cdot y)\phi(y)\,\mathrm{d}s(y) \tag{2.23}$$

and

$$F_{\mathcal{D}}(\hat{x}) = -\mathrm{i}\, c_d\, k^{(d-1)/2} \int_\Gamma \hat{x}\cdot n(y)\, \exp(-\mathrm{i}k\hat{x}\cdot y)\phi(y)\,\mathrm{d}s(y), \tag{2.24}$$

where

$$c_d = \frac{\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}(d-3)\pi/4}}{2(2\pi)^{(d-1)/2}}.$$

To derive BIEs for scattering problems, we need to supplement the above result with mapping properties of $\mathcal{S}_k$ and $\mathcal{D}_k$. In the following theorem, $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)$ is any smooth compactly supported function such that $\chi(x) = 1$ in a neighbourhood of $\Omega_- \cup \Gamma$ and, for example, $\chi\mathcal{S}_k$ denotes the composition of the operator $\mathcal{S}_k$ followed by multiplication by χ. A consequence of Theorem 2.15 is that $\mathcal{S}_k\phi \in H^1_{\mathrm{loc}}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ and that $\mathcal{D}_k\phi \in H^1_{\mathrm{loc}}(\Omega_\pm)$. (From (2.23) and (2.24) it follows that $\mathcal{S}_k\phi$ and $\mathcal{D}_k\phi$ decay too slowly at infinity for either to be in $H^1(\Omega_+)$.)

Theorem 2.15. For $-\frac{1}{2} \le s \le \frac{1}{2}$ and $k \ge 0$, the following mappings are bounded:

(i) $\chi\mathcal{S}_k : H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{s+1}(\mathbb{R}^d)$;
(ii) $\chi\mathcal{D}_k : H^{s+1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{s+1}(\Omega_\pm)$.

A proof of the above theorem for the restricted range $|s| < 1/2$, derived from the key paper by Costabel (1988), is given in McLean (2000). It depends on characterizations of the single- and double-layer potential operators in terms of the adjoints of the trace and normal derivative operators, respectively, and, in particular, depends on (A.17), which holds only for $1/2 < s < 3/2$ and not for $s = 1/2$ (even for smooth boundaries Γ). Thus the proof does not extend to $s = \pm 1/2$. This is of significance for us since, for the most part, it will be precisely the limiting cases $s = \pm 1/2$ that are of interest.

To establish the mapping properties of Theorem 2.15 for $s = \pm 1/2$ (which, as McLean notes, imply the same mapping properties for $|s| < 1/2$ by interpolation), we can use the equivalences of Corollary A.8. These, together with the standard interpolation results, imply that Theorem 2.15 is equivalent to Theorem 2.16 below. In this theorem, the so-called *non-tangential maximal functions*, u^* and $(\nabla u)^*$, are defined as in (A.36) and (A.37), except that now $\Theta(x) := \Theta_+(x) \cup \Theta_-(x)$, where $\{\Theta_\pm(x) : x \in \Gamma\}$ denotes any uniform and sufficient family of non-tangential approach sets in $\Omega_\pm$, so that $\Theta_\pm(x) \subset \Omega_\pm$, $\overline{\Theta_\pm(x)} \cap \Gamma = \{x\}$, and (A.32) holds with the same constant $C > 1$ for every $x \in \Gamma$.

Theorem 2.16. For $\phi, \psi \in H^{-1}(\Gamma)$ let $u = \mathcal{S}_k\phi$ and $v = \mathcal{D}_k\psi$. Then, for some constant $C > 0$ independent of ϕ and ψ:

(i) if $\phi \in L^2(\Gamma)$ then $(\nabla u)^* \in L^2(\Gamma)$ and $\|(\nabla u)^*\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \le C\|\phi\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}$;

(ii) if $\psi \in L^2(\Gamma)$ then $v^* \in L^2(\Gamma)$ and $\|v^*\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \le C\|\psi\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}$;

(iii) if $\phi \in H^{-1}(\Gamma)$ then $u^* \in L^2(\Gamma)$ and $\|u^*\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \le C\|\phi\|_{H^{-1}(\Gamma)}$;

(iv) if $\psi \in H^1(\Gamma)$ then $(\nabla v)^* \in L^2(\Gamma)$ and $\|(\nabla v)^*\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \le C\|\psi\|_{H^1(\Gamma)}$.

The proof of this theorem requires deep results from the harmonic analysis literature, specifically that part concerned with the study of Calderón–Zygmund operators, in particular Cauchy integral and layer-potential operators on Lipschitz curves and surfaces.

For a proof of (i) and (ii) we refer the reader to the account in Meyer and Coifman (2000) for the case $k = 0$ and Torres and Welland (1993) and Liu (1995) for the extension to $k > 0$. It is convenient to leave remarks on the proof of (iii) and (iv) (which are corollaries of (i) and (ii)) until we introduce relevant boundary integral operators in the next subsection. Note that by far the main part of the work is to establish results for $k = 0$. Extensions from $k = 0$ to $k > 0$ by perturbation arguments are relatively straightforward because $W_k := \Phi_k - \Phi_0$ is much smoother than Φ_0. Precisely, it follows easily from (1.2) and the power series expansions for Hankel functions that $W_k(x, y) = w_k(x - y)$ where $w_k \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d \setminus \{0\})$ and, for some constant $c_k > 0$,

$$|w_k(x)| + |\nabla w_k(x)| \le c_k, \quad |\partial^\alpha w_k(x)| \le \begin{cases} c_k \log\bigl(|x|^{-1}\bigr), & d = 2, \\ c_k |x|^{-1}, & d = 3, \end{cases} \tag{2.25}$$

for $|x| \le 1/2$. Here α is any multi-index with $|\alpha| = 2$ so that $\partial^\alpha w_k$ is any second-order partial derivative (we use here the notation (A.1)). The monograph of Colton and Kress (1983) is a classic example of arguing by perturbation from $k = 0$ to obtain results for $k > 0$; see also Torres and Welland (1993), Liu (1995) and Mitrea (1996).

As in Section A.5, we denote the exterior and interior trace operators by γ_+ and γ_-, and the exterior and interior normal derivative operators by ∂_n^+ and ∂_n^-, respectively, with the normal directed out of Ω_- into the exterior domain Ω_+. Applying Theorem 2.15 with $s = 0$ and Theorem 2.14, we see that, for $\phi \in H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ and $\psi \in H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$, both $\chi\mathcal{S}_k\phi$ and $\chi\mathcal{D}_k\psi$ are in $H^1(\Omega_\pm)$, in fact in $H^1(\Omega_\pm; \Delta)$. (This notation is defined below equation (A.26).) It follows from (A.17) that the traces $\gamma_\pm\mathcal{S}_k\phi$ and $\gamma_\pm\mathcal{D}_k\psi$ are well-defined as elements of $H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$, and that (see (A.28)) the normal derivatives $\partial_n^\pm\mathcal{S}_k\phi$ and $\partial_n^\pm\mathcal{D}_k\psi$ are well-defined as elements of $H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$. Moreover (McLean 2000) the following jump relations hold:

$$\gamma_+\mathcal{S}_k\phi = \gamma_-\mathcal{S}_k\phi, \quad \partial_n^+\mathcal{D}_k\psi = \partial_n^-\mathcal{D}_k\psi. \tag{2.26}$$

A natural question to ask is whether the traces and normal derivatives of the single- and double-layer potentials, $u = \mathcal{S}_k\phi$ and $v = \mathcal{D}_k\psi$, have anything to do with the limiting values of $u(x)$, $v(x)$, $\nabla u(x)$ and $\nabla v(x)$ as x approaches Γ from inside $\Omega_\pm$. Reassuringly, this is the case, at least if the densities ϕ and ψ are smooth enough. As before Theorem 2.16, for $x \in \Gamma$ let $\Theta_\pm(x)$ denote any non-tangential approach set to x from $\Omega_\pm$, so that $\Theta_\pm(x) \subset \Omega_\pm$, $\overline{\Theta_\pm(x)} \cap \Gamma = \{x\}$, and (A.32) holds. Then, if $\phi \in H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma)$ and $\psi \in H^{s+1/2}(\Gamma)$, for some $s \in (-1/2, 1/2]$, it follows from Lemma A.9 that, for almost every $x \in \Gamma$,

$$\gamma_\pm u(x) = \lim_{y\to x,\, y\in\Theta_\pm(x)} u(y) \quad \text{and} \quad \gamma_\pm v(x) = \lim_{y\to x,\, y\in\Theta_\pm(x)} v(y). \tag{2.27}$$

Further, these non-tangential limits are well-defined, by Theorem 2.16 and Corollary A.8, even for $\phi \in H^{-1}(\Gamma)$ and $\psi \in L^2(\Gamma)$, providing an extension of the notion of the traces of u and v to the cases of densities $\phi \in H^{-1}(\Gamma)$ and $\psi \in L^2(\Gamma)$.

Similarly, if $\phi \in L^2(\Gamma)$ and $\psi \in H^1(\Gamma)$ then, by Theorem 2.16 and Lemma A.10, $\partial_n^\pm u, \partial_n^\pm v \in L^2(\Gamma)$ and, for almost all $x \in \Gamma$,

$$\partial_n^\pm u(x) = \frac{\partial u_\pm}{\partial n}(x) := \lim_{y\to x,\, y\in\Theta_\pm(x)} n(x)\cdot\nabla u(y) \tag{2.28}$$

and

$$\partial_n^\pm v(x) = \frac{\partial v_\pm}{\partial n}(x) := \lim_{y\to x,\, y\in\Theta_\pm(x)} n(x)\cdot\nabla v(y). \tag{2.29}$$

Further, for almost all $x \in \Gamma$, by Theorem 2.16 and Lemma A.10, $\nabla_\Gamma\gamma u \in L^2(\Gamma)$ and

$$\lim_{y\to x, y\in\Theta_\pm(x)} \nabla u(y) = \nabla_\Gamma\gamma_\pm u(x) + n(x)\partial_n^\pm u(x) \tag{2.30}$$

and

$$\lim_{y\to x, y\in\Theta_\pm(x)} \nabla v(y) = \nabla_\Gamma\gamma_\pm v(x) + n(x)\partial_n^\pm v(x). \tag{2.31}$$

2.3. Boundary integral operators

For $k \geq 0$ we define the *acoustic single-* and *double-layer operators*, S_k and D_k, respectively, by

$$\begin{aligned} S_k\phi(x) &:= \int_\Gamma \Phi_k(x,y)\phi(y)\,\mathrm{d}s(y), \\ D_k\phi(x) &:= \int_\Gamma \frac{\partial\Phi_k(x,y)}{\partial n(y)}\phi(y)\,\mathrm{d}s(y), \end{aligned} \tag{2.32}$$

for $x \in \Gamma$, where Φ_k is given by (1.2) in 3D and in 2D by (1.2) for $k > 0$ and by (2.22) for $k = 0$.

When Γ and ϕ are both sufficiently smooth, it is well known that the above integrals are well-defined (the integrands are in $L^1(\Gamma)$) for all $x \in \Gamma$. In particular (Colton and Kress 1983), this is the case if Γ is C^2 and $\phi \in C(\Gamma)$, with both $S_k\phi, D_k\phi \in C(\Gamma)$. In the 2D case, with $\phi \in L^2(\Gamma)$ and Γ Lipschitz, it still holds (by Cauchy–Schwarz, since $\Phi_k(x,\cdot) \in L^2(\Gamma)$ when $d = 2$), that $S_k\phi(x)$ is well-defined for all $x \in \Gamma$ and $S_k\phi \in C(\Gamma)$.

For Lipschitz Γ, the situation is more delicate for the double-layer potential, but for $\phi \in L^2(\Gamma)$, irrespective of the dimension d, $S_k\phi$ and $D_k\phi$ are well-defined by (2.32) for almost all $x \in \Gamma$, with $D_k\phi$ understood as the Cauchy principal value integral

$$D_k\phi(x) := \lim_{\epsilon\to 0} \int_{\Gamma\setminus B_\epsilon(x)} \frac{\partial\Phi_k(x,y)}{\partial n(y)}\phi(y)\,\mathrm{d}s(y), \quad x \in \Gamma, \tag{2.33}$$

where $B_\epsilon(x)$ is the open ball of radius ϵ centred at x and $S_k\phi, D_k\phi \in L^2(\Gamma)$. This result for the double-layer potential is not straightforward and was established first for the case $k = 0$; see, *e.g.*, Meyer and Coifman (2000) and the discussion in the following paragraphs. The extension to $k > 0$ is more straightforward; see Torres and Welland (1993).

As is well known, and will be recalled below, $S_k\phi$ and $D_k\phi$ appear when we take boundary values of the single- and double-layer potentials $\mathcal{S}_k\phi$ and $\mathcal{D}_k\phi$. When we apply the normal derivative operator ∂_n, two additional boundary integral operators, D_k' and H_k, arise, which we will term the (*acoustic*) *adjoint double-layer operator* and the (*acoustic*) *hypersingular operator*, respectively. For $\phi \in L^2(\Gamma)$ and $\psi \in H^1(\Gamma)$ these operators are given explicitly by

$$D_k'\phi(x) := \int_\Gamma \frac{\partial\Phi_k(x,y)}{\partial n(x)}\phi(y)\,\mathrm{d}s(y), \tag{2.34}$$

$$H_k\psi(x) := \frac{\partial}{\partial n(x)} \int_\Gamma \frac{\partial\Phi_k(x,y)}{\partial n(y)}\psi(y)\,\mathrm{d}s(y), \tag{2.35}$$

for almost all $x \in \Gamma$, where the integral defining $D_k'\phi$ is understood as a Cauchy principal value integral (as in (2.33)) while $H_k\psi \in L^2(\Gamma)$ is defined in the sense of (2.29), that is,

$$H_k\psi(x) := \lim_{y\to x,\, y\in\Theta_\pm(x)} n(x)\cdot\nabla\mathcal{D}_k\psi(y). \tag{2.36}$$

Note that for $\psi \in H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$, $\partial_n^+\mathcal{D}_k\psi = \partial_n^-\mathcal{D}_k\psi$ (see (2.26)). It follows from (2.29) that the limits in (2.36) as $y \to x$ from $\Theta_+(x)$ and from $\Theta_-(x)$ coincide.

It is a consequence of Young's inequality for convolutions that S_k is a bounded operator on $L^2(\Gamma)$. A much deeper result is that both D_k and D_k' are bounded operators on $L^2(\Gamma)$; for a clear discussion of the proofs of these results for $k = 0$ see Meyer and Coifman (2000), and see Torres

and Welland (1993) for the relatively straightforward extensions to $k > 0$. This boundedness was established only in 1982 as a corollary of the proof of Coifman, McIntosh and Meyer (1982) that the Cauchy integral operator is bounded on $L^2(\Gamma)$ when Γ is the graph of a Lipschitz-continuous function. It was shown soon afterwards, by Verchota (1984), that, in the case $k = 0$, D_k is also a bounded operator on $H^1(\Gamma)$ and S_k a bounded operator from $L^2(\Gamma)$ to $H^1(\Gamma)$; again, for extensions to $k > 0$ see Torres and Welland (1993). The results in Verchota (1984) were achieved through the use of Rellich-type identities, which we will make new use of in Section 5.7 (see the discussion in Section 5.3).

Important identities, which follow by Fubini's theorem for S_k, and by the arguments of Meyer and Coifman (2000) plus Fubini's theorem (to move from $k = 0$ to $k > 0$) for D_k and D_k', are that, for $\phi, \psi \in L^2(\Gamma)$,

$$\int_\Gamma \phi\, S_k\psi \,\mathrm{d}s = \int_\Gamma \psi\, S_k\phi \,\mathrm{d}s, \quad \int_\Gamma \phi\, D_k\psi \,\mathrm{d}s = \int_\Gamma \psi\, D_k'\phi \,\mathrm{d}s. \tag{2.37}$$

For $k = 0$ (when the kernels of the operators are real) this is precisely a statement that, as operators on the Hilbert space $L^2(\Gamma)$, D_k' is the adjoint of D_k and S_k is self-adjoint. To frame these identities as statements about adjoints for $k > 0$, let $\mathcal{C} : H^s(\Gamma) \to H^s(\Gamma)$ denote the operation of complex conjugation, that is,

$$\mathcal{C}u(x) := \overline{u(x)}, \quad x \in \Gamma,$$

so that $\mathcal{C}$ is an anti-linear bounded operator on $H^s(\Gamma)$ for $|s| \le 1$. Then, if A^* denotes the adjoint of a bounded linear operator A on $L^2(\Gamma)$, it follows from (2.37) that

$$S_k^* = \mathcal{C}S_k\mathcal{C}, \quad D_k^* = \mathcal{C}D_k'\mathcal{C}. \tag{2.38}$$

Combined with standard results on adjoints of operators on Hilbert spaces, this has simple but important consequences, for example that

$$\|D_k\|_{L^2(\Gamma)\leftarrow L^2(\Gamma)} = \|D_k^*\|_{L^2(\Gamma)\leftarrow L^2(\Gamma)} = \|D_k'\|_{L^2(\Gamma)\leftarrow L^2(\Gamma)}. \tag{2.39}$$

A further important consequence follows from writing (2.37) in terms of the duality pairing (A.24), as

$$\langle S_k\phi, \psi\rangle_\Gamma = \langle \phi, S_k^*\psi\rangle_\Gamma, \quad \langle D_k\phi, \psi\rangle_\Gamma = \langle \phi, D_k^*\psi\rangle_\Gamma. \tag{2.40}$$

These identities hold in the first instance just for $\phi, \psi \in L^2(\Gamma)$. But, since S_k is a bounded operator from $L^2(\Gamma)$ to $H^1(\Gamma)$, the first of these identities can be extended to $\phi \in L^2(\Gamma)$, $\psi \in H^{-1}(\Gamma)$, and used to show (together with (2.38)) that S_k extends to a bounded operator from $H^{-1}(\Gamma)$ to $L^2(\Gamma)$. Similarly, since D_k is a bounded operator on $H^1(\Gamma)$ as well as on $L^2(\Gamma)$, the second of these identities implies that D_k' extends to a bounded linear operator on $H^{-1}(\Gamma)$. These remarks sketch the proof of most of the following result.

Theorem 2.17. For $|s| \leq 1/2$ and $k \geq 0$ the following mappings are bounded:

$$S_k : H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{s+1/2}(\Gamma),$$
$$D_k : H^{s+1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{s+1/2}(\Gamma),$$
$$D'_k : H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma).$$

Proof. We have shown the above mappings for the limiting cases $s = \pm 1/2$. The results for intermediate values of s follow by interpolation (see, *e.g.*, the introduction and Theorems B.2 and B.11 in Appendix B of McLean (2000)). □

The connection between the above boundary integral operators and the operators $\mathcal{S}_k$ and $\mathcal{D}_k$ is obtained via an extended version of the jump relations (2.26). From McLean (2000) we have, on $H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$,

$$\gamma_\pm \mathcal{S}_k = S_k, \quad \partial_n^\pm \mathcal{S}_k = \mp \tfrac{1}{2} I + D'_k, \tag{2.41}$$

where I is the identity operator. Similarly, on $H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$, we have

$$\gamma_\pm \mathcal{D}_k = \pm \tfrac{1}{2} I + D_k. \tag{2.42}$$

For $\psi \in H^1(\Gamma)$ we have, from (2.26), (2.36) and (2.29), that

$$H_k \psi = \partial_n^\pm \mathcal{D}_k \psi. \tag{2.43}$$

To see that H_k extends (uniquely) to a bounded operator from $H^{s+1/2}(\Gamma)$ to $H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma)$, for $|s| \leq 1/2$, and in particular that (2.43) holds for $\psi \in H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$, our method is again to show this result first for $k = 0$ and then make a perturbation argument. To obtain the result for $k = 0$ a convenient route is to use the result of Verchota (1984) that $S_0 : L^2(\Gamma) \to H^1(\Gamma)$ is a bijection. (There is a subtlety in dimension 2: we have to choose a in (2.22) so that it does not equal the so-called *capacity* of Γ. For example, choosing a larger than the diameter of Γ is sufficient. See Chapter 8 in McLean (2000) and Section 4 of Verchota (1984).) This implies by duality that also $S_0^* = S_0 : H^{-1}(\Gamma) \to L^2(\Gamma)$ is a bijection, and hence, by interpolation, that $S_0 : H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{s+1/2}$ is a bijection for $|s| \leq 1/2$. Uniqueness for the interior Dirichlet problem for Laplace's equation and the trace results (2.41) and (2.42) imply that, for $\psi \in H^1(\Gamma)$,

$$\mathcal{D}_0 \psi(x) = -\mathcal{S}_0 S_0^{-1} \big(\tfrac{1}{2} I - D_0\big) \psi(x), \quad x \in \Omega_- \tag{2.44}$$

(a similar argument is used in Verchota 1984). By density of $H^1(\Gamma)$ in $L^2(\Gamma)$, and that both the left and right sides of this equation depend continuously on $\psi \in L^2(\Gamma)$, it follows that (2.44) in fact holds for all $\psi \in L^2(\Gamma)$.

The identity (2.44) firstly establishes (iv) in Theorem 2.16, as a corollary of (i) (see the remarks following Theorem 2.16). Then, recalling that Verchota (1984) also tells us that $\frac{1}{2} I - D_0$ is a bijection on $H^s(\Gamma)$ for $s = 0$ and

1, and hence by interpolation for all $0 \le s \le 1$, we can rewrite (2.44) as

$$\mathcal{S}_0\phi(x) = -\mathcal{D}_0\big(\tfrac{1}{2}I - D_0\big)^{-1} S_0\phi(x), \quad x \in \Omega_-, \tag{2.45}$$

for $\phi \in H^{-1}(\Gamma)$. Hence we are able to deduce (iii) in Theorem 2.16 as a corollary of (ii). Finally, combining (2.41), (2.42), and (2.44), we see that, on $H^1(\Gamma)$,

$$H_0 = -\partial_n^- \mathcal{S}_0 S_0^{-1}\big(\tfrac{1}{2}I - D_0\big) = -\big(\tfrac{1}{2}I + D_0'\big) S_0^{-1}\big(\tfrac{1}{2}I - D_0\big). \tag{2.46}$$

This identity, combined with the above observation that $S_0 : H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{s+1/2}(\Gamma)$ is a bijection, and Theorem 2.17, allows us to extend the domain of definition of H_0, and implies, together with the bounds (2.25), the following result.

Theorem 2.18. For $|s| \le 1/2$, the hypersingular operator

$$H_k : H^{s+1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma),$$

and this mapping is bounded.

2.4. Green's representation theorems

Our main starting point for our numerical schemes will be integral equations obtained from Green's theorems. We begin with the following simple consequence of (A.29).

Theorem 2.19. (Green's second formula) Suppose that D is a Lipschitz open set and that $u, v \in H^1(D; \Delta)$. Then

$$\int_\Gamma \big(\gamma v \partial_n u - \gamma u \partial_n v\big)\,\mathrm{d}s = \int_D \big(v\Delta u - u\Delta v\big)\,\mathrm{d}x.$$

From this theorem we deduce *Green's representation theorems*. As in the previous subsection, Ω_- is a bounded Lipschitz open set, and $\Omega_+ = \mathbb{R}^d \setminus \overline{\Omega_-}$ is assumed to be connected, and so is an unbounded Lipschitz domain, and the trace and normal derivative operators, $\gamma_\pm$ and $\partial_n^\pm$, are as defined in Section A.5.

Theorem 2.20. If $u \in H^1(\Omega_-) \cap C^2(\Omega_-)$ and, for some $k \ge 0$, $\Delta u + k^2 u = 0$ in Ω_-, then

$$\mathcal{S}_k \partial_n^- u(x) - \mathcal{D}_k \gamma_- u(x) = \begin{cases} u(x) & x \in \Omega_-, \\ 0 & x \in \Omega_+. \end{cases} \tag{2.47}$$

Proof. For $x \in \Omega_+$ this is an immediate consequence of Theorem 2.19, applied with $D = \Omega_-$ and $v = \Phi_k(\cdot, x)$. For $x \in \Omega_-$, the application of Theorem 2.19 is in Ω_- with a small ball of radius ϵ removed, and the theorem follows on taking the limit $\epsilon \to 0$; see Colton and Kress (1983) for details. □

The following is the version of Green's representation theorem which holds in exterior domains. It is shown by applying Theorem 2.20, with Ω_- replaced by the part of Ω_+ contained in a large ball of radius R, and then letting $R \to \infty$. The integral around the boundary of the large ball vanishes in this limit as a consequence of the Sommerfeld radiation condition (2.9) satisfied by u and by $\Phi_k(\cdot, x)$; see Colton and Kress (1983) for details.

Theorem 2.21. If $u \in H^1_{\mathrm{loc}}(\Omega_+) \cap C^2(\Omega_+)$ and, for some $k > 0$, $\Delta u + k^2 u = 0$ in Ω_+ and u satisfies the Sommerfeld radiation condition (2.9) in Ω_+, then

$$-\mathcal{S}_k \partial_n^+ u(x) + \mathcal{D}_k \gamma_+ u(x) = \begin{cases} u(x) & x \in \Omega_+, \\ 0 & x \in \Omega_-. \end{cases} \tag{2.48}$$

2.5. Boundary integral equation formulations

We have set up the tools that we need to derive BIE formulations of the BVPs in Section 2.1. Our main tool for computation will be so-called *direct* BIE formulations, namely, integral equation formulations derived from the Green's representation theorems in which the solution to the integral equation is either the trace or normal derivative of the solution to the BVP. The starting point to derive these BIEs are the representation formulae in Theorems 2.20 and 2.21.

To describe the integral equations succinctly, we define the matrices of operators

$$P_\pm = \pm \begin{bmatrix} \gamma_\pm \mathcal{D}_k & -\gamma_\pm \mathcal{S}_k \\ \partial_n^\pm \mathcal{D}_k & -\partial_n^\pm \mathcal{S}_k \end{bmatrix}. \tag{2.49}$$

These are the so-called *Calderón projectors*; we will see shortly that these are indeed projection operators (for example on the Hilbert space $H^{1/2}(\Gamma) \times H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$). Applying the jump relations, (2.41), (2.42) and (2.43), we find that

$$P_\pm = \tfrac{1}{2} I \pm M_k, \tag{2.50}$$

where I is the (2×2 matrix) identity operator and M_k is the matrix of boundary integral operators

$$M_k = \begin{bmatrix} D_k & -S_k \\ H_k & -D_k' \end{bmatrix}. \tag{2.51}$$

To see where P_+ arises, we apply the trace operator γ_+ and then the normal derivative operator ∂_n^+ to (2.48) to obtain two equations which we can write in matrix form as

$$P_+ c_+ u = c_+ u, \tag{2.52}$$

where $c_+ u = [\gamma_+ u, \partial_n^+ u]^T$ is the Cauchy data for u on Γ. Explicitly, using

(2.50), these two equations are

$$\big(D_k - \tfrac{1}{2}I\big)\gamma_+ u - S_k \partial_n^+ u = 0 \tag{2.53}$$

and

$$H_k \gamma_+ u - \big(D_k' + \tfrac{1}{2}I\big)\partial_n^+ u = 0, \tag{2.54}$$

each a linear relationship between the components $\gamma_+ u$ and $\partial_n^+ u$ of the Cauchy data $c_+ u$. Similar relationships between the components of the Cauchy data $c_- u = [\gamma_- u, \partial_n^- u]^T$ are obtained by applying γ_- and ∂_n^- to (2.47). We summarize these key results in the following lemma.

Lemma 2.22. If $u \in H^1(\Omega_-) \cap C^2(\Omega_-)$ and, for some $k \geq 0$, $\Delta u + k^2 u = 0$ in Ω_-, then $P_-\, c_- u = c_- u$. Similarly, if $u \in H^1_{\rm loc}(\Omega_+) \cap C^2(\Omega_+)$ and, for some $k > 0$, $\Delta u + k^2 u = 0$ in Ω_+ and u satisfies the Sommerfeld radiation condition (2.9) in Ω_+, then $P_+\, c_+ u = c_+ u$.

Of course, this lemma implies that if, for some $k > 0$, $u \in H^1(\Omega_-) \cap H^1_{\rm loc}(\Omega_+) \cap C^2(\mathbb{R}^d \backslash \Gamma)$, $\Delta u + k^2 u = 0$ in $\mathbb{R}^d \backslash \Gamma$, and u satisfies the Sommerfeld radiation condition, then $P_\pm\, c_\pm u = c_\pm u$. In particular, by Theorems 2.14 and 2.15, the following lemma holds.

Lemma 2.23. If $u = \mathcal{D}_k \phi_1 - \mathcal{S}_k \phi_2$ with $\phi_1 \in H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$, $\phi_2 \in H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$, then

$$P_\pm\, c_\pm u = c_\pm u.$$

Further, writing $\phi = [\phi_1, \phi_2]^T$, it follows immediately from the definition (2.49) that

$$c_\pm u = \pm P_\pm \phi,$$

so that

$$P_\pm^2 \phi = \pm P_\pm c_\pm u = \pm c_\pm u = P_\pm \phi.$$

This lemma confirms that $P_\pm$ are projection operators on $H^{1/2}(\Gamma) \times H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$, *i.e.*, that $P_\pm^2 = P_\pm$. Further, in view of (2.50), this projection property is equivalent to the very useful identity

$$M_k^2 = \tfrac{1}{4} I, \tag{2.55}$$

which, written out in component form, is

$$S_k H_k = D_k^2 - \tfrac{1}{4} I, \quad D_k S_k = S_k D_k', \quad H_k D_k = D_k' H_k, \tag{2.56}$$

plus a further identity, obtained from the first identity by taking adjoints.

Lemma 2.22 is the basis for all the standard direct BIE formulations for interior and exterior acoustic BVPs. For example, if u satisfies the exterior Dirichlet problem (2.12), then it follows immediately from (2.52), in component form (2.53) and (2.54), that $\partial_n^+ u$ satisfies both

$$S_k \partial_n^+ u = \big(D_k - \tfrac{1}{2} I\big) h \tag{2.57}$$

and

$$\big(D_k' + \tfrac{1}{2}I\big)\partial_n^+ u = H_k h. \tag{2.58}$$

Similarly, if u satisfies the interior Dirichlet problem (2.4), then, from Lemma 2.22, in particular from the equation $P_- c_- u = c_- u$, it follows that

$$S_k \partial_n^- u = \big(D_k + \tfrac{1}{2}I\big)h \tag{2.59}$$

and

$$\big(D_k' - \tfrac{1}{2}I\big)\partial_n^- u = H_k h. \tag{2.60}$$

Let us make two simple observations here. Firstly, all these equations are BIEs of the form

$$A\phi = \psi, \tag{2.61}$$

where A is a linear combination of boundary integral operators and the identity, ϕ is the solution to be determined and ψ is given data. Secondly we observe that the same operator A can arise from both interior and exterior problems. This has the important implication that, although exterior acoustic problems are generically uniquely solvable (this holds in particular for the exterior Dirichlet and Neumann/impedance problems that we focus on in this article: see Theorem 2.10), the natural BIE formulations of these problems need not be uniquely solvable for all wavenumbers k. For example, Theorem 2.1 shows that the homogeneous interior Dirichlet problem has non-trivial solutions at a sequence k_m of positive wavenumbers. If $k = k_m$ and u is such a solution then $\partial_n^- u$ is a solution of (2.59) with $h = 0$ (a non-trivial solution by Theorem 2.4 which implies that $\partial_n^- u \neq 0$), and so, for $k = k_m$, the BIE (2.57) for the exterior Dirichlet problem has infinitely many solutions (in $H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$).

In (2.57)–(2.60) we have stated four standard BIEs for the exterior and interior Dirichlet BVPs. Similarly, we can write down BIEs for the exterior and interior Neumann problems (problems (2.5) and (2.13) with β set to zero); indeed these equations are just equations (2.57)–(2.60) re-interpreted as equations where the unknown is the Dirichlet data h and the known function is $\partial_n u$.

Another popular and closely related approach is the *indirect* method where the solution is sought in the form of a layer potential with some unknown density, for example in the form

$$u = \mathcal{S}_k \phi \quad \text{or} \quad u = \mathcal{D}_k \psi, \tag{2.62}$$

for some $\phi \in H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ or $\psi \in H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$. By Theorems 2.14 and 2.15 these satisfy each of the BVPs of Section 2.1 provided the relevant boundary condition is satisfied. For example, $u = \mathcal{S}_k \phi$ satisfies the exterior Dirichlet problem (2.12) if and only if $\gamma_+ u = h$, that is,

$$S_k \phi = h; \tag{2.63}$$

similarly $u = \mathcal{D}_k\phi$ satisfies (2.12) if and only if $\gamma_+ u = h$, that is,

$$\left(\tfrac{1}{2}I + D_k\right)\psi = h. \tag{2.64}$$

Like (2.57) and (2.58), these equations are of the form (2.61); indeed, with the same operator $A = S_k$ in (2.63) and (2.57), and with closely related operators in (2.58) and (2.64).

We recall (see (2.38)) that D_k' is closely related to the Hilbert space adjoint of D_k. Seeking to generalize this, let us denote by A' the *quasi-adjoint* of an operator A, where we call A' the quasi-adjoint of A if

$$A' = \mathcal{C}A^*\mathcal{C}, \tag{2.65}$$

where A^* is the Hilbert space adjoint of A. We call A *quasi-self-adjoint* if $A' = A$. Then (see (2.38)) D_k' is the quasi-adjoint of D_k and S_k is quasi-self-adjoint, and moreover

$$\left(\tfrac{1}{2}I + D_k\right)' = \tfrac{1}{2}I + D_k',$$

that is, the operator in (2.64) is the quasi-adjoint of that in (2.58).

Remark 2.24. An important observation is that A, A^* and (as a consequence of (2.65)) A' all share the same norm. Furthermore, one of the three is invertible if and only if they are all invertible. Moreover, if they are all invertible, then their inverses share the same norm.

The observation that the operator in (2.64) is the quasi-adjoint of that in (2.58) holds more generally: the indirect BIE method gives rise to equations of the form (2.61) where the operator A is the quasi-adjoint of an equation arising from the direct BIE approach. In particular the interior and exterior Dirichlet and Neumann problems all give rise to BIEs of the form (2.61) and the operators that arise are tabulated in Table 2.1. In the column labelled 'Direct', we list the operators in the direct BIEs which follow from Lemma 2.22, while in the column labelled 'Indirect' we show this information for the indirect BIEs which arise from looking for the solution in the form (2.62).

Let us pull out a few points from this table. Observe first that each operator in the third column is the quasi-adjoint of the operator immediately to its left. The message here is, roughly speaking, that the indirect formulation does not give rise to different operators to invert from the direct formulation, in particular all spectral properties (relevant for conditioning and behaviour of iterative solvers) are the same. Secondly, note that the collection of operators arising in the different formulations of the exterior Dirichlet and Neumann problems is precisely the same collection of operators as arises in the formulation of the interior problems. Finally, recall that we argued below equation (2.61) that (2.57) has infinitely many solutions in $H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ at wavenumbers k for which the interior Dirichlet problem

Table 2.1. The integral operator A, in the equation of the form (2.61), that arises from a direct formulation from Lemma 2.22 (column 2) or an indirect formulation, looking for a solution in the form (2.62) (column 3). The operators in a particular row are not invertible for values of k, for which the homogeneous interior problem indicated in the last column has non-trivial solutions.

	Direct	Indirect	Homogeneous interior problem
Interior Dirichlet problem	S_k	S_k	Dirichlet
	$\frac{1}{2}I - D_k'$	$\frac{1}{2}I - D_k$	Dirichlet
Interior Neumann problem	$\frac{1}{2}I + D_k$	$\frac{1}{2}I + D_k'$	Neumann
	H_k	H_k	Neumann
Exterior Dirichlet problem	S_k	S_k	Dirichlet
	$\frac{1}{2}I + D_k'$	$\frac{1}{2}I + D_k$	Neumann
Exterior Neumann problem	$\frac{1}{2}I - D_k$	$\frac{1}{2}I - D_k'$	Dirichlet
	H_k	H_k	Neumann

(2.4) with $h = 0$ has non-trivial solutions, so that S_k (as an operator from $H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ to $H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$) cannot be invertible at those frequencies. Arguing similarly, as indicated in Table 2.1, one can show that H_k, as an operator from $H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$ to $H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ is not invertible if the interior Neumann problem has non-trivial solutions and that $\frac{1}{2}I \pm D_k$ and $\frac{1}{2}I \pm D_k'$ are not invertible if particular homogeneous interior problems have non-trivial solutions. These are either the Dirichlet problem ((2.4) with $h = 0$) or the Neumann problem ((2.5) with $\beta = h = 0$), as indicated in the last column of the table.

Let us summarize what is known about the invertibility of the operators in Table 2.1 in a theorem.

Theorem 2.25. For $k > 0$ and $|s| \leq \frac{1}{2}$ the mappings

$$S_k : H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{s+1/2}(\Gamma), \quad \left(\tfrac{1}{2}I \pm D_k\right) : H^{s+1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{s+1/2}(\Gamma),$$
$$H_k : H^{s+1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma), \quad \left(\tfrac{1}{2}I \pm D_k'\right) : H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma)$$

are all Fredholm of index zero. Further, S_k, $\frac{1}{2}I - D_k$ and $\frac{1}{2}I - D_k'$ are invertible as mappings between the spaces indicated above for $|s| \leq 1/2$ if and only if the interior homogeneous Dirichlet problem ((2.4) with $h = 0$) only has the trivial solution, while H_k, $\frac{1}{2}I + D_k$ and $\frac{1}{2}I + D_k'$ are invertible if and only if the interior homogeneous Neumann problem ((2.5) with $\beta = h = 0$) only has the trivial solution.

Proof. All the mappings are bounded by Theorems 2.17 and 2.18. Note that, as discussed before Theorem 2.18, S_0 is invertible as a mapping from $L^2(\Gamma)$ to $H^1(\Gamma)$ and as a mapping from $H^{-1}(\Gamma)$ to $L^2(\Gamma)$, provided that, in the 2D case, a in (2.22) is chosen sufficiently large (which we assume throughout). It is enough to focus on the operators S_k, H_k, $\frac{1}{2}I - D_k'$, and $\frac{1}{2}I + D_k$, as the results for the other two operators follow by taking quasi-adjoints. So let R_k denote one of these operators. To show that R_k is Fredholm of index zero for all k and $|s| \leq 1/2$, it is enough to show that $R_k = R^\dagger + C_k$ where $R^\dagger$ is invertible and C_k is compact. Further, it is enough to show that $R^\dagger$ is invertible and C_k compact for the limiting values $s = \pm 1/2$. (The full range $|s| \leq 1/2$ follows from the limiting cases by interpolation: see Appendix B (especially Theorem B.2) in McLean (2000) and Cobos, Edmunds and Potter (1990).) Once we have shown that R_k is Fredholm of index zero, the theorem is proved if we can show, for each s in the range $|s| \leq 1/2$, that R_k is invertible if and only if the relevant homogeneous interior problem only has the trivial solution. Since R_k is Fredholm of index zero, invertibility of R_k is equivalent to injectivity. This injectivity has to be shown for all $|s| \leq 1/2$. However, $H^r(\Gamma)$ is dense in $H^t(\Gamma)$ for $-1 \leq t < r \leq 1$, so that a standard result of Fredholm theory (see, for example, Section 1 in Prössdorf and Silbermann 1991) implies that, if an operator L is Fredholm of the same index on $H^r(\Gamma)$ and $H^t(\Gamma)$, then the null space of L is the same in each space. This result is applied directly to R_k in the cases $R_k = \frac{1}{2}I + D_k$ and $R_k = \frac{1}{2}I - D_k'$, and is applied to $S_0^{-1}S_k$ and S_0H_k in the cases $R_k = S_k$ and $R_k = H_k$, respectively, and implies that the null space of R_k is independent of s so that injectivity for $s = 0$ is equivalent to injectivity for all $|s| \leq 1/2$. Thus the proof is completed if we can show that R_k is injective for $s = 0$ if and only if the relevant homogeneous interior problem only has the trivial solution. But this is well known (see, for example, the results in Section 7.6 of Steinbach 2008), following easily from Theorems 2.14 and 2.15 and the jump relations (2.41), (2.42) and (2.43). (See also the discussion in the paragraph below (2.59) and (2.60).)

We now give a proof of the fact that $R_k = R^\dagger + C_k$, with $R^\dagger$ invertible and C_k compact, for $s = \pm 1/2$. This step varies between the distinct choices $R_k = S_k$, $\frac{1}{2}I - D_k'$, $\frac{1}{2}I + D_k$, and H_k. In each case it follows from the bounds (2.25) that the difference $R_k - R_0$ is compact for all $k > 0$ for $s = \pm 1/2$. (For example, $S_k - S_0$ is a compact operator from $L^2(\Gamma)$ to $H^1(\Gamma)$ because $S_k - S_0$ and $\nabla_\Gamma(S_k - S_0)$ are compact operators on $L^2(\Gamma)$, this being clear from the bounds (2.25), which imply that these are integral operators on $L^2(\Gamma)$ with bounded kernels. Then the fact that $S_k - S_0 = (S_k - S_0)'$ is a compact operator from $H^{-1}(\Gamma)$ to $L^2(\Gamma)$ follows by duality.) When $R_k = S_k$ a sensible splitting is $R^\dagger = R_0 = S_0$ and $C_k = S_k - S_0$. This works because

$R^\dagger = S_0$ is invertible for $s = \pm 1/2$. Likewise, it is shown in Verchota (1984) that $\frac{1}{2}I - D_0$ is invertible on $L^2(\Gamma)$ and $H^1(\Gamma)$. Thus, taking adjoints, when $R_k = \frac{1}{2}I - D_k'$, R_0 is invertible on $L^2(\Gamma)$ and $H^{-1}(\Gamma)$.

The splitting in the other two cases is slightly more subtle because H_0 and $\frac{1}{2}I + D_0$ are not invertible (but are Fredholm of index zero). For $|s| \le 1/2$ and $\phi \in H^s(\Gamma)$ let

$$P\phi = |\Gamma|^{-1} \langle \phi, 1 \rangle_\Gamma \, 1,$$

where 1 is the constant function on Γ with value one, $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_\Gamma$ is the duality pairing (A.24), and $|\Gamma| = \langle 1, 1 \rangle_\Gamma = \int_\Gamma \mathrm{d}s$. Then, for $|s| \le 1$, P is a (bounded) projection operator, mapping $H^s(\Gamma)$ onto the one-dimensional subspace of constant functions. For $|s| \le 1$, let $H^s_*(\Gamma) := \{\phi \in H^s(\Gamma) : P\phi = 0\}$, a closed subspace of $H^s(\Gamma)$ of co-dimension 1. Where $T := \frac{1}{2}I + D_0'$ and $L^2_*(\Gamma) := H^0_*(\Gamma)$, it is shown as Theorem 3.3(i) in Verchota (1984) that $T : L^2_*(\Gamma) \to L^2_*(\Gamma)$ is invertible and $T : L^2(\Gamma) \to L^2_*(\Gamma)$. This implies that T as an operator on $L^2(\Gamma)$ is Fredholm of index zero (note that if $\phi \in L^2(\Gamma)$ and $T\phi = 0$, then ϕ is a multiple of $1 - (T|_{L^2_*(\Gamma)})^{-1} T1$, so that the null space of T has dimension one). Thus, so is its dual, $T^* = \frac{1}{2}I + D_0$. Further, (2.56) implies that, as an operator on $H^{-1}(\Gamma)$,

$$T = \tfrac{1}{2}I + D_0' = S_0^{-1}(\tfrac{1}{2}I + D_0)S_0,$$

so that T is Fredholm of index zero also on $H^{-1}(\Gamma)$ and, passing to adjoints, T^* is Fredholm of index zero on $H^1(\Gamma)$. A splitting of $R_k = \frac{1}{2}I + D_k$ is $R_k = R^\dagger + C_k$ with $R^\dagger = T^* + P^* = (T + P)^*$ and $C_k = D_k - D_0 - P^*$. C_k is compact on $L^2(\Gamma)$ and $H^1(\Gamma)$ and $R^\dagger$ is Fredholm of index zero on each space. To see that $R^\dagger$ is invertible, it is enough to show that $T + P$ is injective, and indeed to show that it is injective as an operator on $L^2(\Gamma)$. But, if $\phi \in L^2(\Gamma)$ and $(T + P)\phi = 0$, then, since T maps $L^2(\Gamma)$ onto $L^2_*(\Gamma)$, $PT\phi = 0$ so that $P\phi = P^2\phi = 0$ and $\phi \in L^2_*(\Gamma)$ with $T\phi = 0$. Thus $\phi = 0$ since T is invertible on $L^2_*(\Gamma)$. Finally, that H_0 is Fredholm of index zero as a mapping from $L^2(\Gamma)$ to $H^{-1}(\Gamma)$ and from $H^1(\Gamma)$ to $L^2(\Gamma)$ follows from (2.46) and the results just discussed. This identity and the above results imply further that a suitable splitting of $R_k = H_k$ is $R_k = R^\dagger + C_k$ with

$$R^\dagger = -(\tfrac{1}{2}I + D_0' + P)S_0^{-1}(\tfrac{1}{2}I - D_0),$$

which has $R^\dagger$ invertible and a compact perturbation of H_0, so that C_k is compact. □

An attraction of the BIE (2.57) for the exterior Dirichlet problem (and the corresponding formulation for the Neumann problem where the operator is H_k) is that, even at frequencies where the operator is not invertible, the integral equation formulation is still equivalent to the BVP formulation, in a sense that we make precise now for the Dirichlet case in a theorem.

Theorem 2.26. If u satisfies the exterior Dirichlet problem (2.12), then

$$u(x) = \mathcal{D}_k h(x) - \mathcal{S}_k \partial_n^+ u(x), \quad x \in \Omega_+, \tag{2.66}$$

and $\partial_n^+ u \in H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ satisfies (2.57). Conversely, if $\phi \in H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ is a solution to the integral equation (2.57) and

$$u(x) := \mathcal{D}_k h(x) - \mathcal{S}_k \phi(x), \quad x \in \Omega_+, \tag{2.67}$$

then u satisfies (2.12).

Proof. If u satisfies (2.12) then Theorem 2.21 implies that (2.66) holds, and we have seen above that (2.57) follows by taking traces. Conversely, if $\phi \in H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ is a solution to (2.57), that is, $S_k\phi = (D_k - \frac{1}{2}I)h$, and u is defined by (2.67), then, applying (2.41) and (2.42), it follows that $\gamma_+ u = (\frac{1}{2}I + D_k)h - S_k\phi = h$. Thus, and by Theorems 2.14 and 2.15, u satisfies (2.12). □

2.6. Combined potential integral equations

As is clear from Theorem 2.25, none of the BIEs detailed above have unique solutions at all wavenumbers $k > 0$. In the case of direct formulations one simple and effective solution to this, an idea which dates back at least to Burton and Miller (1971), is to take linear combinations of the equations that we have met already. In particular, taking a linear combination of (2.57) and (2.58), we obtain

$$A'_{k,\eta} \partial_n^+ u = B_{k,\eta} h, \tag{2.68}$$

where $\eta \in \mathbb{C}$ is a parameter that we need to choose and $A'_{k,\eta}$, $B_{k,\eta}$ are the operators

$$A'_{k,\eta} = \tfrac{1}{2}I + D'_k - \mathrm{i}\eta S_k \text{ and } B_{k,\eta} = H_k + \mathrm{i}\eta\big(\tfrac{1}{2}I - D_k\big). \tag{2.69}$$

Equation (2.68), considered as a reformulation of the exterior Dirichlet problem (2.12), will be the focus of much of the numerical analysis in this review. Equation (2.68) can also be viewed as a reformulation of the exterior Neumann problem ((2.13) with $\beta = 0$), in which case $\partial_n^+ u$ is the known data and $h = \gamma_+ u$ is to be determined, this being the point of view taken in Burton and Miller (1971). We will see in Theorem 2.27 that both $A'_{k,\eta}$ and $B_{k,\eta}$ are invertible (considered as operators between appropriate pairs of Sobolev spaces) for all $k > 0$ provided $\mathrm{Re}\,\eta \neq 0$, the argument justifying the injectivity of $B_{k,\eta}$ dating back to Burton and Miller (1971).

Alternatively, we can formulate uniquely solvable indirect integral equations. In these equations the operators to be inverted are the quasi-adjoints of $A'_{k,\eta}$ and $B_{k,\eta}$. In particular, if we look for a solution of (2.12) in the form of the *combined layer-potential*

$$u(x) = \mathcal{D}_k \phi(x) - \mathrm{i}\eta \mathcal{S}_k \phi(x), \quad x \in \Omega_+, \tag{2.70}$$

for some $\phi \in H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$ and $\eta \in \mathbb{C}$, we see from Theorems 2.14 and 2.15 and from (2.41) and (2.42) that u satisfies (2.12) if and only if

$$A_{k,\eta}\phi = h, \tag{2.71}$$

where $A_{k,\eta}$ is the quasi-adjoint of $A'_{k,\eta}$, that is,

$$A_{k,\eta} = \tfrac{1}{2}I + D_k - \mathrm{i}\eta S_k. \tag{2.72}$$

Equation (2.71) and this method for solving the exterior Dirichlet problem date back to Brakhage and Werner (1965), Leis (1965) and Panič (1965).

Similarly, u given by (2.70) with $\phi \in H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$ satisfies the exterior impedance problem (2.13) if and only if

$$C'_{k,\eta,k\beta}\phi = h \tag{2.73}$$

where, for $\hat{\eta} \in L^\infty(\Gamma)$,

$$C'_{k,\eta,\hat{\eta}} = B'_{k,\eta} + \mathrm{i}\hat{\eta}A_{k,\eta} \quad \text{and} \quad B'_{k,\eta} = H_k + \mathrm{i}\eta\big(\tfrac{1}{2}I - D'_k\big) \tag{2.74}$$

is the quasi-adjoint of $B_{k,\eta}$. Of course, $C'_{k,\eta,k\beta} = B'_{k,\eta}$ in the Neumann BVP case $\beta = 0$.

The corresponding direct formulation for the exterior impedance problem follows essentially from (2.68). If u satisfies (2.13) then, by Lemma 2.22, in particular from (2.53) and (2.54), we see that

$$\big(\tfrac{1}{2}I - D_k\big)\gamma_+ u - \mathrm{i}kS_k(\beta\gamma_+ u) = -S_k h \tag{2.75}$$

and

$$H_k\gamma_+ u + \mathrm{i}k\big(\tfrac{1}{2}I + D'_k\big)(\beta\gamma_+ u) = \big(\tfrac{1}{2}I + D'_k\big)h. \tag{2.76}$$

For the case $\beta = 0$ (the exterior Neumann problem) we have seen in Table 2.1 that equation (2.75) is not uniquely solvable at wavenumbers k for which the homogeneous interior Dirichlet problem has a non-trivial solution, and (2.76) is not uniquely solvable at wavenumbers for which the homogeneous interior Neumann problem has a non-trivial solution. These statements hold equally for $\beta \neq 0$; this can essentially be read off from Table 2.1. In particular, from (2.59) and (2.60) we see that, if u is a non-trivial solution of the homogeneous interior Dirichlet problem ((2.4) with $h = 0$), then $\partial_n^- u$ (which is non-zero by Theorem 2.4) is in the null space of both S_k and $\frac{1}{2}I - D'_k$, and hence in the null space of $\frac{1}{2}I - D'_k - \mathrm{i}k\beta S_k$, for any $\beta \in L^\infty(\Gamma)$. Thus, if (2.4) with $h = 0$ has a non-trivial solution, then $\frac{1}{2}I - D'_k - \mathrm{i}k\beta S_k$ is not invertible. Hence by Remark 2.24 its quasi-adjoint $\frac{1}{2}I - D_k - \mathrm{i}kS_k\beta$, which is the operator on the left-hand side of (2.75), also is not invertible.

We obtain a direct combined potential formulation of the exterior impedance problem by taking a linear combination of equations (2.75) and (2.76), which gives

$$C_{k,\eta,k\beta}\gamma u = A'_{k,\eta}h, \tag{2.77}$$

where $C_{k,\eta,\hat{\eta}}$ is the quasi-adjoint of $C'_{k,\eta,\hat{\eta}}$, defined explicitly by

$$C_{k,\eta,\hat{\eta}}\phi := B_{k,\eta}\phi + \mathrm{i}A'_{k,\eta}(\hat{\eta}\phi), \quad \phi \in H^{1/2}(\Gamma). \tag{2.78}$$

We can deduce mapping properties of the operators $A_{k,\eta}$, $B_{k,\eta}$, $C_{k,\eta,\hat{\eta}}$ and their quasi-adjoints straightforwardly from Theorem 2.17. This is the content of the first sentence of the following theorem.

Theorem 2.27. For $k \geq 0$, $\eta \in \mathbb{C}$, $|s| \leq \frac{1}{2}$, and $\hat{\eta} \in L^\infty(\Gamma)$, the mappings

$$\begin{aligned} A_{k,\eta} &: H^{s+1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{s+1/2}(\Gamma), \qquad A'_{k,\eta} : H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma), \\ B_{k,\eta} &: H^{s+1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma), \qquad B'_{k,\eta} : H^{s+1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma), \\ C_{k,\eta,\hat{\eta}} &: H^{s+1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma), \quad C'_{k,\eta,\hat{\eta}} : H^{s+1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma), \end{aligned}$$

are bounded. Further, for $k > 0$ and $\operatorname{Re}\eta \neq 0$ the mappings for $A_{k,\eta}$, $A'_{k,\eta}$, $B_{k,\eta}$ and $B'_{k,\eta}$ are invertible; the mappings for $C_{k,\eta,\hat{\eta}}$ and $C'_{k,\eta,\hat{\eta}}$ are also invertible provided also that $\operatorname{Re}\hat{\eta} \geq 0$.

Proof. That these mappings are bounded follows from Theorems 2.17 and 2.18. It is enough (*cf.* Remark 2.24) to show the invertibility of $A'_{k,\eta}$, $B_{k,\eta}$, and $C_{k,\eta,\hat{\eta}}$, with the invertibility of the other operators following by passing to adjoints. A main step in proving the invertibility of these three operators is to show that each is Fredholm of index zero for $|s| \leq 1/2$. But this follows from Theorem 2.25 since, for $|s| \leq \frac{1}{2}$, $A'_{k,\eta}$ is a compact perturbation of $\frac{1}{2}I + D'_k$ and $B_{k,\eta}$ and $C_{k,\eta,\hat{\eta}}$ are compact perturbations of H_k. These compactness results follow from the boundedness of the mappings in Theorem 2.17 and that the operator embedding $H^t(\Gamma)$ into $H^r(\Gamma)$ is compact for $-1 \leq r < t \leq 1$. To establish invertibility, it remains to show injectivity and, arguing as in the proof of Theorem 2.25, it is enough to show this injectivity for the standard case $s = 0$. We give the proof of injectivity for just one of these operators, namely $A'_{k,\eta}$, which is the focus of much of the rest of this article, following Theorem 2.7 in Chandler-Wilde and Langdon (2007). The proofs for the other operators are similar.

So suppose that $\phi \in H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ and $A'_{k,\eta}\phi = 0$ and let $u = \mathcal{S}_k\phi$. Then, using (2.41) and Theorems 2.14 and 2.15, we see that u satisfies the interior impedance problem (2.5) with $h = 0$ and $\beta = \eta/k$, in particular $\partial_n^- u - \mathrm{i}\eta\gamma_- u = A'_{k,\eta}\phi = 0$. It follows from Theorem 2.3 that, provided $\operatorname{Re}\eta \neq 0$, $u = 0$ in Ω_-. This (together with Theorems 2.14 and 2.15) implies that u in Ω_+ satisfies the homogeneous exterior Dirichlet problem ((2.12) with $h = 0$), in particular $\gamma_+ u = \gamma_- u = 0$. It follows from Corollary 2.9 that $u = 0$ in Ω_+ so that $\phi = \partial_n^- u - \partial_n^+ u = 0$. □

The implications of this for our combined potential integral equation formulations is spelled out in the following corollary. This corollary provides further the promised proof of the existence part of Theorem 2.10.

Corollary 2.28. Suppose that $k > 0$ and $\eta \in \mathbb{C}$ with $\operatorname{Re}\eta \neq 0$. Then both the following statements hold.

(i) For every $h \in L^2(\Gamma)$ the integral equation (2.71) has exactly one solution $\phi \in L^2(\Gamma)$, and if $h \in H^s(\Gamma)$ for $0 \leq s \leq 1$ then also $\phi \in H^s(\Gamma)$. If $h \in H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$ and $\phi \in H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$ is the unique solution of (2.71), then u given by (2.70) is the unique solution of (2.12). Conversely, if u is the unique solution of (2.12) then $\partial_n^+ u \in H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ is the unique solution of (2.68). Further, if $h = \gamma_+ u \in H^s(\Gamma)$ for $1/2 < s \leq 1$ then $\partial_n^+ u \in H^{s-1}(\Gamma)$.

(ii) For every $h \in H^{-1}(\Gamma)$ the integral equation (2.73) has exactly one solution $\phi \in L^2(\Gamma)$, and if $h \in H^s(\Gamma)$ for $-1 \leq s \leq 0$ then also $\phi \in H^{s+1}(\Gamma)$. If $h \in H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ and $\phi \in H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$ is the unique solution of (2.73), then u given by (2.70) is the unique solution of (2.13). Conversely, if u is the unique solution of (2.13) then $\gamma_+ u \in H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$ is the unique solution of (2.77). Further, if $h = \gamma_+ u \in H^s(\Gamma)$ for $-1/2 < s \leq 0$ then $\gamma_+ u \in H^{s+1}(\Gamma)$.

The above corollary makes clear that the exterior Dirichlet, Neumann and impedance BVPs can be solved by combined potential integral equation formulations. Essentially the same boundary integral operators arise when we solve the interior impedance BVP (2.5). To see this, extending the notations (2.72) and (2.74), for $\eta \in L^\infty(\Gamma)$, we define the bounded operators $A_{k,\eta} : H^s(\Gamma) \to H^s(\Gamma)$ and $B'_{k,\eta} : H^s(\Gamma) \to H^{s-1}(\Gamma)$, for $0 \leq s \leq 1$, by

$$A_{k,\eta}\phi = \tfrac{1}{2}\phi + D_k\phi - \mathrm{i}S_k(\eta\phi) \text{ and } B'_{k,\eta}\phi = H_k\phi + \mathrm{i}\big(\tfrac{1}{2}I - D'_k\big)(\eta\phi), \quad (2.79)$$

and, with $A_{k,\eta}$ and $B_{k,\eta}$ defined in this way, define the bounded operator $C_{k,\eta,\hat{\eta}}$, for $\hat{\eta} \in L^\infty(\Gamma)$, by (2.78). Thus the following result contains the invertibility statements about $A_{k,\eta}$ and $B'_{k,\eta}$ in Theorem 2.27 as a special case. Its proof is a straightforward variation on the proof of Theorem 2.27.

Theorem 2.29. If $\eta \in L^\infty(\Gamma)$ and Assumption 2.2 holds with β replaced by η, then the operators $A_{k,\eta}$ and $B'_{k,\eta}$ are invertible as mappings $A_{k,\eta} : H^{s+1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{s+1/2}(\Gamma)$ and $B'_{k,\eta} : H^{s+1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma)$, for $|s| \leq 1/2$. Further, if also $\hat{\eta} \in L^\infty$ with $\operatorname{Re}\hat{\eta} \geq 0$, then also $C'_{k,\eta,\hat{\eta}} : H^{s+1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma)$ is invertible for $|s| \leq 1/2$.

These generalizations of $A_{k,\eta}$ and $B'_{k,\eta}$ arise when we make a direct formulation of the interior impedance problem (2.5).

Theorem 2.30. If u satisfies the interior impedance problem (2.5), then

$$A_{k,k\beta}\gamma_- u = S_k h, \quad (2.80)$$

$$B'_{k,k\beta}\gamma_- u = -\big(\tfrac{1}{2}I - D'_k\big)h, \quad (2.81)$$

and γu is the unique solution in $H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$ of each of these equations in the case that Assumption 2.2 holds. Conversely, suppose Assumption 2.2 holds. Then, if $\phi \in H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$ is the unique solution of either $A_{k,k\beta}\phi = S_k h$ or $B'_{k,k\beta}\phi = -\big(\frac{1}{2}I - D'_k\big)h$, and

$$u(x) = \mathcal{S}_k(h + \mathrm{i}k\beta\phi)(x) - \mathcal{D}_k\phi(x), \quad x \in \Omega_-, \tag{2.82}$$

it follows that u satisfies (2.5).

Proof. Equations (2.80) and (2.81) follow from Lemma 2.22 and (2.50), and the fact that γu is the unique solution of each of these equations follows from Theorem 2.29. Suppose now that Assumption 2.2 holds and $\phi \in H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$ is the unique solution of either (2.80) or (2.81) and u is defined by

$$u(x) := \mathcal{S}_k(h + \mathrm{i}k\beta\phi)(x) - \mathcal{D}_k\phi(x), \quad x \in \mathbb{R}^d \setminus \Gamma. \tag{2.83}$$

Then, by Theorems 2.14 and 2.15, $u \in H^1(\Omega_-) \cap H^1_{\mathrm{loc}}(\Omega_+) \cap C^2(\mathbb{R}^d \setminus \Gamma)$, $\Delta u + k^2 u = 0$ in $\mathbb{R}^d \setminus \Gamma$, and u satisfies the Sommerfeld radiation condition. Further, by Lemma 2.23, (2.50) and (2.80), $\partial_n^+ u - \partial_n^- u = -(h + \mathrm{i}k\beta\phi)$ and $\gamma_- u - \gamma_+ u = \phi$ and moreover $\gamma_+ u = 0$ in the case that $A_{k,k\beta}\phi = S_k h$, while $\partial_n^+ u = 0$ in the case that $B'_{k,k\beta}\phi = -(\frac{1}{2}I - D'_k)h$. Thus, by the uniqueness parts of Theorem 2.10, $u = 0$ in Ω_+ so that $\gamma_+ u = \partial_n^+ u = 0$ and $\partial_n^- u = h + \mathrm{i}\beta k\gamma_- u$. Thus we have shown that $u|_{\Omega_-}$ satisfies (2.5). □

2.7. Poincaré–Steklov and boundary integral operators

In this section we explore the connections between boundary integral operators and solution operators for the corresponding BVPs (Dirichlet to Neumann and similar maps). The representations we deduce, several of which appear to be new, will be an important tool in our investigation of the k-dependence of condition numbers of BIE formulations in Section 5.

We noted in Theorem 2.10 that the exterior Dirichlet problem (2.12) is uniquely solvable. Let P^+_{DtN} denote the mapping which takes $h \in H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$ to $\partial_n u$, where u is the solution to (2.12). This mapping $P^+_{\mathrm{DtN}} : H^{1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ is called the exterior *Dirichlet to Neumann map* or exterior *Poincaré–Steklov operator*. Similarly, let $P^+_{\mathrm{NtD}} : H^{-1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$ denote the mapping which takes $h \in H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ to $\gamma u \in H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$, where u is the solution to the exterior Neumann problem ((2.13) with $\beta = 0$). P^+_{NtD} is called the exterior *Neumann to Dirichlet map* or sometimes the exterior *Steklov–Poincaré operator* (Sauter and Schwab 2011). It is immediate from these definitions that these mappings are inverses of each other; what is less obvious, but follows easily from Green's second formula (Theorem 2.19), is that the Steklov–Poincaré and Poincaré–Steklov operators are both quasi-self-adjoint. Thus

$$P^+_{\mathrm{DtN}}P^+_{\mathrm{NtD}} = P^+_{\mathrm{NtD}}P^+_{\mathrm{DtN}} = I, \ \big(P^+_{\mathrm{DtN}}\big)' = P^+_{\mathrm{DtN}}, \ \big(P^+_{\mathrm{NtD}}\big)' = P^+_{\mathrm{NtD}}. \tag{2.84}$$

The importance of these mappings for our purposes is their close connection with boundary integral operators. Indeed, we have from Corollary 2.28(i) that, if u satisfies the exterior Dirichlet problem (2.12), then $\partial_n u$ is the unique solution of (2.68). Thus

$$P^+_{\mathrm{DtN}} = \big(A'_{k,\eta}\big)^{-1} B_{k,\eta}. \tag{2.85}$$

We can deduce a further representation for P^+_{DtN} from Corollary 2.28(i) based on solving (2.71) and can deduce representations for P^+_{NtD} from Corollary 2.28(ii), but these representations can equally be read off from (2.84). For example, combining (2.84) and (2.85), we see that

$$P^+_{\mathrm{DtN}} = \big(P^+_{\mathrm{DtN}}\big)' = \big(\big(A'_{k,\eta}\big)^{-1} B_{k,\eta}\big)' = B'_{k,\eta} A^{-1}_{k,\eta}.$$

Let us summarize these representations in a theorem.

Theorem 2.31. It holds that

$$P^+_{\mathrm{DtN}} = \big(A'_{k,\eta}\big)^{-1} B_{k,\eta} = B'_{k,\eta} A^{-1}_{k,\eta} \text{ and } P^+_{\mathrm{NtD}} = B^{-1}_{k,\eta} A'_{k,\eta} = A_{k,\eta}\big(B'_{k,\eta}\big)^{-1}.$$

The operators $P^+_{\mathrm{DtN}} : H^{1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ and $P^+_{\mathrm{NtD}} : H^{-1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$ are bounded, and have unique extensions to bounded operators $P^+_{\mathrm{DtN}} : L^2(\Gamma) \to H^{-1}(\Gamma)$ and $P^+_{\mathrm{NtD}} : H^{-1}(\Gamma) \to L^2(\Gamma)$. Further,

$$P^+_{\mathrm{DtN}} : H^{1/2+s}(\Gamma) \to H^{-1/2+s}(\Gamma) \quad \text{and} \quad P^+_{\mathrm{NtD}} : H^{-1/2+s}(\Gamma) \to H^{1/2+s}(\Gamma),$$

for $|s| \le 1/2$, and all these mappings are bounded.

The above representations are only one of many possible boundary integral representations for the Poincaré–Steklov maps; indeed it is most usual in the BIE literature (*e.g.*, Steinbach 2008, Sauter and Schwab 2011) to use representations directly in terms of S_k, D_k, D'_k and H_k, avoiding combined potential operators. One such representation follows from Theorem 2.26 and (2.57); we see that, for values of k for which S_k is invertible,

$$P^+_{\mathrm{DtN}} = S_k^{-1}\big(-\tfrac{1}{2} I + D_k\big).$$

For further such representation see Steinbach (2008) and Sauter and Schwab (2011).

Similar representations can be obtained for interior Dirichlet to Neumann and Neumann to Dirichlet operators, for wavenumbers k for which the Dirichlet and Neumann interior problems are uniquely solvable. But we will focus here on the interior *impedance to Dirichlet* operator $P^{-,\eta}_{\mathrm{ItD}}$ which maps $h \in H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ to γu, where u is the solution of the interior impedance problem (2.5) with $\beta = \eta/k$. Provided β satisfies Assumption 2.2, which is the case if and only if $\eta \in L^\infty(\Gamma)$ satisfies Assumption 2.2, it follows from Theorem 2.10 that this is a well-defined mapping from $H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ to

$H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$; we see from Theorem 2.30 that

$$P_{\mathrm{ItD}}^{-,\eta} = A_{k,\eta}^{-1} S_k. \tag{2.86}$$

One can also make representations for exterior impedance to Dirichlet operators. For $h \in H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ and $\hat{\eta} \in L^\infty(\Gamma)$ with $\operatorname{Re}\hat{\eta} \geq 0$, let $P_{\mathrm{ItD}}^{+,\hat{\eta}}$ denote the mapping which takes h to $\gamma u \in H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$, where u denotes what is, by Theorem 2.10, the unique solution of the exterior impedance problem (2.13) with $\beta = \hat{\eta}/k$. From Theorem 2.30 and (2.77) we see that, for every $\eta \in \mathbb{C}$ with $\operatorname{Re}\eta \neq 0$,

$$P_{\mathrm{ItD}}^{+,\hat{\eta}} = C_{k,\eta,\hat{\eta}}^{-1} A'_{k,\eta}. \tag{2.87}$$

Just as for the exterior Dirichlet to Neumann map, it follows from Theorem 2.19 that the operators $P_{\mathrm{ItD}}^{-,\eta}$ and $P_{\mathrm{ItD}}^{+,\hat{\eta}}$ are quasi-self-adjoint. Thus, in particular,

$$P_{\mathrm{ItD}}^{-,\eta} = \big(P_{\mathrm{ItD}}^{-,\eta}\big)' = \big(A_{k,\eta}^{-1} S_k\big)' = S_k \big(A'_{k,\eta}\big)^{-1}. \tag{2.88}$$

These representations are one route to establishing the following mapping properties.

Theorem 2.32. Provided $\hat{\eta} \in L^\infty(\Gamma)$ and Assumption 2.2 is satisfied with β replaced by $\hat{\eta}$, the mapping $P_{\mathrm{ItD}}^{-,\hat{\eta}} : H^{-1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$ is bounded and has a unique extension to a bounded operator $P_{\mathrm{ItD}}^{-,\hat{\eta}} : H^{-1}(\Gamma) \to L^2(\Gamma)$. The same statements hold for $P_{\mathrm{ItD}}^{+,\hat{\eta}}$ for $\hat{\eta} \in L^\infty(\Gamma)$ with $\operatorname{Re}\hat{\eta} \geq 0$. Further, provided the respective conditions on $\hat{\eta}$ are satisfied,

$$P_{\mathrm{ItD}}^{\pm,\hat{\eta}} : H^{-1/2+s}(\Gamma) \to H^{1/2+s}(\Gamma),$$

for $|s| \leq 1/2$, and all these mappings are bounded.

The above results represent the exterior DtN and NtD maps and the interior and exterior ItD maps partly in terms of the inverses of $A_{k,\eta}$, $B_{k,\eta}$ and $C_{k,\eta,\hat{\eta}}$. A component of our arguments in Section 5.6, when we study the dependence of the norm of $A_{k,\eta}^{-1}$ on k, will be the following representations in the other direction. While representations, such as those we have presented above, for Poincaré–Steklov operators in terms of boundary integral operators and their inverses are widely used, these representations in the other direction seem less well known.

Theorem 2.33. Suppose that $\eta \in L^\infty(\Gamma)$ and that Assumption 2.2 holds with β replaced by η. Then, for $|s| \leq 1/2$, the mapping $A_{k,\eta}^{-1} : H^{1/2+s}(\Gamma) \to H^{1/2+s}(\Gamma)$ has the representation

$$A_{k,\eta}^{-1} = I - P_{\mathrm{ItD}}^{-,\eta}\big(P_{\mathrm{DtN}}^{+} - \mathrm{i}\eta\big) \tag{2.89}$$

and, provided also that $\hat{\eta} \in L^\infty(\Gamma)$ with $\operatorname{Re}\hat{\eta} \geq 0$, the mapping $C_{k,\eta,\hat{\eta}}^{-1}$:

$H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{1/2+s}(\Gamma)$ has the representation

$$\big(C'_{k,\eta,\hat{\eta}}\big)^{-1} = P^{+,\hat{\eta}}_{\mathrm{ItD}} - P^{-,\eta}_{\mathrm{ItD}}\big(I - \mathrm{i}(\eta+\hat{\eta})P^{+,\hat{\eta}}_{\mathrm{ItD}}\big). \tag{2.90}$$

Proof. The left- and right-hand sides of (2.89) are bounded operators on $H^{s+1/2}(\Gamma)$ for $|s| \le 1/2$, by Theorems 2.27, 2.31 and 2.32, so that to show (2.89) it is enough to show that

$$A^{-1}_{k,\eta} h = h - P^{-,\eta}_{\mathrm{ItD}}\big(P^{+}_{\mathrm{DtN}} - \mathrm{i}\eta\big)h \tag{2.91}$$

holds for all h in some dense subset of $L^2(\Gamma)$, *e.g.*, $H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$. So suppose that $h \in H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$ and that $\phi = A^{-1}_{k,\eta} h$, so that

$$A_{k,\eta}\phi = h,$$

and define

$$u = \mathcal{D}_k\phi - \mathrm{i}\mathcal{S}_k(\eta\phi). \tag{2.92}$$

Then, by Lemma 2.23 and (2.50), $\gamma_+ u = h$, $\gamma_- u = h - \phi$ and $\partial^+_n u - \partial^-_n u = \mathrm{i}\eta\phi$, so that

$$\partial^-_n u - \mathrm{i}\eta\gamma_- u = \partial^+_n u - \mathrm{i}\eta h.$$

Hence, and by Theorems 2.14 and 2.15, $u|_{\Omega_+}$ satisfies the exterior Dirichlet problem (2.12) with $\gamma_+ u = h$, while $u|_{\Omega_-}$ satisfies the interior impedance problem (2.5) with $\beta = \eta/k$ and impedance data $\partial^+_n u - \mathrm{i}\eta h$, so that

$$\gamma_- u = P^{-,\eta}_{\mathrm{ItD}}\big(\partial^+_n u - \mathrm{i}\eta h\big) = P^{-,\eta}_{\mathrm{ItD}}\big(P^{+}_{\mathrm{DtN}} - \mathrm{i}\eta\big)h.$$

and, since $A^{-1}_{k,\eta} h = \phi = h - \gamma_- u$, (2.91) follows.

Arguing similarly, to establish (2.90) it is enough to show that

$$\big(C'_{k,\eta,\hat{\eta}}\big)^{-1} h = P^{+,\hat{\eta}}_{\mathrm{ItD}} h - P^{-,\eta}_{\mathrm{ItD}}\big(I - \mathrm{i}(\eta+\hat{\eta})P^{+,\hat{\eta}}_{\mathrm{ItD}}\big)h \tag{2.93}$$

holds for all h in some dense subset of $H^{-1}(\Gamma)$, *e.g.*, $H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$. So suppose that $h \in H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ and that $\phi = (C'_{k,\eta,\hat{\eta}})^{-1} h$, so that $C'_{k,\eta,\hat{\eta}}\phi = h$, and define u by (2.92). Then, by Lemma 2.23 and (2.50), $\partial^+_n u + \mathrm{i}\hat{\eta}\gamma_+ u = C'_{k,\eta,\hat{\eta}}\phi = h$, $\gamma_+ u - \gamma_- u = \phi$, and $\partial^+_n u - \partial^-_n u = \mathrm{i}\eta\phi$, so that

$$\partial^-_n u - \mathrm{i}\eta\gamma_- u = h - \mathrm{i}(\hat{\eta}+\eta)\gamma_+ u.$$

Hence, and by Theorems 2.14 and 2.15, $u|_{\Omega_+}$ satisfies the exterior impedance problem (2.13) with $\beta = \hat{\eta}/k$ and impedance data h, while $u|_{\Omega_-}$ satisfies the interior impedance problem (2.5) with $\beta = \eta/k$ and impedance data $h - \mathrm{i}(\hat{\eta}+\eta)\gamma_+ u$, so that

$$\gamma_- u = P^{-,\eta}_{\mathrm{ItD}}\big(h - \mathrm{i}(\hat{\eta}+\eta)\gamma_+ u\big) = P^{-,\eta}_{\mathrm{ItD}}\big(I - \mathrm{i}(\eta+\hat{\eta})P^{+,\hat{\eta}}_{\mathrm{ItD}}\big)h.$$

and, since $(C'_{k,\eta,\hat{\eta}})^{-1} h = \phi = \gamma_+ u - \gamma_- u$, (2.93) follows. □

We note that, in particular, the above theorem holds for $\hat{\eta} = 0$, in which case (2.90) reduces to

$$\big(B'_{k,\eta}\big)^{-1} = P^{+}_{\mathrm{NtD}} - P^{-,\eta}_{\mathrm{ItD}}\big(I - \mathrm{i}\eta P^{+}_{\mathrm{NtD}}\big). \tag{2.94}$$

It is clear from Theorem 2.31, (2.86), and Theorem 2.33, that $A^{-1}_{k,\eta}$ and the interior and exterior solution operators P^{+}_{DtN} and $P^{-,\eta}_{\mathrm{ItD}}$ are intimately related. In particular, we will use the representation (2.89) to bound the norm of $A^{-1}_{k,\eta}$ as an operator on $L^2(\Gamma)$ in Section 5.6. This method of bounding the norms of inverses of integral operators is not spelt out, but is to some extent implicit in the arguments in Verchota (1984) and Chandler-Wilde and Monk (2008).

Theorem 2.33 is also very useful in shedding light on the physical meanings of the solutions to indirect BIEs. In the direct case, for instance the combined potential equations (2.68) and (2.77), the solution is just the trace or normal derivative of the solution of the BVP that we are solving. The meaning of the solution to an indirect integral equation, for instance (2.71) or (2.73), is more obscure, but is elucidated by Theorem 2.33. For example (2.89) implies that the solution to the direct integral equation formulation (2.71) of the exterior Dirichlet problem is the difference between the Dirichlet data (the trace of the solution of the exterior problem) and the trace of the solution of an interior impedance problem with data depending on the solution to the exterior problem. Thus the solution of (2.71) depends in a complex way on the solutions of both interior and exterior BVPs. This can make direct formulations preferable for numerical computation. As has been well known for many years, the issue is that the singularities in the solution to direct formulations are just those of the boundary traces of the solutions to the original BVPs, while the solutions to indirect integral equations, *e.g.*, (2.71), typically contain singularities related to both solutions of interior and exterior problems, and so require more degrees of freedom to approximate. As pointed out in Bruno *et al.* (2004), there are additional reasons to prefer direct formulations to indirect formulations for high-frequency scattering problems: the oscillatory behaviour of solutions of indirect integral equations is more complex, and depends inextricably on the solutions to both interior and exterior problems in a complicated interacting way.

2.8. Regularity of the solutions of the integral equations and BVPs

In this subsection we make some brief comments on the smoothness of the solutions of the BVPs (2.4), (2.5), (2.12), and (2.13).

Our first result makes clear that, under rather general and mild conditions, the traces γu and $\partial_n u$ are (at least almost everywhere) limiting values of the function and its gradient as Γ is approached from $\Omega_{\pm}$.

Theorem 2.34. Let $\{\Theta_\pm(x) : x \in \Gamma\}$ be families of non-tangential approach sets to x from $\Omega_\pm$ (as defined in Section A.4). (i) If u satisfies the exterior Dirichlet problem (2.12) or the exterior impedance problem (2.13) then $\lim_{y\to x, y\in\Theta_+(x)} u(y) = \gamma^+ u(x)$, for almost all $x \in \Gamma$. (ii) If v satisfies the interior Dirichlet or impedance problems, (2.4) or (2.5), then $\lim_{y\to x, y\in\Theta_-(x)} v(y) = \gamma_- v(x)$. (iii) If u satisfies (2.12) with boundary data $h \in H^1(\Gamma)$ or satisfies (2.13) with data $h \in L^2(\Gamma)$, then also $\nabla_\Gamma \gamma_+ u \in L^2(\Gamma)$ and $\partial_n^+ u \in L^2(\Gamma)$ and

$$\lim_{y\to x, y\in\Theta_+(x)} \nabla u(y) = \nabla_\Gamma \gamma_+ u(x) + n(x)\partial_n^+ u(x),$$

for almost all $x \in \Gamma$. In particular, for almost all $x \in \Gamma$,

$$\partial_n^+ u(x) = \frac{\partial u}{\partial n}(x) := \lim_{y\to x, y\in\Theta_+(x)} n(x)\cdot\nabla u(y). \tag{2.95}$$

(iv) Similarly, if v satisfies (2.13) with data $h \in L^2(\Gamma)$, then also $\nabla_\Gamma \gamma_+ v \in L^2(\Gamma)$ and $\partial_n^+ v \in L^2(\Gamma)$ and

$$\lim_{y\to x, y\in\Theta_+(x)} \nabla v(y) = \nabla_\Gamma \gamma_+ v(x) + n(x)\partial_n^+ v(x),$$

for almost all $x \in \Gamma$.

Proof. By Theorems 2.21 and 2.20 the solutions to all these problems have representations as single- and double-layer potentials. Thus the limits claimed in (i) and (ii) follow from (2.27). Similarly the limits claimed in (iii) and (iv) follow from (2.28)–(2.31), provided that $\gamma_+ u, \gamma_+ v \in H^1(\Gamma)$ and $\partial_n^+ u, \partial_n^+ v \in L^2(\Gamma)$. But for u, this follows from Corollary 2.28(i), while for v this follows from the impedance boundary condition and Corollary 2.28(ii). □

Under stronger smoothness conditions on Γ and on the data, the solution of each BVP and some of its derivatives may be continuous up to the boundary. The following local elliptic regularity result is a result of this sort which is sufficient for our purposes, applying in the important practical case when the boundary Γ is smooth except for corners and edges: for a proof see Theorem 4.18 in McLean (2000) (and see also Theorem 3.27 and its proof in Colton and Kress 1983 for a related result specific to the Helmholtz case).

Lemma 2.35. Suppose that u satisfies the interior or exterior Dirichlet or impedance BVP in $D = \Omega_\pm$ (*i.e.*, u satisfies (2.12), (2.13), (2.4) or (2.5)), and that Γ_0 is a relatively open subset of Γ which is C^∞, and that the boundary data $h \in C^\infty(\overline{\Gamma_0})$ and (in the impedance case) also $\beta \in C^\infty(\overline{\Gamma_0})$. Then u and its partial derivatives of all orders have continuous extensions from D to $D \cup \Gamma_0$.

2.9. The star-combined integral equation

In this subsection we introduce novel generalizations of the combined potential integral equations (2.68) and (2.71), building on recent developments in Spence, Chandler-Wilde, Graham and Smyshlyaev (2011).

Theorem 2.36. If u satisfies the exterior Dirichlet problem (2.12) with $h \in H^1(\Gamma)$, then

$$S_k \partial_n^+ u = \big(-\tfrac{1}{2}I + D_k\big)h \tag{2.96}$$

and

$$\big[n\big(\tfrac{1}{2}I + D_k'\big) + \nabla_\Gamma S_k\big]\partial_n^+ u = \big[nH_k + \nabla_\Gamma D_k - \tfrac{1}{2}\nabla_\Gamma\big]h. \tag{2.97}$$

Hence, for $\eta \in L^\infty(\Gamma)$ and $Z \in (L^\infty(\Gamma))^d$, we have

$$A'_{k,\eta,Z}\partial_n^+ u = B_{k,\eta,Z}h, \tag{2.98}$$

where the operator $A'_{k,\eta,Z} : L^2(\Gamma) \to L^2(\Gamma)$ is defined by

$$A'_{k,\eta,Z} := Z \cdot n\big(\tfrac{1}{2}I + D_k'\big) + Z \cdot \nabla_\Gamma S_k - \mathrm{i}\eta S_k, \tag{2.99}$$

and $B_{k,\eta,Z} : H^1(\Gamma) \to L^2(\Gamma)$ by

$$B_{k,\eta,Z} := Z \cdot \big[nH_k + \nabla_\Gamma D_k - \tfrac{1}{2}\nabla_\Gamma\big] - \mathrm{i}\eta\big(-\tfrac{1}{2}I + D_k\big). \tag{2.100}$$

Proof. We have observed already above in (2.57) that (2.96) holds under the weaker condition that $h \in H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$. If also $h \in H^1(\Gamma)$ then, by Corollary 2.28(i), $\partial_n^+ u \in L^2(\Gamma)$. Then, taking the non-tangential limit of the gradient of (2.66) as x approaches Γ, and using (2.30) and (2.31) and the jump relations (2.41)–(2.43), we obtain (2.97). □

The above derivation is straightforward, but the integral equation formulation (2.98) seems to be very recent (Spence *et al.* 2011). The integral equation can be seen as a generalization of (2.68), reducing to this equation when the choice $Z = n$ is made, since

$$A'_{k,\eta,n} = A'_{k,\eta} \quad \text{and} \quad B_{k,\eta,n} = B_{k,\eta}. \tag{2.101}$$

In the case when Ω_- is star-shaped with respect to an appropriately chosen origin (see Definition 5.5 below), Spence *et al.* (2011) proposed the integral equation formulation (2.97) with $Z(x) := x$, $x \in \Gamma$, and the special choice

$$\eta(x) := k|x| + \mathrm{i}\frac{d-1}{2}. \tag{2.102}$$

We will use, following Spence *et al.* (2011), the notation $\mathscr{A}_k$ for $A_{k,\eta,Z}$ in that case, that is,

$$\mathscr{A}_k := A'_{k,\eta,Z} = Z \cdot n\big(\tfrac{1}{2}I + D_k'\big) + Z \cdot \nabla_\Gamma S_k - \mathrm{i}\eta S_k, \tag{2.103}$$

with η given by (2.102) and $Z(x) := x$, $x \in \Gamma$. Following Spence *et al.* (2011) we will call $\mathscr{A}_k$ the *star-combined* operator.

The following theorem follows from results in Spence *et al.* (2011) discussed in Section 5.7, precisely from Theorem 5.26, which proves the stronger property of coercivity. These results, and their implications for high-frequency scattering computations, are discussed in more detail in Sections 5.7 and 6.4.

Theorem 2.37. If Ω_- is star-shaped with respect to the origin, which implies that, for some $c > 0$,

$$x \cdot n \geq c, \quad \text{for almost all } x \in \Gamma, \tag{2.104}$$

then $\mathscr{A}_k : L^2(\Gamma) \to L^2(\Gamma)$ is invertible with $\|\mathscr{A}_k^{-1}\|_{L^2(\Gamma)\leftarrow L^2(\Gamma)} \leq 2/c$.

The operator $A'_{k,\eta,Z}$ appearing in (2.98) also arises in solving the interior oblique impedance problem (2.6).

Theorem 2.38. The single-layer potential $u = \mathcal{S}_k\phi$, with density $\phi \in L^2(\Gamma)$, satisfies the interior oblique impedance problem (2.6) if

$$A'_{k,k\beta,Z}\phi = h. \tag{2.105}$$

If u satisfies the interior oblique impedance problem, then $u = \mathcal{S}_k\phi$, with $\phi \in L^2(\Gamma)$ satisfying (2.105).

Proof. If $u = \mathcal{S}_k\phi$ with $\phi \in L^2(\Gamma)$ then, by Theorems 2.14, 2.15 and (2.30), u satisfies the interior oblique impedance BVP if and only if

$$Z_n\partial_n^- u + Z \cdot \nabla_\Gamma \gamma_- u - \mathrm{i}k\beta\gamma_- u = h.$$

But, using the jump relations (2.41), this equation is precisely (2.105). On the other hand, if u satisfies the interior oblique impedance problem then $\gamma_- u \in H^1(\Gamma)$ and, by Theorem A.5, $\partial_n^- u \in L^2(\Gamma)$ so that $h_0 := \partial_n^- u - \mathrm{i}k\gamma_- u \in L^2(\Gamma)$. Now note that, by Theorem 2.3, the interior impedance BVP (2.5) with $\beta = 1$ and $h = h_0$ has exactly one solution. Clearly this solution is u. Now, recall that $A'_{k,k,n} = A'_{k,k}$, and this operator is invertible by Theorem 2.27. Further, the interior impedance problem is the special case of the interior oblique impedance problem in which $Z = n$. So, by the first part of this theorem, we see that $u = \mathcal{S}_k\phi$ with $\phi = \left(A'_{k,k}\right)^{-1} h_0 \in L^2(\Gamma)$. □

From Theorem 2.38 the invertibility of $A'_{k,k\beta,Z}$ is equivalent to the solvability of the interior oblique impedance problem.

Corollary 2.39. For $\beta \in L^\infty(\Gamma)$ and $Z \in (L^\infty(\Gamma))^d$, the operator $A'_{k,k\beta,Z} : L^2(\Gamma) \to L^2(\Gamma)$ is injective if and only if (2.6) with $h = 0$ has only the trivial solution, and is surjective if and only if (2.6) has a solution for every $h \in L^2(\Gamma)$.

Proof. The statement regarding surjectivity is clear from Theorem 2.38. So is the statement regarding injectivity, provided that $u = \mathcal{S}_k\phi = 0$ in Ω_- only if $\phi = 0$. But this is a consequence of Theorems 2.14 and 2.15 and (2.26) and the fact that the exterior Dirichlet problem (2.12) is uniquely solvable. More explicitly, $\phi \in L^2(\Gamma)$ and $u = \mathcal{S}_k\phi$ is zero in Ω_- then u satisfies (2.12) in Ω_+ with $h = 0$ and so $u = 0$ in Ω_+ by Corollary 2.9. Then, by (2.41), $\phi = \partial_n^- u - \partial_n^+ u = 0$. □

The following result is taken from Chandler-Wilde and Spence (2012), and is a consequence of Theorem 2.50 below. It strengthens the above corollary in the case when Z is real-valued and Lipschitz-continuous and Z_n is strictly positive.

Theorem 2.40. If $\beta \in L^\infty(\Gamma)$ and $Z \in (C^{0,1}(\Gamma))^d$ is real-valued, with

$$Z_n(x) := Z(x) \cdot n(x) \geq c, \quad \text{for almost all } x \in \Gamma, \tag{2.106}$$

for some $c > 0$, then the operator $A'_{k,k\beta,Z} : L^2(\Gamma) \to L^2(\Gamma)$ is Fredholm of index zero, and so is invertible if and only if (2.6) with $h = 0$ has only the trivial solution.

The above corollary and theorem show equivalence of questions of solvability of the interior oblique impedance problem to questions of solvability of the integral equation (2.105). One case in which both are clear is the case $Z = n$, when the interior oblique impedance problem reduces to the regular interior impedance problem. Another case is when Ω_- is star-shaped. In that case we have the following corollary of Theorems 2.37 and 2.38.

Corollary 2.41. If Ω_- is star-shaped with respect to the origin, so that (2.104) holds for some $c > 0$, then the interior oblique impedance problem with

$$Z(x) := x \quad \text{and} \quad \beta(x) := |x| + \mathrm{i}\frac{d-1}{2k}, \quad x \in \Gamma,$$

has the unique solution $u = \mathcal{S}_k\phi$ with $\phi = \left(A'_{k,k\beta,Z}\right)^{-1} h \in L^2(\Gamma)$. Moreover, $\|\phi\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \leq (2/c)\|h\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}$.

The above corollary applies to a special case of the interior oblique impedance BVP: the domain must be star-shaped and particular choices made for Z and β. But one context where this case may have application is in boundary-element-based domain decomposition methods for the Helmholtz equation, for example modifying the method of Steinbach and Windisch (2011). In domain decomposition methods the bounded Lipschitz domain Ω_- is initially divided into a number of subdomains $\Omega_1, \ldots, \Omega_M$, the choice of these up to the user: in particular, it is always possible to arrange that each Ω_j is star-shaped with respect to some point $x_j \in \Omega_j$. In the iterative solution schemes based on domain decomposition methods, a main step

is the solution of local problems for the Helmholtz equation on each subdomain Ω_j. In the design of such methods a choice that has to be made is the boundary condition to be used in these local problems. A natural choice in domain decomposition methods for the Helmholtz equation is the impedance boundary condition, so that one solves (2.5) on each subdomain, choosing β (*e.g.*, $\beta = 1$) to ensure that (2.5) is uniquely solvable; a variant on this with additional non-local operators in the impedance boundary condition is used in Steinbach and Windisch (2011). But an interesting alternative may be to use the oblique boundary condition (2.3) on Ω_j, choosing Z and β as in the above corollary, that is,

$$Z(x) := x - x_j \quad \text{and} \quad \beta(x) := |x - x_j| + \mathrm{i}\frac{d-1}{2k}, \quad x \in \partial\Omega_j.$$

This choice ensures that each local problem is well-posed, as is the integral equation formulation (2.105), but further, as we will see in Section 5.7, this integral equation formulation is coercive in the sense of Section 2.11, with a coercivity constant that is uniform in the wavenumber k.

In Section 2.7 we discussed the relation between boundary integral operators and Poincaré–Steklov operators. These results generalize to the operator $A'_{k,\eta,Z}$ and the interior oblique impedance BVP (2.6). Generalizing the notation $P^{-,\eta}_{\mathrm{ItD}}$ introduced before equation (2.86), let $P^{-,\eta,Z}_{\mathrm{ItD}}$ denote the operator which maps $h \in L^2(\Gamma)$ to $\gamma_- u \in H^1(\Gamma)$, where u is the solution of the interior oblique impedance problem (2.6) with $\beta = \eta/k$. Of course, $P^{-,\eta,Z}_{\mathrm{ItD}}$ is only well-defined for those $\eta \in L^\infty(\Gamma)$ and $Z \in (L^\infty(\Gamma))^d$ for which the interior oblique impedance BVP (2.6) has exactly one solution in the case that $\beta = \eta/k$. By Corollary 2.39 these are precisely the η and Z for which $A'_{k,\eta,Z}$ is invertible, as shown in the following result.

Theorem 2.42. Suppose that $k > 0$ and that $\eta \in L^\infty(\Gamma)$ and $Z \in (L^\infty(\Gamma))^d$ are such that $A'_{k,\eta,Z}$ is invertible. Then

$$P^{+}_{\mathrm{DtN}} = \big(A'_{k,\eta,Z}\big)^{-1} B_{k,\eta,Z}, \quad P^{-,\eta,Z}_{\mathrm{ItD}} = S_k\big(A'_{k,\eta,Z}\big)^{-1},$$

and, if $\operatorname{ess\,inf}_{x\in\Gamma} |Z_n(x)| > 0$,

$$\big(A'_{k,\eta,Z}\big)^{-1} = \frac{1}{Z_n} I - \left(P^{+}_{\mathrm{DtN}} - \frac{1}{Z_n}\big(\mathrm{i}\eta - Z\cdot\nabla_\Gamma\big)\right) P^{-,\eta,Z}_{\mathrm{ItD}}.$$

Proof. The first two results follow immediately from Theorems 2.36 and 2.38. To see the last equation, suppose that $\phi, h \in L^2(\Gamma)$ and $A'_{k,\eta,Z}\phi = h$ and define $u = \mathcal{S}_k\phi$. Then, by Theorem 2.38 and (2.41),

$$\gamma_+ u = \gamma_- u = P^{-,\eta,Z}_{\mathrm{ItD}} h, \quad \phi = \partial_n^- u - \partial_n^+ u.$$

Further,

$$\partial_n^+ u = P^{+}_{\mathrm{DtN}}\gamma_+ u = P^{+}_{\mathrm{DtN}} P^{-,\eta,Z}_{\mathrm{ItD}} h,$$

while, using Theorem 2.38, which implies that u satisfies the oblique boundary condition (2.3) with $\beta = \eta/k$, we have

$$\partial_n^- u = \frac{1}{Z_n}\big(h + \mathrm{i}\eta\gamma_- u - Z\cdot\nabla_\Gamma\gamma_- u\big) = \frac{1}{Z_n}\big(I + \mathrm{i}\eta P_{\mathrm{ItD}}^{-,\eta,Z} - Z\cdot\nabla_\Gamma P_{\mathrm{ItD}}^{-,\eta,Z}\big)h.$$

From these equations the rest of the theorem follows. □

2.10. Boundary integral equations for scattering problems

In Section 2.5 we derived various integral equation formulations for the exterior Dirichlet and impedance BVPs (2.12) and (2.13). These immediately imply integral equation formulations for the sound-soft and impedance scattering problems, (2.16) and (2.18). Indeed, to say that u^S satisfies one of these scattering problems is no more or less than saying that u^S satisfies the corresponding BVP with boundary data h determined by the incident field u^I, precisely by the requirement that the total field $u = u^I + u^S$ satisfies the respective homogeneous Dirichlet or impedance boundary condition. Thus, any integral equation for the exterior Dirichlet or impedance BVP immediately implies an integral equation formulation for the corresponding scattering problem.

The hybrid numerical–asymptotic schemes we will propose are based on discretization of direct integral equation formulations for the scattering problems. To implement these schemes we will work with essentially the integral equations (2.68) and (2.98) for the sound-soft scattering problems, with u replaced by u^S and $h = -u^I|_\Gamma$, and the integral equations (2.75) or (2.77) for the impedance scattering problem, with u replaced by u^S and h given by (2.17). But we will work with versions of these integral equations where the expressions for the inhomogeneous terms in the equations are simplified, thanks to the special form of the boundary data h. One way to obtain these simplified equations is to derive the following modified version of the Green's representation theorem (Theorem 2.21), which applies to scattering problems.

Theorem 2.43. In the case that u^S satisfies the sound-soft scattering problem (2.16), $\partial_n^+ u \in L^2(\Gamma)$ and

$$u(x) = u^I(x) - \int_\Gamma \Phi_k(x,y)\partial_n^+ u(y)\,\mathrm{d}s(y), \quad x\in\Omega_+. \tag{2.107}$$

In the case that u^S satisfies the impedance scattering problem (2.18), $\gamma_+ u \in H^1(\Gamma)$ and

$$u(x) = u^I(x) + \int_\Gamma \left(\frac{\partial\Phi_k(x,y)}{\partial n(y)} + \mathrm{i}k\beta(y)\Phi_k(x,y)\right)\gamma_+ u(y)\,\mathrm{d}s(y), \quad x\in\Omega_+. \tag{2.108}$$

Proof. From Theorem 2.12 or Corollary 2.13 it follows that $\partial_n^+ u \in L^2(\Gamma)$ and $\gamma_+ u \in H^1(\Gamma)$. From Theorem 2.21,

$$u^S(x) = \mathcal{D}_k \gamma_+ u^S(x) - \mathcal{S}_k \partial_n^+ u^S(x), \quad x \in \Omega_+,$$

while from Theorem 2.20,

$$0 = \mathcal{D}_k \gamma_+ u^I(x) - \mathcal{S}_k \partial_n^+ u^I(x), \quad x \in \Omega_+.$$

Adding these two equations and then adding u^I to both sides, we find that

$$u(x) = u^I(x) + \mathcal{D}_k \gamma_+ u(x) - \mathcal{S}_k \partial_n^+ u(x), \quad x \in \Omega_+.$$

Equations (2.107) and (2.108) follow from the boundary conditions satisfied in the sound-soft and impedance cases. □

From the above theorem and the jump relations (2.41) and (2.42), we deduce immediately the integral equation formulations in the next theorem. The rest of the theorem in respect of the Dirichlet problem is a consequence of Theorem 2.26 and that u^S satisfies the sound-soft scattering problem if and only if u^S satisfies the exterior problem (2.12) with Dirichlet data $h = -u^I|_\Gamma$. The proof that u given by (2.112) satisfies the impedance scattering problem provided (2.4) has at most one solution follows similarly to the proof of Theorem 2.26.

Theorem 2.44. If u^S satisfies the sound-soft scattering problem (2.16), then $\partial_n^+ u \in L^2(\Gamma)$ and

$$S_k \partial_n^+ u = u^I|_\Gamma. \tag{2.109}$$

Conversely, if $\phi \in H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ satisfies $S_k \phi = h$ and

$$u(x) = u^I(x) - \int_\Gamma \Phi_k(x,y)\phi(y)\,\mathrm{d}s(y), \quad x \in \Omega_+, \tag{2.110}$$

then u satisfies the scattering problem.

If u^S satisfies the impedance scattering problem (2.18), then $\gamma_+ u \in H^1(\Gamma)$ and

$$\left(\tfrac{1}{2}I - D_k\right)\gamma_+ u - \mathrm{i}k S_k(\beta \gamma_+ u) = u^I|_\Gamma. \tag{2.111}$$

Conversely, if $\phi \in H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$ is a solution to (2.111),

$$u(x) = u^I(x) + \int_\Gamma \left(\frac{\partial \Phi_k(x,y)}{\partial n(y)} + \mathrm{i}k\beta(y)\Phi_k(x,y) \right) \gamma_+ \phi(y)\,\mathrm{d}s(y), \quad x \in \Omega_+, \tag{2.112}$$

and the wavenumber k is such that the homogeneous interior Dirichlet problem ((2.4) with $h = 0$) has only the trivial solution, then u satisfies the impedance scattering problem.

Remark 2.45. We have shown below equation (2.76) that (2.75) (and so also (2.111)) is not uniquely solvable at *irregular* wavenumbers k for which the homogeneous interior Dirichlet problem has a non-trivial solution. Further, at these wavenumbers, it does not hold that (2.112) is a solution to the impedance scattering problem for every solution ϕ of (2.111). (This is in contrast to (2.110), which satisfies the sound-soft scattering problem even when (2.109) has more than one solution, which it does for the same irregular wavenumbers.) This 'irregular frequency' property leads, for standard BEM discretizations, to very bad conditioning and inaccurate numerical approximations of u in a neighbourhood of such k. In Section 7.4, through computations using (2.111) *precisely at irregular wavenumbers where the integral equation is not uniquely solvable*, we see that a bonus of the novel discretization methods that we propose is that they, at least in these examples, do not exhibit any conditioning problems at the discrete level, and in fact produce accurate numerical results.

As observed in Remark 2.45, the integral equations (2.109) and (2.111) are not uniquely solvable for all $k > 0$. The standard cure is to use the combined potential integral equations introduced in Section 2.6. The direct versions of the combined potential equations are the integral equation (2.68) for the sound-soft problem (with u replaced by u^S and $h = -u^I|_\Gamma$) and (2.77) for the impedance scattering problem (with u replaced by u^S and h given by (2.17)). Versions of these equations with simplified expressions for the inhomogeneous terms on the right-hand side are stated in the following two theorems. In the first of these theorems we derive a version of the generalized integral equation (2.98) which includes (2.68) as a special case. Note that (2.114) is a restatement of equation (1.5) in Section 1.

Theorem 2.46. Suppose that u^S satisfies the sound-soft scattering problem (2.16) and that $\eta \in L^\infty(\Gamma)$ and $Z \in (L^\infty(\Gamma))^d$. Then $\partial_n^+ u \in L^2(\Gamma)$ satisfies the integral equation

$$A'_{k,\eta,Z}\partial_n^+ u = f_{k,\eta,Z} := [Z \cdot \nabla u^I - \mathrm{i}\eta u^I]|_\Gamma. \tag{2.113}$$

In the case that $Z = n$ and η is constant, this equation simplifies to

$$A'_{k,\eta}\partial_n^+ u = f_{k,\eta} := f_{k,\eta,n} = [\partial_n^+ u^I - \mathrm{i}\eta u^I]|_\Gamma, \tag{2.114}$$

and this equation is uniquely solvable for all $k > 0$ if $\operatorname{Re}\eta \neq 0$. In the case that Ω_- is star-shaped with respect to the origin, satisfying (2.104) for some $c > 0$, $Z(x) := x$, for $x \in \Gamma$, and η is given by (2.102), equation (2.113) is

$$\mathscr{A}_k\partial_n^+ u = f_k := [x \cdot \nabla u^I - \mathrm{i}\eta u^I]|_\Gamma, \tag{2.115}$$

with $\mathscr{A}_k$ defined by (2.103), and this equation is uniquely solvable for all $k > 0$.

Proof. That $\partial_n^+ u$ satisfies (2.113) follows from (2.107), (2.30), (2.31) and the jump relations (2.41)–(2.43). That (2.114) is uniquely solvable follows from Theorem 2.27, and that (2.115) is uniquely solvable from Theorem 2.37. □

We will refer to (2.115) as the *star-combined* integral equation.

The second theorem states the standard combined potential integral equation for the impedance scattering problem, dating back to Burton and Miller (1971), who were concerned with the sound-hard case $\beta = 0$.

Theorem 2.47. If u^S satisfies the impedance scattering problem (2.18) and $\eta \in \mathbb{C}$, then $\gamma_+ u \in H^1(\Gamma)$ satisfies the integral equation

$$C_{k,\eta,k\beta}\, \gamma_+ u = -\left[\frac{\partial u^I}{\partial n} - \mathrm{i}\eta u^I\right]\Bigg|_\Gamma, \tag{2.116}$$

with $C_{k,\eta,k\beta}$ defined by (2.78). If $\operatorname{Re}\eta \neq 0$ then $\gamma_+ u$ is the unique solution in $H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$ of this equation.

Proof. Equation (2.116) follows from applying the operator $\partial_n^+ - \mathrm{i}\eta\gamma_+$ to (2.108) (*i.e.*, from taking a particular linear combination of Neumann and Dirichlet traces), on using the jump relations (2.41)–(2.43). That $\gamma_+ u$ is the unique solution of this equation follows from Theorem 2.27. □

2.11. Coercivity of boundary integral operators

For the analysis of numerical methods, for example for the combined potential equation (2.68), it is important that the boundary integral operator ($A'_{k,\eta}$ in (2.68)) is invertible, so that the equation we are solving is well-posed. However, additional properties of the operator are needed to prove convergence of numerical schemes and deduce error estimates.

The error analysis of BIE methods is most developed for schemes based on Galerkin methods, and this will be our focus in Section 6. The argument will proceed as outlined in Section 1, that is, we prove a quasi-optimal error estimate of the form (1.7), and then bound the best approximation error. In particular, for the hybrid methods introduced in Section 3, we cannot currently see any prospect of proving estimates of the form (1.7) for anything other than Galerkin schemes. The results that have been obtained in this direction will be described in Section 6.

Our focus in later sections is on high-frequency analysis, proving (1.7) with the dependence of the constant C on k made explicit. However, although the standard combined potential formulations (2.68) and (2.71) date back at least to Brakhage and Werner (1965) and Burton and Miller (1971), the establishment of (1.7) for standard Galerkin methods, even for fixed k (indeed, even for the Laplace case $k = 0$) remains an outstanding open problem for the case of general Lipschitz Γ. We will describe below, and in

Section 5.7, progress in resolving this open problem, indeed in a way which also teases out the dependence on k. We will also describe briefly in this subsection ways that have been proposed in the last five years for modifying equations (2.68) and (2.71), introducing additional operators into these equations which imply additional computational effort, with the benefit that they allow (1.7) to be established (for fixed k) for general Lipschitz Γ.

The Galerkin method starts by writing the integral equation in weak form as follows: find $v \in \mathcal{V}$ such that

$$a(v, w) = F(w), \quad \text{for all } w \in \mathcal{V}. \tag{2.117}$$

Here $\mathcal{V}$ is some Hilbert space, F is an anti-linear continuous functional on $\mathcal{V}$, that is, some element of $\mathcal{V}'$, the dual space of $\mathcal{V}$, and a is a bounded sesquilinear form on $\mathcal{V} \times \mathcal{V}$, so that, for some constant $B \geq 0$,

$$|a(v, w)| \leq B\|u\| \, \|w\|, \quad v, w \in \mathcal{V}. \tag{2.118}$$

(The smallest $B \geq 0$ for which this inequality holds is the *norm* of a.) The Galerkin method for approximating (2.117) then seeks a solution $v_N \in \mathcal{V}_N \subset \mathcal{V}$, where $\mathcal{V}_N$ is a finite-dimensional subspace, requiring that

$$a(v_N, w_N) = F(w_N), \quad \text{for all } w_N \in \mathcal{V}_N. \tag{2.119}$$

In the case when the integral equation takes the form

$$Av = f,$$

where $v \in \mathcal{V}$, $f \in \mathcal{V}'$, and $A : \mathcal{V} \to \mathcal{V}'$ is a bounded linear operator, the standard way to construct the weak form (2.117) is to define

$$a(v, w) := \langle Av, w\rangle \quad \text{and} \quad F(w) := \langle f, w\rangle, \tag{2.120}$$

where, for $f \in \mathcal{V}'$, $w \in \mathcal{V}$, $\langle f, w\rangle$ denotes the action of the functional f on w.

Let us illustrate this general framework by application to three of the integral equation formulations of Section 2.10, using the fact that (see Section A.3) $H^{-s}(\Gamma)$ is (isomorphic to) the dual space of $H^s(\Gamma)$. For (2.109) we take $\mathcal{V} = H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$, $\mathcal{V}' = H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$, $v = \partial_n^+ u$,

$$a(v, w) := \langle S_k v, w\rangle_\Gamma \quad \text{and} \quad F(w) := \langle u^I|_\Gamma, w\rangle_\Gamma, \tag{2.121}$$

where $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_\Gamma$ is defined in (A.24). For the integral equation (2.113), which will be the main focus in Section 6, the natural weak form is obtained by setting $\mathcal{V} = \mathcal{V}' = L^2(\Gamma)$, $v = \partial_n^+ u$,

$$a(v, w) := (A'_{k,\eta,Z}\, v, w) \quad \text{and} \quad F(w) := (f_{k,\eta,Z}, w). \tag{2.122}$$

Finally, the standard weak formulation of (2.116) is obtained by setting $\mathcal{V} = H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$, $\mathcal{V}' = H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$, $v = \gamma_+ u$,

$$a(v, w) := \langle C_{k,\eta,k\beta}\, v, w\rangle_\Gamma \quad \text{and} \quad F(w) := \left\langle -\left[\frac{\partial u^I}{\partial n} - \mathrm{i}\eta u^I\right]\Big|_\Gamma, w \right\rangle_\Gamma. \tag{2.123}$$

All of these sesquilinear forms are bounded, the norm of the sesquilinear form a being the norm of the corresponding operator,

$$S_k : H^{-1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{1/2}(\Gamma), \quad A'_{k,\eta,Z} : L^2(\Gamma) \to L^2(\Gamma),$$
$$\text{and} \quad C_{k,\eta,k\beta} : H^{1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{-1/2}(\Gamma),$$

in the respective cases (2.121), (2.122), and (2.123).

We will call a bounded sesquilinear form a on $\mathcal{V} \times \mathcal{V}$ *coercive* if, for some $\alpha > 0$ (the *coercivity constant*),

$$|a(v, v)| \geq \alpha \|v\|^2, \quad \text{for all } v \in \mathcal{V}. \tag{2.124}$$

Likewise, we will call the bounded linear operator $A : \mathcal{V} \to \mathcal{V}'$ coercive (with coercivity constant α) if the sesquilinear form a given by (2.120) is coercive. It is easy to see that if $A : \mathcal{V} \to \mathcal{V}'$ is coercive then so is its adjoint $A^* : \mathcal{V}' \to \mathcal{V}$ with the same coercivity constant α.

Simple but powerful results hold if a is bounded and coercive: the Lax–Milgram lemma guarantees that (2.117) has exactly one solution $v \in \mathcal{V}$ for every $w \in \mathcal{V}$, with

$$\|v\|_{\mathcal{V}} \leq \alpha^{-1} \|f\|_{\mathcal{V}'}, \tag{2.125}$$

and existence of the Galerkin solution and quasi-optimality is guaranteed by Céa's lemma.

Lemma 2.48. (Céa's lemma) If the sesquilinear form a is bounded and coercive, satisfying (2.118) and (2.124), then (2.119) has exactly one solution $v_N \in \mathcal{V}_N$, which satisfies

$$\|v - v_N\| \leq \frac{B}{\alpha} \inf_{w_N \in \mathcal{V}_N} \|v - w_N\|. \tag{2.126}$$

This version of Céa's lemma will be one of the main analysis tools for our hybrid numerical-asymptotic methods in Section 6. This will be surprising to many readers since variational problems of the form (2.117), arising from BVPs for the Helmholtz equation, are standard examples of indefinite problems where coercivity does not hold, at least for sufficiently large k. It has seemed reasonable to assume that the same should hold true for weak formulations arising via integral equation formulations. However recent results, discussed in Section 5.7, show that coercivity holds for (2.122), for certain choices of Z and a range of geometries, with α bounded away from zero for all sufficiently large k.

In cases where coercivity does not hold (or is not known to hold) analysis of Galerkin methods, at least for fixed k, can be achieved when the operator A takes the form $A = B + C$, where $B : \mathcal{V} \to \mathcal{V}'$ is coercive and $C : \mathcal{V} \to \mathcal{V}'$ is compact. We will say that A is a *compactly perturbed coercive* operator in

this case. (Many authors call our 'coercive' and 'compactly perturbed coercive' *elliptic* and *coercive* respectively.) The standard generalization of Céa's lemma to this case is as follows (see, *e.g.*, Theorem 8.11 in Steinbach 2008).

Theorem 2.49. Suppose the sesquilinear form a is given by (2.120), where the bounded linear operator $A : \mathcal{V} \to \mathcal{V}'$ is a compactly perturbed coercive operator and is injective. Suppose moreover that $(\mathcal{V}_N)_{N\in\mathbb{N}}$ is a sequence of approximation spaces converging to $\mathcal{V}$, in the sense that

$$\inf_{w_N\in\mathcal{V}_N} \|w - w_N\| \to 0 \quad \text{as } N \to \infty,$$

for every $w \in \mathcal{V}$. Then there exists $N_0 \in \mathbb{N}$ and $C > 0$ such that, for $N \geq N_0$, (2.119) has exactly one solution $v_N \in \mathcal{V}_N$, which satisfies

$$\|v - v_N\| \leq C \inf_{w_N\in\mathcal{V}_N} \|v - w_N\|.$$

This theorem is relevant to the combined potential integral equation (2.116) for the impedance scattering problem, for general Lipschitz Γ, since $C_{k,\eta,k\beta} : H^{1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ is a compactly perturbed coercive operator (since the same holds for H_k (McLean 2000, Theorem 7.8) and $C_{k,\eta,k\beta} - H_k$ is compact), and is also injective for all $k > 0$ if $\operatorname{Re}\eta \neq 0$ (see Theorem 2.27). In particular, this means that Theorem 2.49 applies to the standard Burton–Miller integral equation (Burton and Miller 1971) for sound-hard scattering (the special case of (2.116) when $\beta = 0$), although the dependence of N_0 and C on k in this case is still unknown.

Perhaps surprisingly, up to now it seemed harder to develop the theory for Galerkin BIE methods in the general Lipschitz case for sound-soft scatterers. Theorem 2.49 does apply to the integral equation (2.109) for the sound-soft scattering problem, but not for every $k > 0$. The reason is that, while, for all $k > 0$, $S_k : H^{-1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$ is a compactly perturbed coercive operator (see, *e.g.*, Steinbach 2008, Theorem 6.40), S_k is not injective for all $k > 0$: see Theorem 2.25. On the other hand, the operator $A'_{k,\eta} : L^2(\Gamma) \to L^2(\Gamma)$ is injective, indeed invertible, for all $k > 0$ (Theorem 2.27). However, for general Lipschitz Γ, it is an open question whether $A'_{k,\eta}$ is a compactly perturbed coercive operator. Indeed this question is equivalent, since $A'_{k,\eta}$ is compactly perturbed coercive if and only if $A'_{0,0}$ is, as the difference $A'_{k,\eta} - A'_{0,0}$ is compact (*e.g.*, Chandler-Wilde and Langdon 2007), to the long-standing open question: Is

$$A'_{0,0} = \tfrac{1}{2}I + D'_0,$$

considered as an operator on $L^2(\Gamma)$, a compact perturbation of a coercive operator for general Lipschitz Γ?

The answer to this last question is yes if Γ is C^1, for then D'_0 itself is compact (Fabes, Jodeit and Riviere 1978), and so $A'_{0,0}$ and $A'_{k,\eta}$ are compact

perturbations of $\frac{1}{2}I$. In the 2D case, when Γ is Lipschitz and a curvilinear polygon (relevant to many of the examples in this article), it has been known since the 1960s (*e.g.*, Shelepov 1969) that the answer is also yes. For general Lipschitz Γ it was shown by Elschner (1992, Appendix A) (*cf.* Steinbach and Wendland 2001, Steinbach 2008, §6.64, Costabel 2007, Section 4.1), that $A'_{0,0} + cS_0$ is coercive, for all sufficiently large $c > 0$, but on $H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ rather than $L^2(\Gamma)$, meaning that

$$|\big((A'_{0,0} + cS_0)v, v\big)_{H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)}| \geq \alpha \|v\|^2_{H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)},$$

where $(\cdot,\cdot)_{H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)}$ is the inner product on $H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$. Since S_0 is a compact operator on $H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$, it follows that $A'_{0,0}$ is compactly perturbed coercive and Theorem 2.49 can be applied to Galerkin methods for (2.113). However, these are not the usual Galerkin methods but non-standard methods, formulated with respect to the non-local $H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ inner product, a setting which is less straightforward than $L^2(\Gamma)$ for computation. See Wendland (2009) for a survey that discusses in more detail what is known about these questions for the operator $A'_{0,0}$.

Given these difficulties in the Galerkin analysis for equations involving $A_{k,\eta}$ and $A'_{k,\eta}$, a number of authors (Buffa and Hiptmair 2005, Buffa and Sauter 2006, Engleder and Steinbach 2007, Engleder and Steinbach 2008) have proposed methods involving modified integral operators. Focusing on $A'_{k,\eta}$ for convenience, these modifications have in common that they replace the 'second-kind' part, $\frac{1}{2}I + D'_k$, of the operator by the product of $\frac{1}{2}I + D'_k$ and another non-local operator, so that the resulting product is a compact operator from $H^{-1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$, and the whole modified operator $A^{\dagger}_{k,\eta}$ is injective (like $A'_{k,\eta}$) and is a compactly perturbed coercive operator from $H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ to $H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$. These modifications are attractive theoretically, but have the disadvantage that their implementation is more complicated and expensive.

An alternative and potentially less costly modification is to use $A'_{k,\eta,Z}$ instead of $A'_{k,\eta}$. The following result, which suggests that this may be a promising idea, is shown in Chandler-Wilde and Spence (2012).

Theorem 2.50. If $\eta \in \mathbb{C}$ and $Z \in (C^{0,1}(\Gamma))^d$ is real-valued and satisfies (2.106) for some $c > 0$, then the operator $A'_{k,\eta,Z} : L^2(\Gamma) \to L^2(\Gamma)$ is a compactly perturbed coercive operator.

This result is encouraging but is not quite as helpful as we would like, as we do not know in general whether $A'_{k,\eta,Z}$ is injective. One case where this *is* clear is when $Z = n$ and $\operatorname{Re}\eta \neq 0$, as then $A'_{k,\eta,Z} = A'_{k,\eta}$ is invertible, but the theorem does not apply in this case unless Γ is $C^{1,1}$.

3. Asymptotics and hybrid approximation spaces

Now that we have developed BIE formulations of scattering problems in Section 2 we are ready to discuss hybrid numerical-asymptotic methods for their solution, and in particular to design hybrid approximation spaces informed by asymptotic analysis, addressing question **Q1** posed in Section 1. The methods of interest here will in general approximate the (k-dependent) solution v of a BIE using an ansatz of the form

$$v(x) \approx V_0(x,k) + c(k) \sum_{m=1}^{M} V_m(x,k)\, \exp(\mathrm{i}k\psi_m(x)), \quad x \in \Gamma. \tag{3.1}$$

In this representation, V_0 is a known (generally oscillatory) function, the phases ψ_m are chosen *a priori*, $c(k)$ is a scaling factor, explicitly chosen, and the amplitudes V_m, $m = 1, \ldots, M$, are approximated numerically. The idea (and in many cases this can be rigorously proved) is that, if the phases are carefully chosen, then $V_m(\cdot, k)$, $m = 1, \ldots, M$, will be much less oscillatory than v and so can be better approximated by piecewise polynomials than v itself.

One possible starting point for constructing such hybrid methods is related to the *physical optics* (or *Kirchhoff*) approximation. Consider a plane wave $u^I(x) := \exp(\mathrm{i}kx \cdot \hat{a})$ incident on an infinite plane passing through (for simplicity only) the origin, with unit normal direction n. Then, under the assumption of sound-soft scattering, the correct physical scattered field is the reflected plane wave

$$u^R(x) = -\exp(\mathrm{i}kx \cdot \hat{a}^R), \quad \text{where} \quad \hat{a}^R = \hat{a} - 2(n \cdot \hat{a})n. \tag{3.2}$$

(The Sommerfeld radiation condition (2.9) is not, of course, relevant in this case as the scatterer is unbounded.) It follows immediately that if $u := u^I + u^R$ is the total wave then its normal derivative $v = \partial u/\partial n$ satisfies

$$v(x) = 2\frac{\partial u^I}{\partial n}(x) = 2\mathrm{i}kn \cdot \hat{a}\, \exp(\mathrm{i}kx \cdot \hat{a}), \quad \text{on} \quad \Gamma. \tag{3.3}$$

Based on the observation that in the high frequency case the scatterer acts locally like a plane, a plausible high-frequency approximation for $v = \partial u/\partial n$ in the scattering problem (2.15), at least when the scatterer is convex, is that, on Γ,

$$v \approx \begin{cases} 2\dfrac{\partial u^I}{\partial n} & \text{on the illuminated part,} \\ 0 & \text{on the part in shadow.} \end{cases} \tag{3.4}$$

In line with many other authors, we will refer to this as the *physical optics* approximation; some other authors call this a geometrical optics approximation. Following usual practice, we will also call the approximation to

the solution of (2.15) that is obtained by substituting the approximation (3.4) to $\partial u/\partial n$ into the integral representation (2.107), the *physical optics* or *Kirchhoff* approximation. (The analogous approximation in the sound-hard case is that $v = u|_\Gamma$, the restriction of u to Γ, satisfies $v \approx 2u^I|_\Gamma$ on the illuminated part of Γ and $v \approx 0$ on the part in shadow.)

For a general smooth, strictly convex obstacle the scattering surface naturally divides into illuminated and shadow zones,

$$\{x \in \Gamma : n(x) \cdot \hat{a} < 0\} \quad \text{and} \quad \{x \in \Gamma : n(x) \cdot \hat{a} > 0\}, \quad \text{respectively,} \tag{3.5}$$

which are separated by the *shadow boundary*:

$$S := \{x \in \Gamma : n(x) \cdot \hat{a} = 0\}. \tag{3.6}$$

Motivated by the physical optics approximation (3.4), which is valid for high frequency for such scatterers, a plausible ansatz in the case when the incident field is the plane wave $u^I(x) := \exp(\mathrm{i}kx \cdot \hat{a})$, as discussed already in Section 1, is that

$$v(x) = \frac{\partial u}{\partial n}(x) \approx kV(x,k) \exp(\mathrm{i}kx \cdot \hat{a}), \tag{3.7}$$

where V is a well-behaved non-oscillatory function away from the shadow boundary. Much work has been done on analysing this approximation (see the discussion in Section 3.1). This is our first example of the general ansatz (3.1).

Example 3.1. The ansatz (3.1), with $M = 1$, $V_0 \equiv 0$ and $\psi_1(x) = x \cdot \hat{a}$, motivated by the physical optics approximation (3.4), is sometimes assumed to hold (with V_1 non-oscillatory) on the whole of Γ, even when Γ is not convex. In Section 3.1 we prove its utility, at least for the smooth convex case.

On the other hand, for a convex polygonal scatterer it can be shown (see Section 3.3) that, if V_0 is the physical optics approximation (3.4), that is,

$$V_0 := \begin{cases} 2\dfrac{\partial u^I}{\partial n} & \text{on illuminated sides,} \\ 0 & \text{on sides in shadow,} \end{cases} \tag{3.8}$$

then

$$v = V_0 + \Sigma, \tag{3.9}$$

where Σ denotes a sum of terms (of a similar form to the summation on the right-hand side of (3.1)), arising from diffraction of the incoming wave at the corners of the polygon.

Example 3.2. The ansatz (3.1), with V_0 given by (3.8) and $M = 2n_s$, where n_s is the number of sides of Γ, will be proposed for convex polygons

in Section 3.3, with the phases ψ_m determined by the orientation of the sides of Γ.

As we have described already in Section 1, a number of authors in the acoustics and electromagnetics literature, starting with Uncles (1976), have proposed the ansatz of Example 3.1 as the basis for hybrid numerical-asymptotic methods for scattering by convex obstacles. Abboud, Nédélec and Zhou (1994, 1995) developed this idea, apparently independently of earlier work, and took the first steps towards numerical analysis of these methods. These authors considered the impedance scattering problem (2.18) and formulated this as the first-kind BIE

$$-H_k v + k^2 \beta S_k(\beta v) - \mathrm{i}k D_k'(\beta v) - \mathrm{i}k\beta D_k v = g_k := -\frac{\partial u^I}{\partial n} - \mathrm{i}k\beta u^I, \quad (3.10)$$

where $v = u|_\Gamma$, the restriction of u to Γ. Then the ansatz of Example 3.1 was used, and the unknown 'slow variable' $V_1(\cdot, k)$ was approximated using the h-version BEM. Although the method in Abboud, Nédélec and Zhou (1994, 1995) lacks a rigorous error analysis, some formal arguments were given which suggested that consistency error for the Galerkin method for (3.10) remains bounded as $k \to \infty$, provided the BEM is employed with $O(k^{(d-1)/3})$ degrees of freedom. In Abboud *et al.* (1995), and also in the thesis Zhou (1995), a range of experiments on smooth and non-smooth convex 2D objects (and some experiments also on the sphere) were presented, illustrating the sharpness of the formal error estimate described above. The authors also discussed there the computation of the Galerkin stiffness matrix, and proposed some methods for computing the matrix entries which (while not being independent of k in cost) do allow a reduction in complexity by making some use of the method of stationary phase.

In terms of key algorithmic ideas, a substantial step forward was taken in the work of Bruno and collaborators (Bruno *et al.* 2004), which again employed the ansatz of Example 3.1 but combined it with a more careful discretization scheme, aimed at avoiding the breakdown of the ansatz near the shadow boundary. Starting from the direct combined potential formulation (2.114), employing the ansatz of Example 3.1, and multiplying each side of (2.114) by $\exp(-\mathrm{i}kx \cdot \hat{a})$, one obtains

$$\left(\frac{1}{2}I + \widetilde{D_k}' - \mathrm{i}\eta\widetilde{S_k}\right) V(\cdot, k) \;=\; \mathrm{i}(kn \cdot \hat{a} - \eta), \quad (3.11)$$

where the single-layer and adjoint double-layer operators with modulated kernels, $\widetilde{S_k}$ and $\widetilde{D_k}'$ respectively, are defined by

$$\widetilde{S_k}\phi(x) := \int_\Gamma \Phi_k(x, y) \exp(\mathrm{i}k(y - x) \cdot \hat{a})\phi(y)\, \mathrm{d}s(y), \quad (3.12)$$

and

$$\widetilde{D_k}'\phi(x) := \int_\Gamma \frac{\partial \Phi_k(x,y)}{\partial n(x)} \exp(\mathrm{i}k(y-x)\cdot\hat{a})\phi(y)\,\mathrm{d}s(y). \tag{3.13}$$

These integral operators have oscillatory kernels containing a factor of the form $\exp(\mathrm{i}k\Psi(x,y))$, where $\Psi(x,y) = |x-y| + (y-x)\cdot\hat{a}$. (This will be explained in more detail later: see, *e.g.*, (4.41).) To solve (3.11), Bruno *et al.* (2004) sampled V at points of a suitable mesh on Γ, and applied special integration rules based on partitions of unity and exponentially convergent quadrature, carefully handling the oscillations in the kernel, to obtain a Nyström-type scheme. The result is a fully discrete method which, in the examples computed, turns out to have close to k-independent error for a fixed number of degrees of freedom. To avoid the breakdown of the approximation of Example 3.1 at the shadow boundary S, the mesh is graded in $O(k^{-1/3})$ neighbourhoods of S. The estimates on the derivatives of V in Section 3.1 below could be used to provide consistency estimates for such a procedure. The work of Bruno *et al.* (2004) was continued by Bruno and Geuzaine (2007), concentrating on the formulation of a robust quadrature method for the oscillatory integrals which arise in the discretization of (3.11) in 3D. This is described in more detail in Section 4.5.

Huybrechs and Vandewalle (2007*b*) solved a model 2D problem related to (3.11), by collocation with a piecewise polynomial basis, and the emphasis then was on the construction of efficient quadrature schemes for the entries of the collocation matrix. These were evaluated by a combination of generalized Filon quadrature with a steepest descent approach; see Sections 4.2 and 4.5 for details. By examining the location of the stationary points of the phase Ψ, Huybrechs and Vandewalle were able to demonstrate that their scheme leads to a sparse BEM formulation, with numerical results comparable to those of Bruno *et al.* (2004) being obtained.

Ganesh and Hawkins (2011) solved (3.11) in the case of a 3D smooth convex obstacle, using a discrete Galerkin method with global polynomial basis and a specially chosen global quadrature rule to compute the Galerkin matrix entries (again, see Section 4.5 for details). Following similar lines to the purely formal argument put forward by Abboud, Nédélec and Zhou (1994), one might expect that (because no special action is taken at the shadow boundary) the method would require $O(k^{2/3})$ degrees of freedom to maintain accuracy as $k \to \infty$, and numerical results in Ganesh and Hawkins (2011) support this conjecture. However this method is much more efficient than standard BEM (which requires at least $O(k^2)$ degrees of freedom as $k \to \infty$) and impressive results for rather large k are presented in Ganesh and Hawkins (2011). The method of Ganesh and Hawkins (2011) requires that the scatterer can be mapped to the sphere with an invertible map, but this is always true for convex obstacles.

For the rest of this section we will describe the asymptotic background to the design of various hybrid numerical-asymptotic methods.

3.1. Smooth convex obstacles

Let us consider the sound-soft scattering problem (2.15). Under the assumption that Γ is C^∞ and convex (in 2D or 3D), and has strictly positive curvature, we write the solution $v := \partial u/\partial n$ of (1.3) as

$$v(x) := kV(x,k)\exp(\mathrm{i}kx\cdot\hat{a}), \quad x\in\Gamma \tag{3.14}$$

(*i.e.*, we employ the ansatz of Example 3.1). The key question is how $V(x,k)$ behaves for x near the shadow boundary defined in (3.6) (this is essentially equivalent to understanding how the total field u behaves in the transition region between the illuminated and shadow parts of the exterior domain). The first (non-rigorous) results on this question were by Fock (*e.g.*, Fock 1965), with these results valid in a neighbourhood of the shadow boundary whose width shrinks to zero as $k\to\infty$. This was followed by Ludwig (1967), who obtained (non-rigorous) results in a k-independent neighbourhood of the shadow boundary, and subsequently by the rigorous analysis of Buslaev (1964, 1975); see also Babich and Buldyrev (1991, Chapter 13), Babich and Kirpichnikova (1979) and further references therein. The following result is quoted from Melrose and Taylor (1985, Theorem 9.27), but the same result can essentially be found elsewhere in the literature. For example the 'Fundamental Theorem' in Buslaev (1975, §1.9) concerns the case of Neumann boundary conditions and a point source incident wave, although the general method used there can also be directly extended to the Dirichlet boundary conditions and plane wave incidence which are considered here (Buslaev 1962).

Theorem 3.3. There exists $\Delta>0$ such that $V(x,k)$ has the asymptotic expansion

$$V(x,k)\sim\sum_{\ell,m\geq 0}k^{-1/3-2\ell/3-m}b_{\ell,m}(x)\Phi^{(\ell)}(k^{1/3}Z(x)),\quad x\in\Gamma_\Delta, \tag{3.15}$$

as $k\to\infty$, where $\Gamma_\Delta := \{x\in\Gamma : \mathrm{dist}(x,S)\leq\Delta\}$, and S is the *shadow boundary* defined in (3.6).

The precise meaning of the asymptotic expansion in (3.15) can be made clear using the *symbol classes* of Hörmander (1983*a*, p. 236, Definition 7.8.1), also mentioned briefly in Melrose and Taylor (1985, p. 249). In the context of our problem, a function $p=p(x,k)$ (where $x\in\Gamma_\Delta$ and $k\in(0,\infty)$) is said to lie in the symbol class $S^\mu_{\rho,\delta}$ if

$$|D_k^\alpha D_x^n p(x,k)|\leq C_{\alpha,n}(1+k)^{\mu-\rho\alpha+\delta n},\quad \alpha,\ n\in\mathbb{N}\cup\{0\},$$

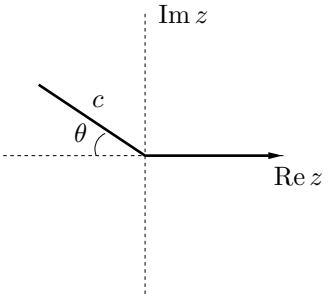


Figure 3.1. The contour c in the complex plane.

where D_x^n denotes a surface derivative of order n on Γ_Δ.

Then, the precise meaning of (3.15) is that, for any $\mu < 0$ and for all $L, M \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}$ sufficiently large (depending on μ), the remainder

$$R_{L,M} := V(x,k) - \sum_{\ell,m=0}^{L,M} k^{-1/3-2\ell/3-m} b_{\ell,m}(x) \Phi^{(\ell)}(k^{1/3} Z(x))$$

satisfies

$$R_{L,M} \in S^{\mu}_{2/3,1/3} \quad \text{for } (x,k) \in I_\Delta \times (0,\infty) \tag{3.16}$$

(*i.e.*, $\rho = 2/3$, $\delta = 1/3$ in this case). This interpretation is equivalent to saying that (3.15) is a conventional asymptotic expansion in the limit as $k \to \infty$, and remains so under term-by-term differentiation on both sides with respect to both x and k. This use of the $\sim$ symbol in (3.15) is prevalent throughout the rigorous asymptotics and microlocal analysis literature, and it always has the same meaning.

In the expansion (3.15), $b_{\ell,m}$ are $\mathcal{C}^\infty$ complex-valued functions on Γ_Δ and Z is a $\mathcal{C}^\infty$ real-valued function on Γ_Δ, which vanishes to first order on S and is positive-valued on the illuminated zone and negative-valued on the shadow zone (see (3.5)). Moreover $\Phi : \mathbb{C} \to \mathbb{C}$ is an entire function (also known as 'Fock's integral' (*e.g.*, Fock 1965, §7, 12), defined by

$$\Phi(\tau) := \exp(-\mathrm{i}\tau^3/3) \int_c \frac{\exp(-\mathrm{i}z\tau)}{\mathrm{Ai}\,(\exp(2\pi\mathrm{i}/3)z)}\,\mathrm{d}z, \tag{3.17}$$

where Ai is the Airy function and c is the contour depicted in Figure 3.1, with θ chosen to be any sufficiently small positive angle, ensuring the absolute convergence of (3.17). We note that Fock's integral is often denoted $\Psi(\tau)$ in other references (see for example Melrose and Taylor 1985). The asymptotics of $\Phi(\tau)$ are given in Melrose and Taylor (1985, Lemma 9.9) (for $\tau \to +\infty$), whereas for $\tau \to -\infty$ they can be inferred from Babich

and Buldyrev (1991, p. 393), Buslaev (1964, Lemma 8); for a summary see Domínguez *et al.* (2007). From these one can obtain the derivative estimates

$$|\Phi(\tau)| \le C_0(1+|\tau|), \qquad |\Phi'(\tau)| \le C_1, \tag{3.18}$$

$$\text{and} \quad |\Phi^{(\ell)}(\tau)| \le C_\ell (1+|\tau|)^{-2-\ell}, \quad \text{for } \ell \ge 2, \tag{3.19}$$

for all $\tau \in \mathbb{R}$, with C_ℓ independent of k.

Using the asymptotic expansion in (3.15) and the interpretation of it in terms of the Hörmander symbol classes, the following result was derived in Domínguez *et al.* (2007).

Corollary 3.4. For all $L, M \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}$, the decomposition

$$V(x,k) = \left[\sum_{\ell,m=0}^{L,M} k^{-1/3-2\ell/3-m} b_{\ell,m}(x) \Phi^{(\ell)}(k^{1/3} Z(x)) \right] + R_{L,M}(x,k) \tag{3.20}$$

holds for all $x \in \Gamma_\Delta$, with remainder term satisfying, for all $L, M \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}$,

$$|D_x^n R_{L,M}(x,k)| \le C_{L,M,n}(1+k)^{\mu+n/3}, \tag{3.21}$$

where $C_{L,M,n}$ is independent of k and

$$\mu = -\min\{2(L+1)/3,\ (M+1)\}. \tag{3.22}$$

In numerical analysis we typically need k-explicit estimates on the derivatives of V. These are obtained in the following result, which is a generalization of results in Domínguez *et al.* (2007), to include 3D as well as 2D scattering problems.

Theorem 3.5. For all $n \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}$ there exist constants $C_n > 0$ independent of k and x such that, for all k sufficiently large, and $x \in \Gamma_\Delta$,

$$|D_x^n V(x,k)| \le \begin{cases} C_n & n = 0, 1, \\ C_n\, k^{-1} \left(k^{-1/3} + \operatorname{dist}(x,S)\right)^{-(n+2)} & n \ge 2, \end{cases} \tag{3.23}$$

where D^n denotes any surface derivative operator of order n on Γ_Δ and S is the shadow boundary as defined in (3.6).

Remark 3.6. This theorem quantifies rather precisely the boundary layer effect near the shadow boundary. If $\operatorname{dist}(x,S) \ge C > 0$, then all the derivatives of V decay with $O(k^{-1})$. However if $\operatorname{dist}(x,S) = O(k^{-1/3})$ then for $n \ge 2$, the nth derivative of V grows with $O(k^{(n-1)/3})$. We emphasize also that, up to this point in the theory, this estimate holds only for $x \in \Gamma_\Delta$ (a neighbourhood of the shadow boundary, but independent of k). The extension to all of Γ requires a rigorous application of matched asymptotic expansions: see, *e.g.*, Domínguez *et al.* (2007), where the estimates (3.23) are shown (in the 2D case) to hold for all $x \in \Gamma$.

Proof. Choosing any $n \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}$, we can select L, M so that $-\mu \geq n/3$, with μ defined in (3.22). Then we apply Corollary 3.4 to obtain $V(x,k) = A_{L,M}(x,k) + R_{L,M}(x,k)$, where

$$A_{L,M}(x,k) := k^{-1/3} \sum_{\ell=0}^{L} k^{-2\ell/3} B_{\ell,M}(x) \Phi^{(\ell)}(k^{1/3} Z(x)),$$

$$B_{\ell,M} := \sum_{m=0}^{M} k^{-m} b_{\ell,m}(x),$$

the derivatives of $R_{L,M}$ are bounded as in (3.21), and, by choice of μ,

$$|D_x^n R_{L,M}(x,k)| \leq C_n, \quad \text{for all } k,$$

with C_n denoting a generic constant independent of x and k but possibly depending on n. Now, since all derivatives of $B_{\ell,M}$ are bounded independently of k, we obtain

$$|D_x^n A_{L,M}(x,k)| \leq C_n k^{-1/3} \sum_{j=0}^{n} \sum_{\ell=0}^{L} k^{(j-2\ell)/3} \left|\Phi^{(\ell+j)}(k^{1/3} Z(x))\right|, \tag{3.24}$$

and the result follows on observing that by (3.18), (3.19), each term in the double sum can be estimated in the required way. □

A hybrid approximation scheme for (1.3) can now be devised by inserting an appropriate piecewise polynomial approximation of V into (3.14). Although methods which do not take any special care near the shadow boundary can still be very effective (Abboud, Nédélec and Zhou 1994, 1995, Aberegg and Peterson 1995, Ganesh and Hawkins 2011), Theorem 3.5 suggests we may do better if we do more work near the shadow boundary. As an example consider the 2D case, where Γ is parametrized by a mapping $\zeta : [0, 2\pi] \to \Gamma$, assumed proportional to arc-length. The shadow boundary consists of two points, here denoted $\zeta(t_i)$, $i = 1, 2$. Following Domínguez *et al.* (2007), we partition the parameter domain into four zones $\Lambda_i : i = 1, \ldots, 4$, where Λ_i, $i = 1, 2$ are small neighbourhoods of t_1, t_2 respectively, chosen as

$$\Lambda_1 := [t_1 - O(k^{-1/3+\delta}),\ t_1 + O(k^{-1/3+\varepsilon})], \tag{3.25}$$

$$\Lambda_2 := [t_2 - O(k^{-1/3+\varepsilon}),\ t_2 + O(k^{-1/3+\delta})], \tag{3.26}$$

with $\delta, \varepsilon \in (0, 1/3)$ parameters to be chosen. For large enough k, Λ_1, Λ_2 are disjoint and the remaining two components of $[0, 2\pi]$ are denoted Λ_3 (contained in the illuminated zone) and Λ_4 (in the shadow zone), with the regions Λ_j touching only at the end points. The hybrid approximation space $\mathcal{V}_N$ is then defined to be the space of functions taking the form (3.14), with V approximated by a polynomial of degree p in each of $\Lambda_i : i = 1, 2, 3$ and

by zero in the shadow zone, more precisely

$$\mathcal{V}_N := \oplus_{j=1}^{3} \mathrm{span}\{k\chi_j(s)s^m \exp(\mathrm{i}k\zeta(s)\cdot\hat{a}) : m = 0,\dots,p\}, \quad s \in [0,2\pi], \tag{3.27}$$

where the partition of unity $\{\chi_j : j = 1,2,3,4\}$ satisfies $\chi_j \in L^\infty[0,2\pi]$, $\mathrm{supp}\chi_j = \Lambda_j$, $0 \le \chi_j \le 1$, for each $j = 1,\dots,4$, and $\sum_{j=1}^{4}\chi_j = 1$. The space $\mathcal{V}_N$ then has dimension $N = 3(p+1)$. It is proved in Domínguez *et al.* (2007) that, with the choice $\varepsilon = 1/9$, we have, for $6 \le n \le p+1$,

$$\inf_{w_N\in\mathcal{V}_N} \|v - w_N\| \le C_n k\left\{k^{-4/9}\left(\frac{k^{1/9}}{p}\right)^n + \exp(-c_0k^\delta)\right\}, \tag{3.28}$$

for some constant c_0, where, recalling the convention introduced in Section 1, $\|\cdot\|$ is used to denote $\|\cdot\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}$. Since (3.28) holds for $n = p+1$, it is driven to zero quickly as $p \to \infty$, provided p grows just slightly faster than $k^{1/9}$. This relative k-robustness of the estimate arises because we are concentrating work near the shadow boundary. Note that the rightmost term in (3.28) arises from the known exponential decay of v in the shadow. (The proofs of this decay are classical and highly non-trivial (Ursell 1968, Filippov 1976, Zayaev and Filippov 1985, Zayaev and Filippov 1986, Lebeau 1984, Harge and Lebeau 1994, Popov 1987).) A brief summary is given in Domínguez *et al.* (2007).

Before leaving this discussion we mention that a more detailed analysis of the asymptotics of (3.17) as $\tau \to -\infty$ allows one to identify exponentially damped oscillations in V in the shadow region but near the transition points t_1, t_2, commonly known as creeping waves. The most dominant of these creeping waves was modelled explicitly in the hybrid numerical-asymptotic collocation method of Giladi and Keller (2004) and Giladi (2007).

3.2. The impedance half-plane problem

Chandler-Wilde *et al.* (2004) and Langdon and Chandler-Wilde (2006) considered the problem of 2D scattering of an incident plane wave $u^I(x) = \exp(\mathrm{i}kx\cdot\hat{a})$ by an infinite flat surface where the scattered wave u^S satisfies a suitable radiation condition and the total wave $u = u^I + u^S$ satisfies a piecewise constant impedance boundary condition. For this problem, k-independent stability, convergence and complexity were proved, the first such rigorous result for any scattering algorithm. We give an overview of these results here since they can be considered as a prototype for results later in this section, and, in particular, have direct links to Section 3.3.

The total field $u \in C(\overline{U}) \cap C^2(U)$ is required to satisfy (1.1) in the upper half-plane, $U := \{(x_1,x_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : x_2 > 0\}$, together with the impedance boundary condition

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial n} + \mathrm{i}k\beta u = 0, \quad \text{on } \Gamma := \{(x_1,0) : x_1 \in \mathbb{R}\}. \tag{3.29}$$

Such problems arise, for example, in outdoor sound propagation, where the relative surface admittance β in general depends on the frequency and the ground properties (*e.g.*, Taraldsen and Jonasson 2011). Although more general configurations are possible, for exposition we here restrict to the relatively simple case

$$\beta(x_1) = \begin{cases} \beta_1 & x_1 \in [0,1], \\ \beta_c & x_1 \in \mathbb{R}\backslash(0,1), \end{cases}$$

with (recall (2.2)) $\beta_1, \beta_c \in \mathbb{C}$ assumed to lie in the right half-plane.

This problem differs from all the other boundary value problems in this review since the scatterer is of infinite extent and the appropriate radiation condition is different from that for a bounded scatterer. Nevertheless, the problem can be reformulated as the second-kind BIE

$$v - K_\beta^{\beta_c} v = \psi_{\beta_c}, \tag{3.30}$$

on $\mathbb{R}$, where $v(s) := u(s,0)$ is the total field at point $(s,0)$ on Γ, and

$$\psi_{\beta_c}(s) := \left(\frac{2\cos\theta}{\cos\theta + \beta_c}\right) \exp(\mathrm{i}ks\sin\theta).$$

Here $\hat{a} = (\sin\theta, -\cos\theta)$ is the direction of the incident plane wave (with $\theta \in (-\pi/2, \pi/2)$, so that the wave is incoming), and

$$K_\beta^{\beta_c}\chi(s) := \mathrm{i}k(\beta_1 - \beta_c)\int_0^1 G_{\beta_c}((s,0),(t,0))\chi(t)\,\mathrm{d}t,$$

with $G_{\beta_c}(x,y)$ the Green's function for (1.1) and (3.29) in the case $\beta = \beta_c$ (Chandler-Wilde and Hothersall 1995). In fact ψ_{β_c} is the total acoustic field in the case that the surface has constant impedance β_c.

The numerical scheme for solving (3.30) is then based on a high-frequency analysis of reflected and diffracted rays, in the spirit of the geometrical theory of diffraction. More precisely, the dominant component of v turns out to be ψ_{β_1} (the total field induced if the whole boundary had the admittance β_1) and the remainder can be described by the sum of the diffracted rays scattered at the discontinuities in the impedance. (For scattering at 0, rays travel from left to right along $(0,1)$, and for scattering at 1, rays travel from right to left along $(0,1)$.) These diffracted rays are illustrated by the arrows in Figure 3.2 (where the scattered field $u^S = u - u^I$ is plotted for the same choice of parameter values as given in Langdon and Chandler-Wilde (2006, p. 2454)).

This leads to the ansatz

$$v(s) = \psi_{\beta_1}(s) + V^+(s)\exp(\mathrm{i}ks) + V^-(1-s)\exp(-\mathrm{i}ks), \quad s \in (0,1), \tag{3.31}$$

which corresponds to (3.1) with $M = 2$, $V_0(x,k) = \psi_{\beta_1}(x)$, $V_1(x,k) = V^+(x)$, $\psi_1(x) = x$, $V_2(x,k) = V^-(1-x)$ and $\psi_2(x) = -x$. Langdon and

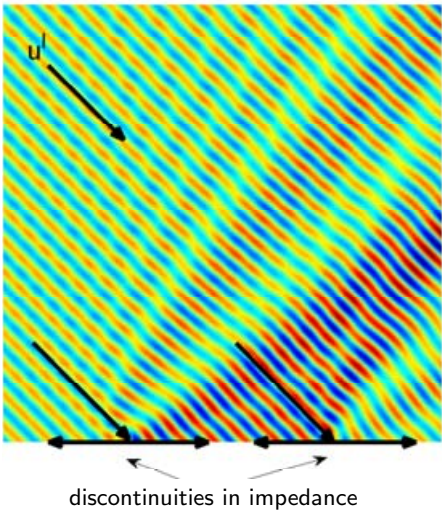


Figure 3.2. Scattered field $u^S = u - u^I$; the arrows represent the incident rays, and those diffracted rays scattered at the discontinuities in the impedance which travel in either direction along the boundary.

Chandler-Wilde (2006, Theorems 2.3, 2.6) have shown that the functions $V^{\pm}$ are not oscillatory, and that their high-order derivatives decay rapidly away from the discontinuities in impedance at $s = 0$ and at $s = 1$.

Theorem 3.7. For $t > 1/k$, $m = 0, 1, \ldots$, there exist constants C_m, dependent only on m, such that

$$\left|V^{\pm(m)}(t)\right| \leq C_m\, k^m (kt)^{-1/2-m} \cos\theta, \tag{3.32}$$

and there exists a constant C, such that

$$\left|V^{\pm}(t)\right| \leq C\,(kt)^{-3/2} (\cos\theta)^{-1}. \tag{3.33}$$

Thus, if θ is bounded away from $-\pi/2$ and $\pi/2$ (the directions of grazing incidence), the estimates (3.33) can be used, while the bounds (3.32) apply for all θ. Numerical experiments in Langdon and Chandler-Wilde (2003*b*, 2006) suggest that, for $m = 0$, these bounds appear to be sharp with respect to both θ and kr. These estimates are crucial to the k-independent convergence rate obtained in Theorem 3.8 below.

Given these estimates the hybrid approximation space $\mathcal{V}_N$ for (3.30) is then chosen to be a space of functions of the form (3.31), with V^+ replaced by certain piecewise polynomials defined on a mesh graded towards 0, and V^- replaced by piecewise polynomials defined on a mesh graded towards 1. A crucial ingredient in the method is the precise design of the mesh, specifically that it is geometric (like (3.47)) on most of the interval $[0, 1]$. Solving (3.30) by the Galerkin method in $\mathcal{V}_N$, the resulting solution $v_N \in \mathcal{V}_N$

has an error estimate given by the following theorem. In this section we shall use the notation $A \lesssim B$ when $A \leq CB$, where C is a constant that does not depend on k or N.

Theorem 3.8. (Langdon and Chandler-Wilde 2006, Theorem 3.5) If $|\beta_1 - \beta_c| < \operatorname{Re}\beta_c$ (*i.e.*, the relative jump in β is not too large), then

$$\|v - v_N\|_{L^2(0,1)} \lesssim \frac{\log^{1/2}(\min(N/\cos\theta, k))}{N^{\nu+1}},$$

where $N \in \mathbb{N}$ is a parameter used in the definition of the graded meshes and ν is the degree of polynomial approximation on each interval of the graded meshes. The space $\mathcal{V}_N$ has dimension $\lesssim N\log(\min(N/\cos\theta, k)$ (in contrast to elsewhere in the review, where we generally use the convention that $\mathcal{V}_N$ has dimension N).

We note that in general the meshes used to approximate V^- and V^+ do not coincide, which ensures the corresponding system matrices are well-conditioned. (Further details are in Langdon and Chandler-Wilde 2006.) This type of approximation scheme arises again below, for example in Section 3.3.

The estimate in Theorem 3.8 is derived by first noting that

$$\|K_\beta^{\beta_c}\|_{L^2(0,1)\leftarrow L^2(0,1)} \leq \frac{|\beta_1 - \beta_c|}{\operatorname{Re}\beta_c} < 1,$$

under the assumption on β. Thus existence and boundedness of $(\mathcal{I} - K_\beta^{\beta_c})^{-1}$ follows from the Banach Lemma. Writing the Galerkin method as

$$(\mathcal{I} - \mathcal{P}_N K_\beta^{\beta_c}) v_N = \mathcal{P}_N \psi_{\beta_c}, \tag{3.34}$$

where $\mathcal{P}_N : L^2(0,1) \to \mathcal{V}_N$ is the orthogonal projection onto $\mathcal{V}_N$, with $\|\mathcal{P}_N\|_2 = 1$, it follows that (3.34) is uniquely solvable, and a little algebra (see Section 6.1 for similar arguments) shows that

$$\|v - v_N\|_{L^2(0,1)} \leq \frac{\operatorname{Re}\beta_c}{\operatorname{Re}\beta_c - |\beta_1 - \beta_c|} \|v - \mathcal{P}_N v\|_{L^2(0,1)}.$$

The final result is obtained by using a bound on $\|v - \mathcal{P}_N v\|_{L^2(0,1)}$ proved in Langdon and Chandler-Wilde (2006, Theorem 3.4).

Thus, for fixed N, as k increases the error is bounded *independently* of k. Further results can be found in Langdon and Chandler-Wilde (2003*a*, 2003*b*, 2006), where it is shown, for instance, that the Galerkin method can be implemented with a cost that is independent of k, that the condition number of the Galerkin matrix is bounded independently of k and, via a careful choice of mesh parameters, that the error estimates are uniform with respect to the angle of incidence θ (even as θ approaches grazing angle of incidence).

3.3. Convex polygons

In this subsection we consider the solution of three high-frequency scattering problems, where the scatterers are non-smooth bounded 2D domains. The first is the sound-soft exterior Dirichlet problem (2.16) for a polygonal scatterer ('the sound-soft polygon', with results described in Section 3.3.1), the second is the exterior impedance problem (2.18), again for a polygonal scatterer ('the impedance polygon', Section 3.3.3), and the third is the sound-soft exterior Dirichlet problem for a curvilinear polygon (described briefly in Section 3.3.2). For the two sound-soft problems, (2.16) is reformulated as the BIE (2.114) or (2.115), and the solution $v := \partial u/\partial n$ is written in the form (3.1), using a slightly different ansatz in each case. For the impedance problem, a similar ansatz to (3.1) is used for $v = \gamma u$. Rigorous k-explicit error estimates for approximation in the corresponding hybrid approximation spaces are available for the sound-soft and impedance polygons. For the curvilinear polygon, the validity of the hybrid approximation space is justified by a heuristic argument, and also by numerical results, presented in Section 7.3.

3.3.1. The sound-soft polygon

The chief reference for this subsection is Chandler-Wilde and Langdon (2007), although other references are mentioned below. The treatment begins by establishing that the choice of hybrid space given in Example 3.2 is appropriate for this problem. In fact it is shown that, for $x \in \Gamma$,

$$v(x,k) = V_0(x,k) + k\sum_{m=1}^{n_s}\big[V_m^+(x,k)\exp(\mathrm{i}kx\cdot\hat{d}_m) + V_m^-(x,k)\exp(-\mathrm{i}kx\cdot\hat{d}_m)\big], \tag{3.35}$$

where n_s is the number of sides of the polygon, the unit vector $\hat{d}_m$ is parallel to the mth side Γ_m, the function $V_m^{\pm}$ is non-zero only on Γ_m, and $V_0(x,k)$ is given by (3.8). It is easily seen that this corresponds to a particular instance of (3.1) with $M = 2n_s$ (note that here v has a different scaling to that used in Chandler-Wilde and Langdon (2007)). Let Γ_m denote the side of the polygon connecting the vertices P_m and P_{m+1}, with length L_m and corresponding exterior angles $\omega_m, \omega_{m+1} \in (\pi, 2\pi)$ at its end-points, and make the convention that $P_{n_s+1} = P_1$ and $\omega_{n_s+1} = \omega_1$. Then, for $x \in \Gamma_m$, $m = 1, \ldots, n_s$, we can rewrite (3.35) as

$$v(s) = V_0(s) + k\big[V_m^+(s)\exp(\mathrm{i}ks) + V_m^-(L_m - s)\exp(-\mathrm{i}ks)\big], \quad s \in [0, L_m], \tag{3.36}$$

where s denotes the distance of x from P_m.

To establish the potential of (3.35) as the starting point for a hybrid approximation space, it is necessary to establish the k-explicit regularity of

the functions $V_m^{\pm}(\cdot, k)$. In fact it turns out that the representation (3.35) captures the oscillatory behaviour of v exactly, in the sense that the functions $V_m^{\pm}$ are non-oscillatory. The key to obtaining this result, as for all of the results in this section, lies in understanding precisely the high-frequency asymptotics of the solution to the scattering problem. Comparing the problems in this subsection with those in Section 3.1, it might at first appear that polygonal scatterers present more of a challenge, due to the difficulties caused by the corners of the polygon. However, it turns out that if x is sufficiently close to a corner, the behaviour of $V_m^{\pm}$ can be understood using standard techniques for handling elliptic corner singularities (*e.g.*, Grisvard 1985), or by explicitly representing u and $\partial u/\partial n$ near corners via separation of variables in polar coordinates centred on the corner. Using this approach the following theorem was established.

Theorem 3.9. (Chandler-Wilde and Langdon 2007, Corollary 3.4) For $m = 1, \ldots, n_s$, $t > 0$, and for all $n \geq 0$, the bound

$$\left| \frac{\partial^n}{\partial t^n} V_m^+(t) \right| \lesssim M(u)\, k^n (kt)^{-\alpha_m - n} \tag{3.37}$$

holds for $kt \leq 1$, where $\alpha_m := 1 - \pi/\omega_m \in (0, 1/2)$, and

$$M(u) := \sup_{x \in \Omega_+} |u(x)|.$$

The hidden constant in (3.37) is independent of k and t. The same bounds hold for V_m^-, with α_m replaced by α_{m+1}.

The dependence of the constant $M(u)$ on the wavenumber k is not yet fully understood. Hewett *et al.* (2012) showed that when Ω is a star-shaped polygon, $M(u)$ grows at most algebraically with k; specifically,

$$M(u) = O(k^{1/2} \log^{1/2} k) \quad \text{as} \quad k \to \infty. \tag{3.38}$$

However, numerical experiments in Chandler-Wilde and Langdon (2007), Hewett *et al.* (2012) and Chandler-Wilde *et al.* (2012*a*) lead us to conjecture that, in fact, $M(u) = O(1)$ as $k \to \infty$, for both convex and a more general class of non-convex polygons. As yet though, this statement remains to be proved.

Establishing regularity results for $V_m^{\pm}(x, k)$ when x is further away from the corners turns out to be a somewhat easier task than deriving the analogous estimates for smooth convex scatterers, as in Section 3.1. The key step is the observation (adapted from Chandler-Wilde *et al.* 2004 and related to the ideas in Section 3.2) that one can write down an explicit solution to the Dirichlet boundary value problem for the Helmholtz equation in a half-plane, using the explicit Green's function constructed via the method of images. To this end, let $D_m \subset \Omega_+$ denote the half-plane whose boundary

contains Γ_m, and set $G_{m,k}(x,y) = \Phi_k(x,y) - \Phi_k(x,y'_m)$, where y'_m denotes the image of y in the straight line ∂D_m. (This is the Dirichlet Green's function for the half-plane D_m.) Then, for an illuminated side Γ_m (shadow sides are treated similarly), we have the formula

$$u(x) = u^I(x) + u^R(x) + \int_{\partial D_m} \frac{\partial G_{m,k}(x,y)}{\partial n(y)} u(y)\,\mathrm{d}s(y), \quad \text{for } x \in D_m. \tag{3.39}$$

Here u^R is the plane wave reflected from ∂D_m (defined analogously to (3.2)). Taking the normal derivative in (3.39), noting that $\partial G_{m,k}(x,y)/\partial n(y) = 2\partial \Phi_k(x,y)/\partial n(y)$, and recalling that $u = 0$ on Γ, we have

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial n}(x) = 2\frac{\partial u^I}{\partial n}(x) + 2\int_{\partial D_m \setminus \Gamma_m} \frac{\partial^2 \Phi_k(x,y)}{\partial n(x)\partial n(y)} u(y)\,\mathrm{d}s(y), \quad x \in \Gamma_m. \tag{3.40}$$

The formula (3.40) holds on each illuminated side. The same formula holds also on shadow sides but with the term $2\partial u^I/\partial n$ deleted. Thus, on a side Γ_m, it holds that

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial n}(x) = V_0(x,k) + k\big[V_m^+(x,k)\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}kx\cdot\hat{d}_m} + V_m^-(x,k)\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}kx\cdot\hat{d}_m}\big], \tag{3.41}$$

where V_0 is defined by (3.8) and the functions $V_m^\pm$ and unit vector $\hat{d}_m$ are defined in (3.42) below. This formula is obtained by decomposing the integral in (3.40) into two parts, corresponding to the two lines either side of Γ_m that extend to infinity in each direction (which we denote by $\Gamma_m^\pm$), so that explicitly

$$V_m^\pm(x,k) := \frac{\mathrm{i}k}{2}\int_{\Gamma_m^\pm} \exp(\mp \mathrm{i}ky\cdot\hat{d}_m)\mu(k|x-y|)u(y)\,\mathrm{d}s(y), \tag{3.42}$$

with $\mu(z) := \exp(-\mathrm{i}z)H_1^{(1)}(z)/z$, for $z > 0$, and with $\hat{d}_m$ the unit vector pointing from Γ_m^+ along Γ_m.

Equation (3.41) is the representation (3.35) promised in Example 3.2, evaluated on Γ_m. Although we cannot evaluate the integrals in (3.42), as they involve the unknown u on $\Gamma_m^\pm$, it can be shown that the $V_m^\pm$ are not oscillatory on Γ_m. This is the content of the following theorem.

Theorem 3.10. (Chandler-Wilde and Langdon 2007, Theorem 3.2) For $m = 1,\dots,n_s$, $t > 0$, and for all $n \geq 0$, we have

$$\left|\frac{\partial^n}{\partial t^n} V_m^\pm(t)\right| \lesssim M(u)k^n(kt)^{-1/2-n}, \tag{3.43}$$

for $kt \geq 1$. The hidden constant in (3.43) is independent of k and t.

The hybrid approximation space $\mathcal{V}_N$ for this problem is defined as the space of all functions of the form (3.35), with $V_m^\pm$, $m = 1,\dots,n_s$, each replaced by certain piecewise polynomials of degree p. Specifically, V_m^+ is ap-

proximated on Γ_m using piecewise polynomials of degree p, on a mesh which is graded near the corner P_m (to accommodate the blow-up of derivatives near that point) and has points more spread out over the rest of Γ_m. Analogously V_m^- is approximated on Γ_m using piecewise polynomials on a mesh graded towards the other corner, P_{m+1} (recall (3.36)); as for the scheme described in Section 3.2, the meshes used to approximate V_m^+ and V_m^- do not usually coincide and the precise design of the meshes is crucial to the success of the method. Using Theorems 3.9 and 3.10, one can prove the following best approximation estimate for $\mathcal{V}_N$.

Theorem 3.11. (Chandler-Wilde and Langdon 2007, Theorem 4.4) Denote the length of the boundary of the polygon by L, the total number of degrees of freedom by N, and the degree of polynomial approximation on each element by p. Then

$$k^{-1/2} \inf_{w_N \in \mathcal{V}_N} \|v - w_N\| \lesssim M(u)(n_s \log(kL))^{1/2} \left(\frac{n_s \log(kL)}{N} \right)^{p+1}.$$

The hidden constant in this estimate depends only on the corner angles and on p.

Combining with (3.38), this theorem shows that in order to maintain control of the quantity $k^{-1} \inf_{w_N \in \mathcal{V}_N} \|v - w_N\|$, it is sufficient to increase the number of degrees of freedom N slightly faster than $\log k$ as k increases. For a discussion of what are the appropriate quantities to consider when measuring the error, and why, we refer to Section 6.5.

A collocation method based on the identical integral equation formulation and the same approximation space $\mathcal{V}_N$ is implemented in Arden, Chandler-Wilde and Langdon (2007). The numerical results there suggest that there is little difference in accuracy between the Galerkin and the (rather easier to implement) collocation method for this problem, although there is no error analysis for collocation.

3.3.2. Convex curvilinear polygons

The extension of the ideas in Section 3.3.1 to sound-soft convex curvilinear polygons is discussed in Langdon *et al.* (2010). In this case the ansatz for smooth convex obstacles (3.14) is combined with that for convex polygons (3.35), leading to the ansatz (for $v = \partial u/\partial n$)

$$v(x,k) = kV(x,k)\exp(\mathrm{i}kx \cdot \hat{a}) + k \sum_{m=1}^{n_s} \left[V_m^+(x,k)\exp(\mathrm{i}ks) + V_m^-(x,k)\exp(-\mathrm{i}ks) \right], \tag{3.44}$$

for $x = \zeta(s) \in \Gamma$, where ζ again represents arc-length parametrization of Γ, n_s is the number of sides of the curvilinear polygon and each function $V_m^{\pm}$

is assumed non-zero only on side m. Here, V and $V_m^{\pm}$ are all to be found. Whereas for smooth obstacles the regularity of V can be established, and for convex polygons V is known and $V_m^{\pm}$ can be proved to be slowly oscillating, for convex curvilinear obstacles such results have, to date, remained elusive. Nevertheless, numerical results in Langdon *et al.* (2010) suggest (at least for the examples tested) that, if we use the ansatz (3.44) and approximate V as in Section 3.1 and $V_m^{\pm}$ as in Section 3.3.1, then the number of degrees of freedom required to approximate $(1/k)\partial u/\partial n$ to any given level of accuracy for convex curvilinear polygons grows only logarithmically as k increases. This is a similar result to that described in Theorem 3.11 above for straight-sided convex polygons. Further numerical results in Section 7.3 illustrate how this result appears to extend to the computation of the solution u in the domain, and of the far-field pattern F defined by (2.10) (see also (2.23) and (2.24)).

3.3.3. The impedance polygon

The extension of the method in Section 3.3.1 to scattering from a convex polygon with impedance boundary condition is described in Chandler-Wilde *et al.* (2012*b*). In this case, we have $v = \gamma u$ as the unknown function to be approximated on Γ, rather than $\partial u/\partial n$, and the integral formulation (2.111) is used. Again, v can be expressed as a product of oscillatory and non-oscillatory functions on each side of the polygon, leading to a similar ansatz to that used for the sound-soft convex polygon (3.35), but without the factor k multiplying the summation on the right-hand side, and with a different V_0. Similar techniques to those described in Section 3.3.1 can be applied to establish regularity estimates for $V_m^{\pm}$. In this case, it is proved in Chandler-Wilde *et al.* (2012*b*) that (using the same notation as in Section 3.3.1)

$$k^{-n}\left|\frac{\partial^n}{\partial t^n}V_m^+(t)\right| \lesssim \begin{cases} M(u)(kt)^{\beta_m} & \text{for } kt \le 1, \\ M(u)(kt)^{-1/2-n} & \text{for } kt \ge 1, \end{cases}$$

where the hidden constant is independent of k and t and where $\beta_m = \min\{0, \hat{\alpha}_m - n\}$, with $\hat{\alpha}_m = \pi/\omega_m \in (1/2, 1)$. Similar bounds hold for V_m^-, with $\hat{\alpha}_m$ replaced by $\hat{\alpha}_{m+1}$. An order p polynomial approximation space similar to that in Section 3.3.1 is employed, again with geometric mesh grading except within a wavelength of each corner. Letting $\mathcal{V}_N$ denote the resulting approximation space (and using the same notation as in the statement of Theorem 3.11), the best approximation result is

$$k^{1/2}\inf_{w_N\in\mathcal{V}_N}\|v - w_N\| \lesssim M(u)(n_s\log(kL))^{1/2}\left(\frac{n_s\log(kL)}{N}\right)^{p+1}. \qquad (3.45)$$

The hidden constant depends only on the impedance β, the corner angles, and p. This estimate is identical to Theorem 3.11 except that the factor

of $k^{-1/2}$ on the left-hand side of the estimate in Theorem 3.11 is now a factor of $k^{1/2}$ (recall that here we have $v = \gamma u$, as opposed to $v = \partial u/\partial n$ in Section 3.3.1). Thus, under the assumption that (3.38) holds also for the impedance case, we can maintain control of $\inf_{w_N \in \mathcal{V}_N} \|v - w_N\|$ by increasing the number of degrees of freedom N slightly faster than $\log k$ as k increases. Results in Section 7.4 (*e.g.*, Figure 7.11) suggest that this may even be pessimistic, with errors decreasing for fixed N as k increases (as would be expected from (3.45) if $M(u) = O(1)$ was known to hold).

3.3.4. Exponential convergence

All of the theoretical and numerical results described in Section 3.3 so far have concerned methods with an algebraic order of convergence. These results have recently been improved upon in Hewett *et al.* (2012), where, for the sound-soft convex polygon, *hp* methods with exponential convergence rate are presented. The analysis of this scheme requires stronger analyticity and regularity estimates on $V_m^{\pm}$, appearing in (3.36), than are provided by Theorems 3.9 and 3.10. In Hewett *et al.* (2012) it is shown that $V_m^{\pm}(t)$, $m = 1, \ldots, n_s$, have an analytic continuation into the right half-plane $\mathrm{Re}\,(t) > 0$, where (using the same notation as in Theorem 3.9)

$$|V_m^+(t)| \lesssim \begin{cases} M(u)|kt|^{-\alpha_m} & 0 < |t| \leq 1/k, \\ M(u)|kt|^{-1/2} & |t| > 1/k, \end{cases} \tag{3.46}$$

and an identical bound holds for $|V_m^-|$, with α_m replaced by α_{m+1}.

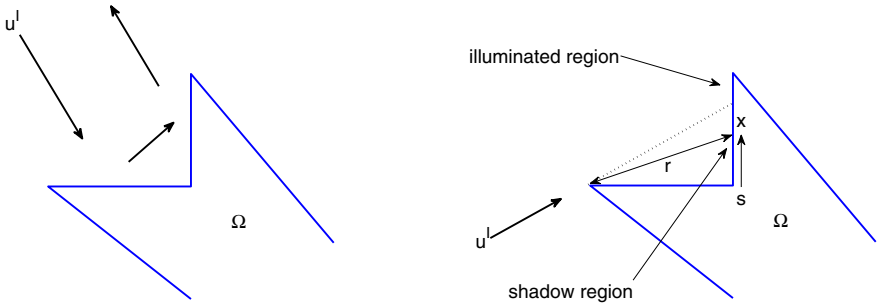
We can describe the *hp* space for approximating v in (3.36) by simply describing how V_m^+ and V_m^- are approximated. For V_m^+ we define the geometric mesh

$$x_0 := 0, \qquad x_i := \sigma^{n-i} L_m, \quad i = 1, 2, \ldots, n, \tag{3.47}$$

where L_m is the length of side Γ_m, $0 < \sigma < 1$ is a grading parameter and $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Then we set $\mathcal{V}_m^+$ to be the space of piecewise polynomials of degree p on $[0, L_m]$ with respect to this mesh. Because of the grading, this space approximates V_m^+ well despite the singularity at $s = 0$. We define $\mathcal{V}_m^-$ completely analogously by a mesh graded towards L_m. The approximation space $\mathcal{V}_N$ then consists of functions of the form (3.35), with V_m^+ and V_m^- replaced by functions from $\mathcal{V}_m^+$ and $\mathcal{V}_m^-$ respectively. Typically the number of layers n on each geometric mesh is taken to be proportional to p (alternative choices are discussed in Hewett *et al.* (2012)), in which case the approximation space $\mathcal{V}_N$ has dimension $N = O(p^2)$, and the best approximation result is then (with $v = \partial u/\partial n$)

$$\inf_{w_N \in \mathcal{V}_N} \|v - w_N\| \lesssim M(u) k^{\alpha} \exp(-p\tau), \tag{3.48}$$

where $\tau > 0$ is a constant which represents the rate of exponential decay,



(a) re-reflections (b) partial shadowing

Figure 3.3. New phenomena that arise for non-convex obstacles.

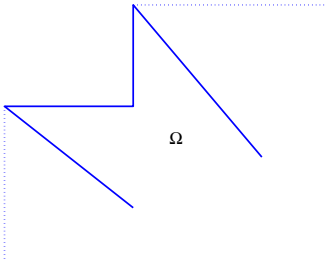


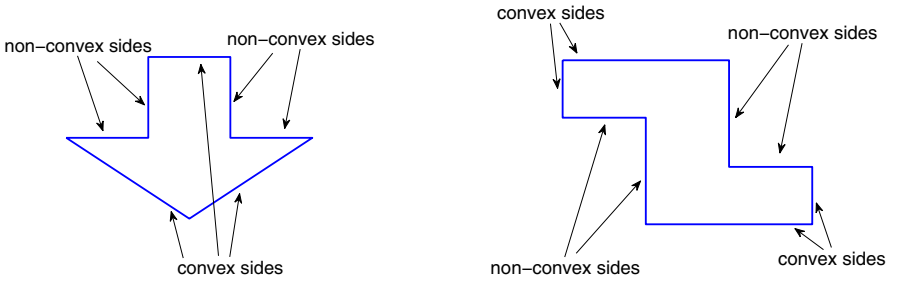
Figure 3.4. Assumption on geometry of non-convex obstacles, that Ω lies entirely within the semi-infinite dashed lines.

and $\alpha = 1 - \min_{m=1,\ldots,n_s}(1 - \pi/\omega_m) \in (1/2, 1)$, with ω_m the external angles at the corners of the polygon. To maintain accuracy as k increases, it is sufficient for p to grow only logarithmically, in which case the algebraically growing k-dependent prefactor in (3.48) (recall (3.38)) will be absorbed into the exponentially decaying factor. Numerical results demonstrating this are provided in Section 7.2 (see Figure 7.5).

3.4. Non-convex polygons

In this subsection we consider the sound-soft scattering problem (2.16) when Γ is the boundary of a non-convex two-dimensional polygon. Non-convexity significantly complicates the behaviour of the solution on Γ, permitting two new phenomena that cannot occur for convex obstacles: re-reflections (where the incident field reflects off one part of Γ onto another part of Γ) and partial illumination (where one part of Γ obscures another, creating a shadow zone and shadow boundary that do not correspond to the definitions (3.5) and (3.6)). These are illustrated in Figure 3.3.

The main reference for the results described in this subsection is Chandler-Wilde *et al.* (2012*a*). Only a restricted class of polygonal geometries is



(a) star-shaped polygon (b) non-star-shaped polygon

Figure 3.5. Examples of non-convex polygons satisfying our geometrical assumptions.

described rigorously by the present theory. While there is some evidence that the approximation space we propose will be effective in practice for a wider range of geometries, it will not be appropriate in certain cases, *e.g.*, for the trapping domains described in Section 5.2. The assumptions on the geometry are as follows.

(1) Each external angle is either greater than π (a 'convex corner') or exactly $\pi/2$ (a 'non-convex corner'); this assumption permits the use of a representation formula for the solution in a quarter-plane that leads to a significant simplification of the analysis in Chandler-Wilde *et al.* (2012*a*).

(2) For each non-convex corner, the obstacle Ω must lie within the dashed lines illustrated in Figure 3.4; this assumption ensures that re-reflections and partial shadowing occurring on any side of the polygon can only be caused by a single alternative side of the polygon (and also disallows trapping domains), which eases the analysis considerably.

Such polygons may or may not be star-shaped. Two examples of scatterers satisfying these constraints are shown in Figure 3.5. We call a side Γ_m, $m = 1, \ldots, n_s$, 'convex' if each of its end points is a convex corner and 'non-convex' otherwise. On convex sides, the ansatz (3.36) holds (for $v = \partial u/\partial n$), and the analysis of Sections 3.3.1 and 3.3.4 can be carried over to derive identical best approximation estimates on those sides as for convex polygons.

We now consider the behaviour on a typical non-convex side. For ease of presentation, we consider only the configuration in Figure 3.3(b), and describe a representation for the solution $v = \partial u/\partial n$ on the vertical side in that figure (with r representing the distance from the 'shadowing' corner to a point x on that side, and s representing the distance from the non-convex corner to the point x (thus r can be thought of as a function of s), as shown in the figure). In this case, the side is partially illuminated; we also expect

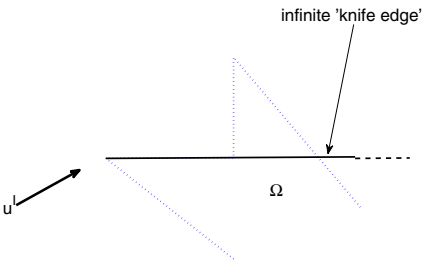


Figure 3.6. The leading-order behaviour u^d on the vertical side of Ω corresponds to the known exact solution to the problem of diffraction by the infinite knife edge in the figure.

diffraction from each corner in the figure. The following theorem describes an appropriate ansatz on such a side (which we denote by Γ_m, and presume to have length L_m).

Theorem 3.12. (Chandler-Wilde *et al.* 2012*a*) On the vertical side Γ_m in Figure 3.3(b), $v = \partial u/\partial n$ satisfies

$$v(s) = V_0(s) + V^+(L_m + s)\exp(\mathrm{i}ks) + V^-(L_m - s)\exp(-\mathrm{i}ks) + \tilde{V}(s)\exp(\mathrm{i}kr(s)), \tag{3.49}$$

for $s \in [0, L_m]$, where

$$V_0(s) := 2\frac{\partial u^d}{\partial n}(s),$$

and u^d is the known exact solution to the problem of diffraction of the incident plane wave u^I by the infinite knife edge (with Dirichlet boundary conditions) that would be created were the horizontal side of the polygon to be extended indefinitely to the right, as shown in Figure 3.6, and the rest of Ω ignored. The functions $V^\pm$ and $\tilde{V}$ can be shown to be analytic in appropriate regions of the complex plane to allow a similar approximation theory to that described in Section 3.3.4 to be applied; in particular, $V^\pm$ satisfy the bounds (3.46), and (for star-shaped polygons)

$$|\tilde{V}(s)| \leq Ck\log^{1/2} k,$$

in a fixed (independent of k) neighbourhood of $[0, L_m]$ in the complex plane.

For alternative configurations such as that corresponding to Figure 3.3(a), very similar results hold. We refer to Chandler-Wilde *et al.* (2012*a*) for details.

There are parallels between the proof of Theorem 3.12 and the proofs of the regularity results for convex polygons described in Section 3.3.1. In particular, whereas the results in Section 3.3.1 are based on a representation of the solution in a half-plane, the proof of Theorem 3.12 is based on the

explicit expression for the Green's function in a quarter-plane, with this used in the quarter-plane formed by extending to infinity the two sides subtended by the non-convex corner. This theoretical reliance on the explicit expression for the quarter-plane Green's function has driven the geometrical restrictions imposed here, but we anticipate that an approximation space based on ansatz (3.49) could equally well be applied to more general star-shaped non-convex scatterers, although the analysis does not carry forward to such cases at present.

The hybrid approximation space $\mathcal{V}_N$ for this problem is then defined as the set of functions that on each convex side has the form (3.36), with V_m^+ and V_m^- replaced by functions from $\mathcal{V}_m^+$ and $\mathcal{V}_m^-$ respectively (as described in Section 3.3.4). On non-convex sides we use representations based on the ansatz (3.49); for the configuration described in Theorem 3.12 on Γ_m, V^- is replaced by a function from $\mathcal{V}_m^-$ (to deal with the singularity at the convex corner at the top of the vertical side in Figure 3.3(b)), and V^+ and $\tilde{V}$ are each replaced by a polynomial on the whole of Γ_m, since these functions are analytic in a neighbourhood of $[0, L_m]$.

Assuming for simplicity the same number of layers n on each graded mesh, and the same degree p of polynomial approximation on each element, the result is a scheme with $2n(p+1)$ degrees of freedom per convex side and $(n+2)(p+1)$ per non-convex side. As described in Section 3.3.4, if the number of layers n on each geometric mesh is taken to be proportional to p then the approximation space $\mathcal{V}_N$ has dimension $N = O(p^2)$. Using the regularity results provided by Theorem 3.12 and (3.46) the following best approximation result can be proved (for $v = \partial u/\partial n$).

Theorem 3.13. (Chandler-Wilde *et al.* 2012*a*) For star-shaped non-convex polygons satisfying the geometrical assumptions described above, for some $\tau > 0$,

$$\inf_{w_N \in \mathcal{V}_N} \|v - w_N\| \lesssim M(u) k^{1/2+\alpha} \exp(-p\tau), \tag{3.50}$$

where $\alpha = 1 - \min_{m=1,\dots,n_s}(1 - \pi/\omega_m) \in (1/2, 1)$, with ω_m the external angles at the corners of the polygon.

To maintain accuracy as k increases, since (3.38) holds, it is again sufficient for p to grow logarithmically as $k \to \infty$. Numerical results illustrating this are provided in Section 7.5 (see Tables 7.6–7.8), where it is also shown that the approximation properties of the best approximation (3.50) carry over to the approximation of the far-field pattern.

3.5. Multiple scattering

A very interesting extension of the method in Bruno *et al.* (2004) and Bruno and Geuzaine (2007) to multiple scattering is given in Geuzaine *et al.* (2005). There it is explained how the integral equation (1.3) may be solved by a

Neumann series approach, where each term in the Neumann series corresponds to the scattering by a single convex obstacle of an incident field consisting of the incident wave combined with previously scattered waves. Each of these single-obstacle scattering problems can be solved by a method similar to the methods described above, except that now the ansatz (3.1) becomes somewhat more complicated. Although there is still only one term in the expansion (*i.e.*, $V_0 = 0$ and $M = 1$), the phase ψ_1 has now to be chosen as a function reflecting the optical distance travelled by rays through all previous reflections (as worked out in detail for the case of two scatterers when each individual scatterer is smooth and convex in Geuzaine *et al.* (2005)). Preliminary numerical tests were provided in Geuzaine *et al.* (2005) which demonstrated the potential for the method. The theory was substantially advanced in the subsequent works of Ecevit (2005) and Ecevit and Reitich (2009), where the implementation of the Neumann series was shown to correspond to a sum over increasing period of a sequence of periodic orbits. Each orbit corresponds to reflections off a fixed set of scatterers, and this allows the convergence rate of the Neumann series to be estimated, for sufficiently high frequency, and permits the formulation of methods for accelerating its convergence. The most recent work in this direction (Anand *et al.* 2009) extended the analysis to the three-dimensional case, where additional considerations on the relative orientation of the scattering bodies come into play.

4. Numerical treatment of oscillatory integrals

In this section we review work on the key implementation issue (see question **Q2** identified in Section 1) of how to assemble the linear systems arising from hybrid methods with a computational time that either remains bounded or else grows only slowly as $k \to \infty$. In Section 4.1 we describe the specific integrals which arise in the numerical treatment of scattering problems by hybrid Galerkin methods. These are particularly challenging examples of the general problem of computing oscillatory integrals, which has a long history and has seen a great deal of research interest in recent years. In Section 4.2 we review classical and modern work on oscillatory integration in general. The oscillatory integrals introduced in Section 4.1 have integrands which are products of explicit oscillatory exponentials and complicated non-oscillatory factors; Filon quadrature rules which require only point-values of the non-oscillatory factors are particularly useful for these. Some classes of such rules are reviewed in Section 4.3, together with recent progress in their error analysis. These are applied to computation of Galerkin integrals in scattering problems in Section 4.4. The section is completed with Section 4.5, in which the integration approaches in a number of other hybrid methods are reviewed.

4.1. Integration problems arising in hybrid Galerkin methods

We will be chiefly concerned with discretization of integral equations arising from the direct and indirect formulations of scattering problems, of the form

$$A_{k,\eta}v := \left(\frac{1}{2}I + D_k - \mathrm{i}\eta S_k\right)v = f, \tag{4.1}$$

$$A'_{k,\eta}v := \left(\frac{1}{2}I + D'_k - \mathrm{i}\eta S_k\right)v = f, \tag{4.2}$$

(recall (2.71) and (2.68) for the general case and (2.114) for the direct formulation in the particular case of sound-soft scattering), where η is usually taken to be a k-dependent constant. We will also be concerned with implementation of the star-combined formulation, which is of the form

$$\mathscr{A}_k v := (x\cdot n)\left(\frac{1}{2}I + D'_k\right)v + x\cdot\nabla_\Gamma S_k v - \mathrm{i}\eta S_k v = f, \tag{4.3}$$

where η is a (smooth) function of $x\in\Gamma$ (see (2.103) and (2.115)). Each equation above is posed in $L^2(\Gamma)$ and in general f is k-dependent.

Let us suppose we take a Galerkin approach based on the ansatz (3.1) and let ϕ, $\widetilde{\phi}$ denote a typical pair of basis functions in this Galerkin method. Disregarding for a moment the surface derivative term (the second term of the middle entry of (4.3)), the Galerkin implementation of all other terms will require computation of various inner products. Firstly inner products which do not involve integral operators appear. These are $(d-1)$-dimensional 'load vector' and 'mass matrix' integrals, of the form

$$(f,\widetilde{\phi}), \quad (bV_0,\widetilde{\phi}) \quad \text{and} \quad (b\phi,\widetilde{\phi}), \tag{4.4}$$

with b being smooth and non-oscillatory, f being the right-hand side in (4.1), (4.2) and (4.3), and V_0 the known, in general oscillatory, leading-order function in (3.1). All inner products involving $V_0(x,k)$ are with respect to x. Secondly there are 'stiffness matrix' inner products involving integral operators. These are in principle $2(d-1)$-dimensional, and in general take the form

$$(D_k\phi,b\widetilde{\phi}),\ (D'_k\phi,b\widetilde{\phi}),\ (S_k\phi,b\widetilde{\phi}), \tag{4.5}$$

or

$$(D_kV_0,b\widetilde{\phi}),\ (D'_kV_0,b\widetilde{\phi}),\ (S_kV_0,b\widetilde{\phi}), \tag{4.6}$$

with b again smooth and non-oscillatory (in some cases $b\equiv 1$). Finally the surface gradient term in (4.3) yields further 'stiffness matrix' inner products of the form

$$(\nabla_\Gamma S_k\phi,\,\widetilde{\phi}x) \quad \text{and} \quad (\nabla_\Gamma S_kV_0,\,\widetilde{\phi}x), \tag{4.7}$$

and these can be reduced to inner products just involving the single-layer

operator, via integration by parts, as we explain in Section 4.1.3. So, for the present let us concentrate on the inner products (4.4)–(4.6).

We may start by observing the fundamental difference between the integration tasks arising from hybrid methods and those arising from standard boundary element methods. In standard BEM (with piecewise polynomial bases), the basis functions have local support, and should cover only a fraction of a wavelength in order for the method to be sufficiently accurate. Moreover, in standard BEM, the terms involving the (in general) oscillatory function V_0 are not present. So, even though the kernels of the operators (*e.g.*, in (4.5)) are oscillatory, the oscillation does not pose a problem in practice since the domains of integration are so small that they resolve the oscillation. On the other hand, in hybrid methods the intention is that the support of the basis functions should be large compared to the wavelength (to achieve computational efficiency), so the domains of integration are correspondingly large, typically rendering the integrals highly oscillatory (in addition, V_0 (when present) is typically supported over the entire illuminated region). Moreover the basis functions ϕ, $\widetilde{\phi}$ are also oscillatory (as are f and V_0), thus complicating the oscillation in (4.5) and also potentially introducing oscillation in (4.4). (We consider this in more detail in Section 4.1.1 below.)

Recalling (3.1), a typical basis function for a hybrid space $\mathcal{V}_N$ will take the form

$$\phi(x) = \chi_j(x) P_\ell(x) \exp(\mathrm{i}k\psi_m(x)), \tag{4.8}$$

where $\{\chi_j : j = 1, \dots, J\}$ is a partition of unity with respect to a covering, $\{\Gamma_j : j = 1, \dots, J\}$ of Γ, $\{\psi_m : m = 1, \dots, M\}$ is a set of phase functions and $\{P_\ell(\zeta(s)) : \ell = 1, \dots, p\}$ is a basis for the polynomials of degree p, with ζ a parametrization of Γ. This includes, as a special case, basis functions of the form $\phi(x) = P_\ell(x) \exp(\mathrm{i}k\psi_m(x))$, with x restricted to a subdomain of Γ, *i.e.*, standard discontinuous piecewise polynomials modulated with *a priori* chosen plane waves.

4.1.1. Load vector and mass matrix integrals

With the basis functions given by the generic formula (4.8), and introducing also $\widetilde{\phi} = \chi_{j'} P_{\ell'} \exp(\mathrm{i}k\psi_{m'})$, the integrals in (4.4) may be written

$$(f, \widetilde{\phi}) = \int_{\Gamma_{j'}} (f\chi_{j'} P_{\ell'})(x) \exp(-\mathrm{i}k\psi_{m'}(x)) \, \mathrm{d}s(x), \tag{4.9}$$

$$(bV_0, \widetilde{\phi}) = \int_{\Gamma_{j'}} (bV_0\chi_{j'} P_{\ell'})(x) \exp(-\mathrm{i}k\psi_{m'}(x)) \, \mathrm{d}s(x), \tag{4.10}$$

$$(b\phi, \widetilde{\phi}) = \int_{\Gamma_j \cap \Gamma_{j'}} (b\chi_j\chi_{j'} P_\ell P_{\ell'})(x) \exp(\mathrm{i}k(\psi_m(x) - \psi_{m'}(x))) \, \mathrm{d}s(x). \tag{4.11}$$

In general these integrals take the form

$$\int_{\Gamma_j \cap \Gamma_{j'}} g(x) \exp(\mathrm{i}k\Psi(x))\, \mathrm{d}s(x), \tag{4.12}$$

and in general they are oscillatory (with g smooth and non-oscillatory, and the oscillations contained in the term $\exp(\mathrm{i}k\Psi(x))$). However, in some cases Ψ is constant and the integral (4.12) is not oscillatory. To illustrate this point, let us consider the sound-soft scattering problem solved by the direct boundary integral method (4.2). In this case (see (1.4))

$$f(x) = f_{k,\eta}(x) = \mathrm{i}(kn(x) \cdot \hat{a} - \eta) \exp(\mathrm{i}kx \cdot \hat{a}).$$

Example 4.1. In the case of scattering by a smooth convex obstacle (see Section 3.1), $V_0 \equiv 0$ and the basis functions take the form (4.8) with $M = 1$ and $\psi_1(x) = x \cdot \hat{a}$: see, *e.g.*, Domínguez *et al.* (2007). In this case all basis functions have the same phase, which is the same as the phase of f, and so neither of the integrals (4.9) or (4.11) are oscillatory, and the integral (4.10) is not present.

Example 4.2. In the case of scattering by a polygon, V_0 is oscillatory and supported over (at least) the entire illuminated region, and basis functions with several phases appear. Thus each of the integrals (4.9), (4.10) and (4.11) may be oscillatory. For example, consider an illuminated side of a convex polygon, parametrized by $\zeta(s) = \{(s, 0) : s \in [0, 1]\}$. Recalling (3.35), on this side $V_0 = 2\partial u^I/\partial n$, and basis functions with the phases $\psi_1(\zeta(s)) = s$ and $\psi_2(\zeta(s)) = -s$ appear. Thus the integrals (4.9) and (4.10) each take the form (4.12) with $\Psi(\zeta(s)) = \zeta(s) \cdot \hat{a} \pm s$, and the integral (4.11) takes the form (4.12) with $\Psi(\zeta(s)) \in \{-2s, 0, 2s\}$. For a convex polygon each of these integrals thus has linear phase, which eases their evaluation considerably (see Section 4.4.1).

Example 4.3. For the case of a non-convex polygon, we consider an illuminated non-convex side (defined as in Section 3.4), again parametrized by $\zeta(s) = \{(s, 0) : s \in [0, 1]\}$. In this case, recalling (3.49) and considering only (4.11) (the oscillatory behaviour of the 'knife edge' solution (and hence of V_0) is rather complicated; we refer to Chandler-Wilde *et al.* (2012*a*) for details), basis functions with the phases $\psi_1(\zeta(s)) = s$, $\psi_2(\zeta(s)) = -s$ and $\psi_3(\zeta(s)) = \sqrt{s^2 + a^2}$ appear (where $a > 0$). Thus in this case the integral (4.11) takes the form (4.12), with linear phase functions of the form $\Psi(\zeta(s)) \in \{-2s, 0, 2s\}$ occurring, as in Example 4.2, but also non-linear phase functions of the form $\Psi(\zeta(s)) = \pm s \pm \sqrt{s^2 + a^2}$.

4.1.2. Stiffness matrix integrals for conventional operators

To describe the structure of the integrals in (4.5) and (4.6), it is useful to introduce the following notation.

Notation 4.4. If R is any linear integral operator on Γ with kernel function r and if ψ_m are the phases appearing in (4.8), then we denote by $R^{m,m'}$ the integral operator:

$$(R^{m,m'}w)(x) = \int_\Gamma r^{m,m'}(x,y)w(y)\mathrm{d}s(y),$$

with modulated kernel $r^{m,m'}(x,y) := \exp(\mathrm{i}k(\psi_m(y) - \psi_{m'}(y))r(x,y)$.

With $\phi, \widetilde{\phi}$ as defined above, it is then easy to see that

$$\begin{aligned}(R\phi, b\widetilde{\phi}) &= (R^{m,m'}(\chi_j P_\ell), b\chi_{j'}P_{\ell'}) \\ &= \int_{\Gamma_{j'}}\int_{\Gamma_j} r^{m,m'}(x,y)\chi_j(y)P_\ell(y)b(x)\chi_{j'}(x)P_{\ell'}(x)\,\mathrm{d}s(y)\,\mathrm{d}s(x),\end{aligned}$$

and the structure of each of the inner products in (4.5) can then be understood to be special cases of this abstract formula. For example the third integral in (4.5) may be written

$$(S_k\phi, b\widetilde{\phi}) = (S_k^{m,m'}(\chi_j P_\ell), b\chi_{j'}P_{\ell'}),$$

where S_k is the integral operator with modulated kernel

$$\Phi_k(x,y)\exp(\mathrm{i}k(\psi_m(x) - \psi_{m'}(y))), \quad x,y \in \Gamma. \tag{4.13}$$

Similarly the first and second inner products in (4.5) (involving D_k and D_k') yield the modulated kernels

$$\frac{\partial\Phi_k(x,y)}{\partial n(y)}\exp(\mathrm{i}k(\psi_m(x) - \psi_{m'}(y))), \quad \frac{\partial\Phi_k(x,y)}{\partial n(x)}\exp(\mathrm{i}k(\psi_m(x) - \psi_{m'}(y))). \tag{4.14}$$

The inner products in (4.6) can be represented in a similar way, noting that for each the examples discussed in Section 3 we can write

$$V_0(x,k) = \sum_j V_0^j(x,k)\exp(\mathrm{i}k\psi_0^j(x)), \tag{4.15}$$

where the known functions V_0^j are not oscillatory. This representation is obvious for the convex obstacles studied in Section 3; that it can also be applied for the non-convex polygons discussed in Section 3.4 is shown in Chandler-Wilde *et al.* (2012*a*).

The construction of robust quadrature rules for the oscillatory integrals (4.5) and (4.6) depends crucially on the explicit extraction of the phase of the oscillatory components, which (once this is done for the leading-order behaviour V_0, as discussed above) is achieved by extracting the phase from the fundamental solution and its normal derivatives. Restricting to (4.5) and to the kernels which arise in the direct boundary integral operator only (*i.e.*, the second and third entries in (4.5); the first entry is analogous), it

is easy to see that

$$\Phi_k(x,y) = F(x,y)\exp(\mathrm{i}k|x-y|), \quad \frac{\partial \Phi_k(x,y)}{\partial n(x)} = G(x,y)\exp(\mathrm{i}k|x-y|), \tag{4.16}$$

where

$$F(x,y) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{\mathrm{i}}{4}h_0(k|x-y|) & d=2, \\ \dfrac{1}{4\pi|x-y|} & d=3, \end{cases} \tag{4.17}$$

with $h_0(z) = \exp(-\mathrm{i}z)H_0^{(1)}(z)$ for $z > 0$, and

$$G(x,y) = \begin{cases} -\dfrac{\mathrm{i}k}{4}\left(\dfrac{n(x)\cdot(x-y)}{|x-y|}\right)h_1(k|x-y|) & d=2, \\ \dfrac{n(x)\cdot(x-y)(\mathrm{i}k|x-y|-1)}{4\pi|x-y|^3} & d=3, \end{cases} \tag{4.18}$$

with $h_1(z) = \exp(-\mathrm{i}z)H_1^{(1)}(z)$ for $z > 0$.

In the 3D case, both F and G are trivially non-oscillatory but of course have derivatives which (in general) blow up with negative powers of $|x-y|$. This statement also holds in 2D, but its proof is a bit more complicated and is postponed to Section 4.1.4.

Collecting together the observations (4.13), (4.14) and (4.16), we see that all of the integrals in (4.5) take the form

$$\int_{\Gamma_j}\int_{\Gamma_{j'}} g(x,y)\exp(\mathrm{i}k\Psi(x,y))\,\mathrm{d}s(y)\,\mathrm{d}s(x) \tag{4.19}$$

with phase

$$\Psi(x,y) = |x-y| + \psi_m(y) - \psi_{m'}(x). \tag{4.20}$$

Here $g(x,y)$ is smooth except at the diagonal $x=y$, and is non-oscillatory in the sense that derivatives of g do not grow any faster as k increases than g itself. The integrals in (4.6) can be represented in a similar way, with different phase functions Ψ varying from problem to problem according to the exact nature of V_0 (specific examples are discussed in Section 4.4).

Remark 4.5. Note that by (4.17) and (4.18), $G(x,y)$ (the non-oscillatory part of the kernel of D_k') contains a multiplicative factor of k which is absent from $F(x,y)$ (the non-oscillatory part of the kernel of S_k). Moreover in the combined potential formulation (4.1), (4.2), S_k is multiplied by the coupling parameter η, which is usually chosen proportional to k. (The discussion in Remark 5.1 indicates that this is a natural choice.) Thus it may at first appear that $(D_k'\phi, \tilde{\phi})$ and $\mathrm{i}\eta(S_k\phi, \tilde{\phi})$ might be $O(k)$ as $k \to \infty$. However, this is in fact not the case; the oscillatory components of the integral operators lead to decay of $O(1/k)$ as $k \to \infty$ for the corresponding integrals (see

Section 4.2, (4.29) in particular), and hence the matrix entries $(D'_k\phi, \tilde{\phi})$ and $\mathrm{i}\eta(S_k\phi, \tilde{\phi})$ are both, in general, $O(1)$ as $k \to \infty$.

4.1.3. Stiffness matrix integrals for surface gradient of the single-layer potential

It remains to discuss the implementation of the Galerkin integrals (4.7) arising from the star-combined formulation. We do this here only for the 3D case (following the discussion in Spence *et al.* 2011) but we note an analogous procedure can be applied in 2D, and this has been implemented in Kim (2012). Let us denote $\Gamma_0 = \operatorname{supp} \widetilde{\phi}$, so that (4.7) may be written

$$\int_{\Gamma_0} \left(\widetilde{\phi}(x)x\right) \cdot \nabla_\Gamma (S_k\phi)(x)\, \mathrm{d}s(x). \tag{4.21}$$

The surface gradient operator may be moved from the right-hand term in (4.21) to the left-hand term by the following integration by parts procedure. We assume that the surface patch Γ^0 is parametrized by a map,

$$\widehat{x} \to \begin{bmatrix} \widehat{x} \\ \xi(\widehat{x}) \end{bmatrix},$$

defined on a 2D parameter domain $\widehat{\Gamma^0}$, where $\xi \in C^2(\widehat{\Gamma^0})$. (This does *not* imply that Γ is globally smooth.) This map is assumed to provide a good parametrization of Γ^0 such that the columns of the Jacobian

$$J(\widehat{x}) := \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \\ \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial \widehat{x}_1} & \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial \widehat{x}_2} \end{bmatrix}$$

form a basis for the tangent plane at x, the image of $\widehat{x} = (\widehat{x}_1, \widehat{x}_2)$ under this map. Moreover for any vector field $w : \Gamma^0 \to \mathbb{R}^3$, we may also resolve w in the tangent and normal directions via the formula

$$w(x) = J(\widehat{x})\widehat{\omega}(\widehat{x}) + (w(x) \cdot n(x))n(x),$$

for some field $\widehat{\omega} : \widehat{\Gamma^0} \to \mathbb{R}^2$. Then in Spence *et al.* (2011) the formula

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\Gamma^0} w(x) \cdot \nabla_\Gamma v(x)\, \mathrm{d}s(x) = &\int_{\partial\widehat{\Gamma^0}} (\det\, J(\widehat{x})^T J(\widehat{x}))^{1/2} \left(\widehat{\omega}(\widehat{x}) \cdot \widehat{n}(\widehat{x})\right) \widehat{v}(\widehat{x})\, \mathrm{d}\zeta(\widehat{x}) \\ &- \int_{\widehat{\Gamma^0}} \widehat{\nabla} \cdot \left[(\det\, J(\widehat{x})^T J(\widehat{x}))^{1/2} \widehat{\omega}(\widehat{x})\right] \widehat{v}(\widehat{x})\, \mathrm{d}\hat{x} \end{aligned} \tag{4.22}$$

is proved for all sufficiently smooth vector fields w and v, where $\widehat{n}(\widehat{x})$ is the outward normal from $\widehat{\Gamma^0}$ at $\widehat{x} \in \partial\widehat{\Gamma^0}$ and $\widehat{\nabla}$ denotes gradient with respect to $\widehat{x}$. Inserting $w = \widetilde{\phi}(x)x$ and $v = S_k\phi$ into (4.22) gives a formula for the integral (4.21), which avoids computing the surface derivative of the single-layer potential.

4.1.4. Phase extraction in the 2D case

We finish this subsection by briefly explaining why the functions F and G appearing in (4.17) and (4.18) are non-oscillatory in the 2D case. This property is proved using the following lemma, which examines the asymptotics of the functions h_0 and h_1 which appear in the formulae (4.17) and (4.18).

Lemma 4.6. For all $n \geq 0$, there exists a constant C_n such that

$$\left|\left(\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}z}\right)^n h_0(z)\right| \leq C_n \begin{cases} \max\{1+\log(1/z), z^{-n}\} & z \in (0,1], \\ z^{-(n+1/2)} & z \in [1,\infty), \end{cases}$$

and

$$\left|\left(\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}z}\right)^n h_1(z)\right| \leq C_n \begin{cases} z^{-(n+1)} & z \in (0,1], \\ z^{-(n+1/2)} & z \in [1,\infty). \end{cases}$$

We do not give the proof here, but we note it is obtained by using the following integral formula (see, *e.g.*, Oberhettinger and Badii (1973, (12.31) in part II)):

$$H_0^{(1)}(z) = -\frac{2\mathrm{i}}{\pi}\exp(\mathrm{i}z)\int_0^\infty \frac{\exp(-zt)}{t^{1/2}(t-2\mathrm{i})^{1/2}}\,\mathrm{d}t. \tag{4.23}$$

This immediately gives us a formula for $h_0(z)$ which can be readily differentiated. A formula for $h_1(z)$ is obtained by combining the first derivative of (4.23) with the formula $H_1^{(1)}(z) = -\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}z}H_0^{(1)}(z)$ (Abramowitz and Stegun 1964, (9.1.27)). More details of the proof of Lemma 4.6 are in Chandler-Wilde and Langdon (2007, Theorem 3.1) and in Kim (2012) .

Now if the 2D contour Γ is parametrized by ζ (say arc length parametrization), we are concerned with estimates for the derivatives of $h_0(kr(s,t))$ and $h_1(kr(s,t))$ where $r(s,t) = |\zeta(s) - \zeta(t)|$. When considering the single-layer potential we can use Lemma 4.6 and the Faá di Bruno formula for multiple application of the chain rule to show (see Kim (2012)) that for each $p_1, p_2 \in \mathbb{N}$, there exists a constant C such that

$$\left|\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial s}\right)^{p_1}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\right)^{p_2}\Big\{h_0(kr(s,t))\Big\}\right| \leq C\, r(s,t)^{-p_1-p_2},$$

so the function F is not oscillatory. Analogous estimates can be obtained for the function G (Kim 2012).

In Sections 4.3 and 4.4 below, we will describe some oscillatory integration methods which have been used to implement hybrid methods in scattering. Since the computation of oscillatory integrals has a long history and has seen a great deal of recent interest (some of it related to high-frequency scattering and some of it coming from completely different motivations), we insert at this point a (necessarily brief) review of numerical methods for oscillatory integration in general.

4.2. Efficient evaluation of highly oscillatory integrals: a review

In this subsection we describe a range of schemes for computing single integrals of the form

$$I_k^{[a,b]}(g) = \int_a^b g(s) \exp(\mathrm{i}k\Psi(s)) \, \mathrm{d}s, \tag{4.24}$$

and double integrals of the form

$$I_k^{[a,b]\times[a',b']}(g) = \int_a^b \int_{a'}^{b'} g(s,t) \exp(\mathrm{i}k\Psi(s,t)) \, \mathrm{d}t \, \mathrm{d}s, \tag{4.25}$$

where $a, b, a', b' \in \mathbb{R}$, $a < b$, $a' < b'$, and $k > 0$. We have in mind here that the function g is integrable on its domain and that it is slowly oscillating compared to $\exp(\mathrm{i}k\Psi)$.

Such integrals appear in Galerkin methods for BIEs arising in 2D scattering as described in Section 4.1 (after parametrization of (a part of) the boundary via univariate functions); recall (4.12) and (4.19). Integrals such as (4.25) also appear in collocation methods for 3D scattering problems, as described in Section 4.5, after parametrization of a part of the boundary by a bivariate function. Galerkin methods in 3D lead to integrals such as (4.25) and its four-dimensional analogue (again recalling the formulae (4.12) and (4.19)). We consider specific methods for the 3D case in Section 4.5, but remark that many of the ideas applicable to the efficient evaluation of (4.25) can, in principle at least, be extended to higher dimensions.

Because of the oscillation, conventional (interpolatory) quadrature techniques for evaluating (4.24)–(4.25) perform poorly when k is large, with the computational cost required to achieve a prescribed level of accuracy increasing rapidly as $k \to \infty$. To get around this difficulty, many schemes have been proposed, some of which have been inspired by classical asymptotic integration schemes; see, *e.g.*, Bleistein and Handelsman (1986), Olver (1974) and Wong (1989). Starting with (4.24) and assuming that g and Ψ are sufficiently smooth and that Ψ' does not vanish on $[a, b]$, repeated integration by parts gives

$$\begin{aligned} I_k^{[a,b]}(g) = &- \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} \left(\frac{\mathrm{i}}{k}\right)^{j+1} u_j(s) \exp(\mathrm{i}k\Psi(s)) \Big|_{s=a}^{s=b} \\ &+ \left(\frac{\mathrm{i}}{k}\right)^n \int_a^b g_n(s) \exp(\mathrm{i}k\Psi(s)) \, \mathrm{d}s, \end{aligned} \tag{4.26}$$

for $n = 1, 2, \ldots$, where

$$u_0 = \frac{g}{\Psi'}, \quad g_{j+1} = u_j', \quad u_{j+1} = \frac{g_{j+1}}{\Psi'},$$

for $j = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$. Applying the Riemann–Lebesgue lemma (*e.g.*, Wong

1989, p. 200) to the remaining integral, we find that $I_k^{[a,b]}(g)$ is asymptotic to the boundary terms (assuming they do not vanish), that is,

$$I_k^{[a,b]}(g) \sim -\sum_{j=0}^{n-1}\left(\frac{\mathrm{i}}{k}\right)^{j+1} u_j(s)\exp(\mathrm{i}k\Psi(s))\Big|_{s=a}^{s=b} + o(k^{-n}), \quad \text{as } k\to\infty, \tag{4.27}$$

for $n = 1, 2, \ldots$.

For (4.25) on the other hand, making the assumption that $\nabla\Psi(x) \neq 0$ for all $x \in [a,b]\times[a',b']$, applying the divergence theorem and following Wong (1989, p. 425), for instance, we have the similar result that

$$\begin{aligned} I_k^{[a,b]\times[a',b']}(g) = &-\sum_{j=0}^{n-1}\left(\frac{\mathrm{i}}{k}\right)^{j+1}\int_0^L (u_j(\zeta(s))\cdot n(s))\exp(\mathrm{i}k\Psi(\zeta(s)))\,\mathrm{d}s \\ &+\left(\frac{\mathrm{i}}{k}\right)^{n}\int_a^b\int_{a'}^{b'}\tilde{g}_n(s,t)\exp(\mathrm{i}k\Psi(s,t))\,\mathrm{d}t\,\mathrm{d}s, \end{aligned} \tag{4.28}$$

where $\zeta(s)$, $n(s)$ and $L = 2(b-a+b'-a')$ are the arc length parametrization, unit outward normal vector and length, respectively, of the boundary of $[a,b]\times[a',b']$, and

$$u_0 := \frac{\nabla\Psi}{|\nabla\Psi|^2}g, \quad \tilde{g}_{j+1} = (\nabla\cdot u_j), \quad u_{j+1} = \frac{\nabla\Psi}{|\nabla\Psi|^2}\tilde{g}_{j+1},$$

for $j = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$. Under the further assumption that $\frac{\partial}{\partial s}\Psi(\zeta(s)) \neq 0$ on the boundary of $[a,b]\times[a',b']$ (this is equivalent to the non-resonance condition of Iserles and Nørsett (2006)), which ensures that the double integral on the right-hand side of (4.28) is $o(1)$ as $k\to\infty$, we have

$$I_k^{[a,b]\times[a',b']}(g) \sim -\sum_{j=0}^{n-1}\left(\frac{\mathrm{i}}{k}\right)^{j+1}\int_0^L (u_j(\zeta(s))\cdot n(s))\exp(\mathrm{i}k\Psi(\zeta(s)))\,\mathrm{d}s + o(k^{-n}), \tag{4.29}$$

as $k\to\infty$, for $n = 1, 2, \ldots$.

If in (4.27) Ψ' vanishes at any point of $[a,b]$ then one cannot use the integration by parts representation (4.26). Likewise, if $\nabla\Psi$ vanishes at any point of $[a,b]\times[a',b']$ then one cannot use the divergence theorem formula (4.29). In either case, it can easily be shown that as $k\to\infty$, the corresponding oscillatory integral is dominated by contributions obtained by integrating over small neighbourhoods of all such 'stationary phase' points, with the size of the neighbourhoods vanishing as $k\to\infty$.

In particular, in the 1D case it can be shown that if x_s is a stationary point of order $n \geq 1$, that is,

$$\Psi'(x_s) = \Psi''(x_s) = \cdots = \Psi^{(n)}(x_s) = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad \Psi^{(n+1)}(x_s) \neq 0,$$

and if, in addition, $g(x_s) \neq 0$, then $I_k^{[a,b]}(g) = O(k^{-1/(n+1)})$ as $k \to \infty$. (Thus the flatter $\Psi(x)$ is at $x = x_s$, the less rapidly $I_k^{[a,b]}(g)$ vanishes as $k \to \infty$.) Similar results hold for $I_k^{[a,b]\times[a',b']}(g)$: see, *e.g.*, Wong (1989). The classical 'method of stationary phase' then consists of approximating the integrals asymptotically via Taylor series expansions about the stationary points: see, *e.g.*, Olver (1974, p. 96). If a partition of unity is used to isolate the stationary points, then the integrals over the remainder of the domain can be expanded in a similar way to (4.27) and (4.28) above.

Historically, asymptotic formulae such as these have been used to approximate oscillatory integrals arising from scattering problems. For example, the single integrals in (4.29) each take the form (4.24), and thus an obvious way to evaluate (4.25) for large k, under the stated assumptions on Ψ, could be to simply apply (4.27) within (4.29) and to truncate the series. Such an approach may yield accurate results for *sufficiently large* k; however, the asymptotic series (4.27) and (4.29) are not convergent for fixed k, and may diverge very quickly in practice; see, *e.g.*, Ganesh, Langdon and Sloan (2007), where such an approach is analysed within the context of a particular class of 3D scattering problems. Hence it is not possible to obtain the required integrals to a controllable accuracy for any fixed k unless we combine the asymptotic approach with a convergent quadrature rule. On the other hand, a reasonable goal for any quadrature approach is that it should be able to replicate the asymptotic results in the limit as $k \to \infty$, and standard quadrature schemes for which the weights are not explicitly dependent on k will perform poorly.

A simple idea, implemented by Asheim (2008) is to use the series representations (4.26) and (4.27) and to evaluate the remaining single and double integrals numerically (via Filon quadrature, see Section 4.3), rather than integrating the original integral directly. The reduction of order (with respect to k) of the integral being evaluated numerically, compared to more standard approaches, leads to improved overall accuracy. The schemes in Bruno *et al.* (2004) and Bruno and Geuzaine (2007) are also based on the asymptotic expansions above, but applying convergent quadrature rules to evaluate the integrals in the neighbourhood of stationary points; see Section 4.5 for more details.

An alternative asymptotic approach is the 'method of steepest descent' (see, *e.g.*, Jones 1972, Wong 1989, §II.4). Describing this method as it applies to (4.24), the idea is to deform the path of integration into the complex plane in such a way that the oscillatory integral (4.24) over a finite interval is replaced by two or more non-oscillatory 'Laplace-type integrals'. These 'Laplace-type integrals' are integrals over infinite intervals but with non-oscillatory integrands which decay exponentially. The exponential rate of decay, moreover, increases as k increases so that the integrals can be

evaluated asymptotically, using, *e.g.*, Watson's Lemma (Jones 1972). An observation dating back at least to Jones (1972) is that, in the limit as $k \to \infty$, very high-order asymptotic approximations to Laplace-type integrals are provided alternatively by generalized Gauss–Laguerre quadrature. Moreover, these approximations are convergent as the number of quadrature points increases. This suggests a 'numerical method of steepest descent', in which the path of integration is deformed to one or more steepest descent paths and generalized Gauss–Laguerre quadrature is used to evaluate the resulting integrals. This amounts to a numerical quadrature scheme for the original oscillatory integral whose performance improves rapidly as k increases. Chandler-Wilde and Hothersall (1995) is a case study of this methodology applied to evaluate numerically a particular Green's function in acoustics. This paper provides an error analysis of the resulting generalized Gauss–Laguerre quadrature approximations, showing moreover how it is possible to modify the approximations to take account of the presence of a simple pole singularity near the steepest descent path of integration, in a way which maintains accuracy uniformly in k and the position of the pole.

The 'numerical method of steepest descent', only hinted at in Jones (1972), and applied only to a particular example in Chandler-Wilde and Hothersall (1995), is developed systematically by Huybrechs and Vandewalle (2006) for the general oscillatory integral (4.24), with further extensions and generalizations in Deaño and Huybrechs (2009). In Huybrechs and Vandewalle (2006) the focus is on single integrals. The methodology has subsequently been extended to double integrals of the form (4.25) (Huybrechs and Vandewalle 2007*a*), and has been used to good effect in a number of schemes (*e.g.*, Honnor *et al.* 2010, Huybrechs and Vandewalle 2007*b*, Asheim and Huybrechs 2010*b*), that we discuss further in Section 4.5. Due in part to the added difficulties arising due to stationary points in the complex plane, particularly for higher-dimensional integration, a complete rigorous error analysis for this approach has proved elusive. However, recent progress by Huybrechs and Olver (2012), who have reinterpreted this 'numerical steepest descent' method as a Filon-type method (see below) with special complex interpolation points, has gone some way to rectifying this, for single integrals at least.

We now turn our focus to Filon quadrature; this procedure turns out to be particularly well suited to integrals of the form (4.24) and (4.25) arising from hybrid Galerkin methods, and is more amenable to the derivation of rigorous error estimates than some of the other schemes described above. For a much more detailed discussion of highly oscillatory quadrature, we refer to the review articles by Iserles, Nørsett and Olver (2005) and Huybrechs and Olver (2009), and also to the more recent literature reviews in Olver (2010), Huybrechs and Olver (2012) and Domínguez, Graham and Smyshlyaev (2011), for example.

4.3. Recent progress on error analysis of Filon rules

The construction of Filon quadrature starts from the simple observation that integrals of the form

$$\int_a^b P_n(s)\exp(\mathrm{i}ks)\,\mathrm{d}s$$

can be evaluated analytically if P_n is a polynomial. Thus any integral of the form (4.24) with $\Psi(s) = s$ (often referred to as the linear oscillator), can be approximated by replacing g by a suitable polynomial (*e.g.*, the Legendre or Chebyshev interpolant) and then integrating exactly. More generally, if we wish to approximate (4.24), and if Ψ does not have stationary points, the change of variable $\tilde{s} = \Psi(s)$ reduces (4.24) to a new oscillatory integral with a phase which is linear in $\tilde{s}$, at the cost of having to evaluate the inverse function Ψ^{-1}. Even if Ψ has stationary points this procedure can still be applied on a partition of $[a, b]$ with breakpoints chosen to be the stationary points, although now algebraic singularities in the integrand appear at the breakpoints due to the singularity of the inverse function there.

Filon quadrature has a long history starting from Filon (1928) (see also Luke 1954, Bakhvalov and Vasilčeva 1968, and the review in Evans and Webster 1999), and has enjoyed considerable recent interest following a sequence of influential papers by Iserles and co-authors (see, *e.g.*, Iserles 2004, Iserles 2005, Iserles and Nørsett 2004, Iserles *et al.* 2005). In particular, Iserles (2004) showed that for the linear oscillator a Filon rule has an error which will decay with k like $O(k^{-2})$, provided the interpolation points include the end points a, b. This was generalized in Iserles and Nørsett (2005), to obtain faster decay as $k \to \infty$, by using interpolation of derivatives at the end points of the domain of integration. Related methods were proposed by Xiang (2007), and general oscillators Ψ which may have stationary points were treated by Olver (2007, 2010).

In the context of high-frequency scattering, many integrals of the form (4.24) and (4.25) have to be computed, and rules which use only point values of g are particularly attractive, since g is often very complicated (and may itself be an integral involving special functions). In error and complexity analysis it also turns out to be important to control the quadrature error explicitly with respect to both k and N (the number of quadrature points), and to know how this depends on the regularity of g (*e.g.*, in some Sobolev space). In this context, a recent error analysis for Filon–Clenshaw–Curtis (FCC) rules (Domínguez, Graham and Kim 2012, Domínguez *et al.* 2011) has been performed and we now give some details of the results obtained there.

In view of the above remarks we may begin by considering oscillatory integrals of the form (4.24) with $\Psi(s) \equiv s$, that is,

$$I_k^{[a,b]}(g) = \int_a^b g(s)\exp(\mathrm{i}ks)\,\mathrm{d}s. \tag{4.30}$$

The FCC rule in its simplest form starts with $[a, b] = [-1, 1]$ and approximates $I_k^{[-1,1]}(g)$, by replacing g by $Q_N g$, its polynomial interpolant of degree N at the Clenshaw–Curtis points $t_{j,N} := \cos(j\pi/N)$, $j = 0, \ldots, N$, where $N \geq 1$. After writing $Q_N g$ in terms of Chebyshev polynomials $T_n(x) = \cos(n \arccos(x))$, $n = 0, \ldots, N$, and performing some elementary manipulations, the rule may be written as

$$I_{k,N}^{[-1,1]}(g) = \sum_{n=0}^{N}{}'' \alpha_{n,N}(g)\omega_n(k), \tag{4.31}$$

with

$$\alpha_{n,N}(g) = \frac{2}{N}\sum_{j=0}^{N}{}'' \cos\left(\frac{jn\pi}{N}\right) g(t_{j,N}), \quad n = 0, \ldots, N, \tag{4.32}$$

where the notation $\sum''$ means that the first and last terms in the sum are multiplied by $1/2$, and where the weights

$$\omega_n(k) := \int_{-1}^{1} T_n(s) \exp(\mathrm{i}ks)\, \mathrm{d}s, \quad n \geq 0, \tag{4.33}$$

have to be computed. After an initial application of the discrete cosine transform (via fast Fourier transform (FFT), costing $O(N \log N)$ operations), the rule (4.31) can then be applied to any g in an additional $O(N)$ operations; see Domínguez *et al.* (2011) for more detail. In Domínguez *et al.* (2011) a stable and efficient scheme for computing $\{\omega_n(k)\}$ is presented, and a public domain implementation of the rule is provided by Domínguez (2009). Moreover, in Domínguez *et al.* (2011), it is shown that there exists a constant $C > 0$ such that, for $r \in \{0, 1\}$ and all integers $m \geq 1$, we have

$$|I_k^{[-1,1]}(g) - I_{k,N}^{[-1,1]}(g)| \leq C \min\left\{1, \left(\frac{1}{k}\right)^r\right\} \left(\frac{1}{N}\right)^{m-r} \|g_c\|_{H^m(-\pi,\pi)}, \tag{4.34}$$

for $k > 0$ and $N \geq 1$. Here $g_c(\theta) = g(\cos\theta)$ is the cosine transform of g and $H^m(-\pi, \pi)$ is the Sobolev space of order m of all 2π-periodic functions. The proof of (4.34) is obtained by noticing that

$$\begin{aligned} I_k^{[-1,1]}(g) - I_{k,N}^{[-1,1]}(g) &= \int_{-1}^{1} (g - Q_N g)(s)\ \exp(\mathrm{i}ks)\, \mathrm{d}s \\ &= \int_{0}^{\pi} (g - Q_N g)_c(\theta) \exp(\mathrm{i}k\cos\theta) \sin\theta\, \mathrm{d}\theta, \end{aligned}$$

and that $(g - Q_N g)_c$ is the error in the even trigonometric interpolant of degree N to g_c at the points $j\pi/N$, $j = 0, \ldots, N$. Then, integration by parts and standard error estimates for trigonometric interpolation at equally spaced points yield the estimate. It is straightforward to extend (4.34) to all $r \in [0, 1]$. In fact a more general version of this theorem with $r = 2$

and m required to be any real number greater than $7/2$ was proved in Domínguez *et al.* (2011), making precise the requirements for the $O(k^{-2})$ decay predicted in Iserles (2004).

The convergence rate in (4.34) may be slow if g is not smooth and in this case it is better to apply the rule in a composite fashion with fixed N on meshes graded suitably towards the singular point(s) and obtain convergence by letting the mesh diameter shrink to zero. In order to obtain error estimates for such composite rules, Domínguez *et al.* (2012) prove a variant of (4.34) which shows (emphasizing the case $k \to \infty$), that there exists $\sigma_N > 0$ such that

$$\left|I_k^{[-1,1]}(g) - I_{k,N}^{[-1,1]}(g)\right| \le \sigma_N \left(\frac{1}{k}\right)^r \left\{\int_{-1}^{1} \frac{|g^{(N+1)}(s)|}{\sqrt{1-s^2}}\,\mathrm{d}s\right\}^{1/2}, \tag{4.35}$$

for all $k > 0$ and $N \ge 1$.

Now, to compute (4.30) for any $[a, b]$ we can transplant onto $[-1, 1]$ using the affine change of variables $s = c + h\tilde{s}$, $\tilde{s} \in [-1, 1]$, where and the estimate, analogous to (4.35), is

$$\left|I_k^{[a,b]}(g) - I_{k,N}^{[a,b]}(g)\right| \le \tilde{\sigma}_N \left(\frac{1}{k}\right)^r h^{N+2-r} \left\{\int_a^b \frac{|g^{(N+1)}(s)|}{\sqrt{(s-a)(b-s)}}\,\mathrm{d}s\right\}^{1/2}. \tag{4.36}$$

If the FCC rule is applied in a composite fashion, the estimate (4.36) may then be used to establish convergence as the subinterval size shrinks to zero, when N is fixed. Optimal convergence for singular integrands g can be obtained by suitable mesh refinement. For example, suppose

$$\|g\|_{N+1,\beta} := \max\left\{\sup_{s\in[0,1]} |g(s)|,\ \sup_{s\in[0,1]} \left|s^{(j-\beta)} D^j g(s)\right|,\ j = 1, \ldots, N+1\right\} < \infty, \tag{4.37}$$

for some $\beta > 0$, and introduce the graded mesh $s_j = (j/M)^q$, $j = 0, \ldots, M$. On the first interval, we use the one-point rule

$$\int_0^{s_1} g(s) \exp(\mathrm{i}ks)\,\mathrm{d}s \approx g(s_1) \int_0^{s_1} g(s) \exp(\mathrm{i}ks)\,\mathrm{d}s,$$

while on all other subintervals we use the FCC rule shifted to that interval in an affine way. Then it was shown (Kim 2012) that the error $E_{k,M,q,N}(g)$ (*i.e.*, the difference between the integral $I_k^{[0,1]}(g)$ and the resulting approximation) may be estimated as

$$|E_{k,M,q,N}(g)| \le C \left(\frac{1}{k}\right)^r \left(\frac{1}{M}\right)^{N+1-r} \|g\|_{N+1,\beta}, \tag{4.38}$$

provided $q > (N + 1 - r)/(\beta + 1 - r)$, where C depends on N, β and r but not M. The results illustrated here have been extended in Domínguez

et al. (2012) to the case of logarithmic singularities in g and also the case $g(s) \sim s^{\beta}$, with $\beta \in (-1, 0)$. In the algorithms presented in Domínguez *et al.* (2012) the error decays at least as fast as the exact integral $I_k^{[0,1]}(g)$ as $k \to \infty$. Logarithmic singularities in particular often occur in the integrals arising in hybrid Galerkin methods (recall (4.17) and Lemma 4.6).

Related estimates to those described here may be found in Melenk (2010) (see also Melenk 2008), where general Filon-type rules for (4.24) are considered with g approximated by a general Hermite interpolating polynomial and g, Ψ are considered to be holomorphic in a neighbourhood of $[a, b]$. Error estimates for this case showing exponential convergence with respect to the polynomial degree and allowing sharp estimates of the rate of decay with respect to k are obtained. It is expected that by changing the choice of mesh grading and generalizing the setting to that of piecewise analytic functions, the estimates above could also be extended to show exponential convergence for *hp*-versions of the FCC quadrature, such as is observed (for a related scheme, using Gauss–Legendre rather than Clenshaw–Curtis nodes and weights) in Melenk and Langdon (2007, 2012).

4.4. Galerkin integrals for the 2D case

In this subsection we describe in more detail the robust computation of the oscillatory integrals arising in hybrid Galerkin methods in 2D in both the smooth convex and the polygonal cases. The relevant references are (for the smooth convex case) Domínguez, Graham, Kim and Smyshlyaev (2009), Domínguez *et al.* (2012), Domínguez *et al.* (2011), and Kim (2012), and (for the polygonal case) Melenk and Langdon (2007) and Melenk and Langdon (2012). The central method to be applied is the FCC rule, usually after application of a transformation to render the phase linear. We start in Section 4.4.1 by describing the key ideas in the simplest context of the load vector and mass matrix integrals, as described in Section 4.1.1, which are only oscillatory in the polygonal case. We then proceed in Section 4.4.2 by studying the (in general) more difficult stiffness matrix entries, as introduced in Sections 4.1.2 and 4.1.3.

4.4.1. Load vector and mass matrix entries

Recalling Section 4.1.1, we begin by noting that all load vector and mass matrix entries for the convex polygonal case (as described in Example 4.2) have linear phase, and thus each can be expressed exactly in the form (4.24) with $\Psi(s) = Cs$, where $C \in \mathbb{R}$. The change of variables $\tilde{s} = Cs$ immediately puts each of these integrals in the form (4.30), and then the FCC rules of Section 4.3 can be applied without difficulty.

As a slightly more challenging example we consider one of the integrals described in Example 4.3, which arise in the case of a non-convex polygon

with an illuminated non-convex side. Specifically, we consider the construction of an efficient quadrature scheme for evaluating

$$\int_0^1 g(s)\exp(\mathrm{i}k(s+\sqrt{s^2+a^2}))\,\mathrm{d}s,$$

where $a>0$ and $g\in L^2(0,1)$ is not oscillatory. We proceed by making the change of variables

$$\tau = s+\sqrt{s^2+a^2},$$

giving $s=(\tau^2-a^2)/2\tau$ and hence $\mathrm{d}s/\mathrm{d}\tau=(1+a^2/\tau^2)/2>0$. Thus the integral can be written as

$$\int_a^{1+\sqrt{1+a^2}} \tilde{g}(\tau)\exp(\mathrm{i}k\tau)\,\mathrm{d}\tau, \tag{4.39}$$

where

$$\tilde{g}(\tau) := \frac{1}{2}\left(1+\frac{a^2}{\tau^2}\right)g\left(\frac{\tau^2-a^2}{2\tau}\right)$$

is non-oscillatory. The integral (4.39) thus again takes the form (4.30), allowing us to apply the rules of Section 4.3 directly. The other load vector/mass matrix integrals that arise for convex and non-convex polygons can all be evaluated using a similar procedure.

4.4.2. Stiffness matrix entries

In Section 4.1.2 it is explained that we can cover all the oscillatory integration problems which arise from the 'stiffness matrix' inner products, (4.5) and (4.6), by considering integrals of the form (4.19) with g non-oscillatory but (usually) weakly singular at $x=y$ and with phase Ψ given either by (4.20) (for (4.5)), where $\{\psi_m\}$ are the phases present in the basis functions (see (4.8)), or by a similar formula found by replacing $\psi_m(y)$ in (4.20) with $\psi_0^j(y)$, where ψ_0^j are the phase functions in the representation (4.15) for V_0.

In the computation of (4.19) we will parametrize the boundary Γ by some parametrization ζ. Identifying x with $\zeta(s)$, and y with $\zeta(t)$, we may rewrite (4.19) in the form

$$J_k = \int\int g(s,t)\exp(\mathrm{i}k\Psi(s,t))\,\mathrm{d}t\,\mathrm{d}s. \tag{4.40}$$

(Here we have abused notation slightly: the notation $g(s,t)$ is used to denote the function $g(\zeta(s),\zeta(t))|\zeta'(s)|\,|\zeta'(t)|$, while $\Psi(s,t)$ denotes the function $\Psi(\zeta(s),\zeta(t))$ and the limits on the integrals in (4.40) depend on the choice of the parametrization.)

Recalling the specific phases of the basis functions ψ_m and the leading-order behaviour V_0 for the two examples of a smooth convex obstacle (recall

Example 3.1) and a convex polygon (see (3.35) and (3.8)), we have

$$\Psi(s,t) = \begin{cases} |\zeta(s)-\zeta(t)| + (\zeta(t)-\zeta(s))\cdot\hat{a} & \text{convex smooth,} \\ |\zeta(s)-\zeta(t)| + \theta s \pm t & \text{convex polygon,} \end{cases} \tag{4.41}$$

for some $\theta \in [-1,1]$ (with $\theta = \pm 1$ corresponding to the inner products (4.5), and $\theta \in (-1,1)$ for the inner products (4.6)).

One approach to computing the integral J_k in (4.40) robustly with respect to k is to introduce a change of variable $\tau = \Psi(s,t)$, thus obtaining a transformed integral with phase which varies linearly in τ (as in Section 4.4.1). Introducing the notation

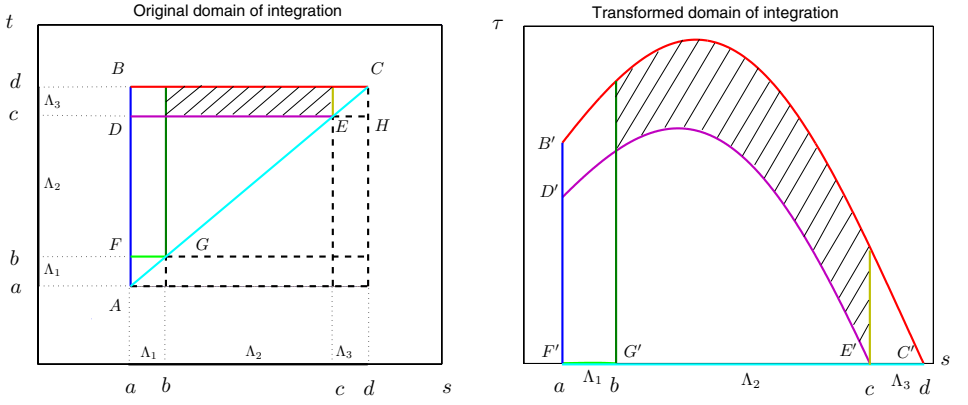
$$\Psi_{[s]}(t) := \Psi(s,t) \quad \text{and} \quad \Psi^{[t]}(s) := \Psi(s,t),$$

we can choose to interpret this transformation as either $\tau = \Psi_{[s]}(t)$ (defining τ in terms of t, for each s) or $\tau = \Psi^{[t]}(s)$ (defining τ in terms of s, for each t). (The choice of interpretation would be motivated by the desire to avoid, as far as possible, choosing a transformation containing stationary points.) The transformed integral is then suitable for treatment using the Filon rules outlined in Section 4.3 (as described in Section 4.4.1 for the simpler load vector/mass matrix entries), and hence rigorous error estimates are possible. The transformation does however introduce some new difficulties, since the regular domain of integration in (4.40) (usually rectangular or triangular) is transformed to a (usually non-standard) shaped domain and, moreover, inverse functions of Ψ appear in the transformed integrand. However, the method (first suggested by Melenk 2006 and substantially developed by Domínguez 2007; see also Domínguez *et al.* 2009) has enjoyed considerable success in computing the Galerkin integrals.

To give more detail, let us first consider the case of a smooth convex obstacle. Recalling (3.25)–(3.26), Γ is parametrized by $\zeta : [0,2\pi] \to \Gamma$ and the parameter domain $[0,2\pi]$ is partitioned into four subintervals $\Lambda_i : i = 1,\ldots,4$, where Λ_1, Λ_2 correspond to the near-shadow boundary zones (which shrink to zero as $k \to \infty$), Λ_3 corresponds to a subset of the illuminated zone and the remaining interval of parameter space, Λ_4, corresponds to the deep shadow zone. Since the solution is exponentially small in the deep shadow, it is approximated by zero there, and thus only integrals over the domains

$$\Lambda_j \times \Lambda_{j'} \quad \text{for } j,j' = 1,2,3 \tag{4.42}$$

have to be considered. These domains are depicted in Figure 4.1(a), where we have written $\Lambda_1 = [a,b]$, $\Lambda_2 = [c,d]$ and $\Lambda_3 = [b,c]$. In the case of the 'diagonal domains' in (4.42) (*i.e.*, those with $j = j'$), the integrand in (4.40) generally has a singularity at $s = t$. These domains are subdivided into two triangles along the diagonal (Figure 4.1(a)), thus confining the singularity to the boundary, as turns out to be important later.



(a) the domains $\Lambda_j \times \Lambda_{j'}$

(b) images of the above diagonal domains under the transformation (4.43)

Figure 4.1. Domains of integration for a smooth convex obstacle.

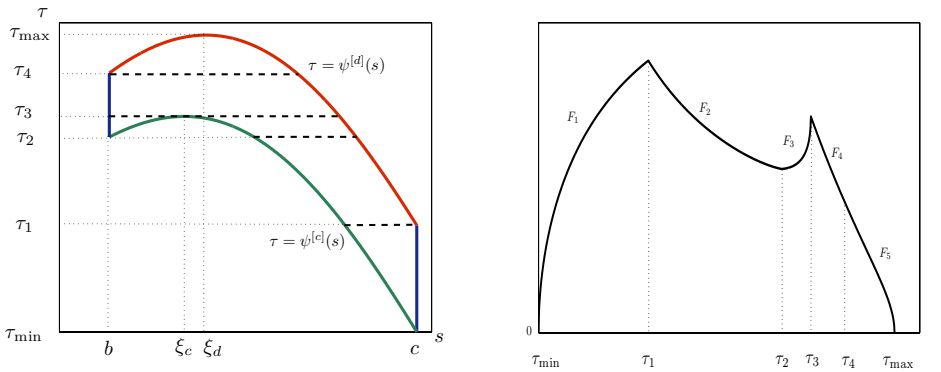
It is shown in Kim (2012) (see also Domínguez *et al.* 2009) that $\Psi_{[s]}$ has stationary points only when $(s,t) \in \Lambda_1 \times \Lambda_1$, with $t \geq s$ and when $(s,t) \in \Lambda_3 \times \Lambda_3$ with $t \leq s$ (curves of stationary points are depicted in Figure 4.3(a)). Thus the transformation

$$\tau = \Psi_{[s]}(t) \tag{4.43}$$

provides a well-defined change of variable for all the domains above the diagonal depicted in Figure 4.1(a) except for the triangle AFG (and analogously provides also a well-defined change of variable for all domains below the diagonal except for the triangle CEH). The change of variable (4.43) transforms the rectangular and triangular domains above the diagonal in Figure 4.1(a) into curvilinear domains as depicted in Figure 4.1(b). Here s varies on the horizontal axis and τ varies on the vertical axis. Since (in the smooth convex case), Ψ vanishes at $s = t$ (see (4.41)), the diagonal line $s = t$ in Figure 4.1(a) maps to the line $\tau = 0$ in Figure 4.1(b). The top curve in Figure 4.1(b) is the image of the line $t = d$ under the transformation, namely the curve $\tau = \Psi_{[s]}(d) = \Psi^{[d]}(s)$.

Let us consider, as a particular example, the integral (4.40) over the domain $s \in \Lambda_2 = [b,c]$, $t \in \Lambda_3 = [c,d]$ (shaded in Figure 4.1), and making the change of variable (4.43), we arrive at the formula

$$\begin{aligned} J_k &= \int_b^c \int_c^d g(s,t) \exp(\mathrm{i}k\Psi(s,t)) \,\mathrm{d}t \,\mathrm{d}s \\ &= \int_b^c \int_{\Psi^{[c]}(s)}^{\Psi^{[d]}(s)} \tilde{g}\big(s,\tau\big) \exp(\mathrm{i}k\tau) \,\mathrm{d}\tau \,\mathrm{d}s, \end{aligned} \tag{4.44}$$



(a) image of the domain $\Lambda_2 \times \Lambda_3$ under (4.43) (b) the functions $F_j(\tau)$

Figure 4.2. Transformed domain of integration $\Lambda_2 \times \Lambda_3$ for a smooth convex obstacle.

with

$$\tilde{g}(s,\tau) = g(s, \Psi_{[s]}^{-1}(\tau))/|\Psi'_{[s]}(\Psi_{[s]}^{-1}(\tau))|. \tag{4.45}$$

A blow-up of the image of the rectangle $(s,t) \in \Lambda_2 \times \Lambda_3$ under the transformation (4.43) is shown in Figure 4.2(a).

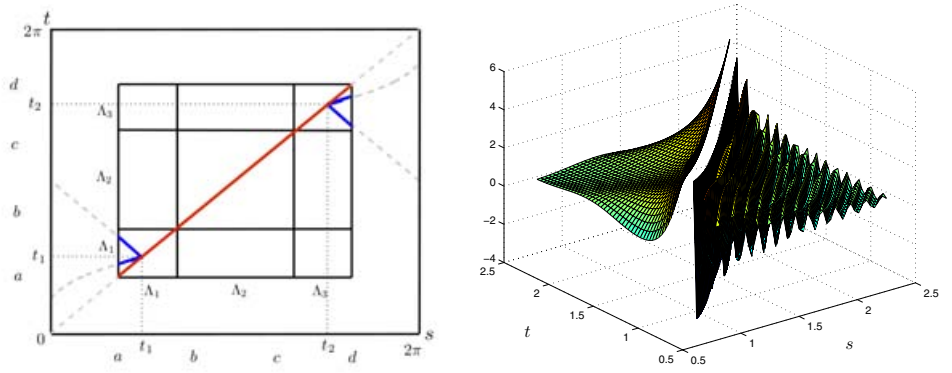
To obtain a set of integrals which can be approximated by the FCC rule, the final step is then to change the order of integration in (4.44), thus pushing all the oscillation in the integrand into the outer integral (over the τ variable). The inner limits of integration typically depend on inverse functions and are highly geometry-dependent. In the particular case of (4.44) (see also Figure 4.2(a)), we have to break the outer integral up into five pieces:

$$J_k = \sum_{j=1}^{5} \int_{\tau_{j-1}}^{\tau_j} F_j(\tau) \exp(\mathrm{i}k\tau)\, \mathrm{d}\tau, \tag{4.46}$$

where $\tau_0 = \tau_{\min}$, $\tau_5 = \tau_{\max}$, and F_j, $j = 1, \ldots, 5$, are real-valued functions on $[\tau_{j-1}, \tau_j]$. For example,

$$F_2(\tau) = \int_{(\Psi^{[c]})^{-1}(\tau)}^{(\Psi^{[d]})^{-1}(\tau)} \tilde{g}(s,\tau)\, \mathrm{d}s.$$

For this example a graph of $\{F_j(\tau) : j = 1,2,3,4,5\}$ is given in Figure 4.2(b). The integrals (4.46) are now computable by the FCC rules described in Section 4.3. The functions F_j may have either logarithmic singularities (from the fundamental solution appearing in $\tilde{g}$) or else algebraic singularities due to the fact that the functions $\Psi^{[c]}$ and $\Psi^{[d]}$ can have turning points. (In the particular example depicted in Figure 4.2 there is a logarithmic singularity at τ_0 and square-root singularities at τ_3 and τ_5, due to the turning-points



(a) paths of stationary points of the function $\Psi_{[s]}$

(b) detail of the oscillations in the integrand of (4.44) on $\Lambda_1 \times \Lambda_1$ for $k = 30$

Figure 4.3. Locations of stationary points and oscillations of integrand for a smooth convex obstacle.

there.) The composite FCC rules described in Section 4.3 have a convergence rate which remains optimal even in the presence of these singularities, provided the mesh grading is appropriately chosen (see (4.38)).

As mentioned earlier (see also Figure 4.3(a)), the change of variable (4.43) is not valid in $\Lambda_1 \times \Lambda_1$ when $t > s$ or in $\Lambda_3 \times \Lambda_3$ when $t < s$, due to the appearance of stationary points. However, Λ_1 and Λ_3 are both small neighbourhoods of the shadow boundary (recall that $\zeta(t_1)$ and $\zeta(t_2)$ are the shadow boundary points, with t_1 and t_2, marked in Figure 4.3), with length which shrinks to zero as $k \to \infty$. It turns out that in these problematic regions the phase has sufficiently many decaying derivatives as $k \to \infty$ that in fact the integrand in (4.44) is not oscillatory at all, and the integral can be well approximated by standard Clenshaw–Curtis rules, for example. This is explained in some detail in Kim (2012) and is illustrated in Figure 4.3(b). Here the domain above the main diagonal is the one with the stationary points and the integrand is slowly varying. (By contrast the domain below the main diagonal has an oscillatory integrand, but this causes us no difficulty since the change of variable (4.43) has no stationary points here and so this integral can be treated with the transformation (4.43) and then FCC rules, as described above.)

We now consider the case of a convex polygon. For this example, the evaluation of (4.19) can be considered under two distinct scenarios: the case that Γ_j and $\Gamma_{j'}$ are on the same side of the polygon, and the case that Γ_j and $\Gamma_{j'}$ are on different sides of the polygon. For both cases, the basic strategy is identical to that for the smooth convex obstacles described above, namely to use a change of variables in order to transform the integral into a form

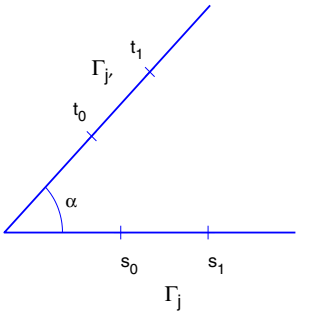


Figure 4.4. Oscillatory integration on the convex polygon: the case where Γ_j and $\Gamma_{j'}$ are supported on different sides.

amenable to evaluation via the FCC quadrature rules of Section 4.3. Further details for this example can be found in Melenk and Langdon (2007, 2012).

First we consider the case for which Γ_j and $\Gamma_{j'}$ each lie on the same side of the polygon. Without loss of generality, we assume that the side on which they lie is parametrized by $\zeta(s) = \{(s,0) : s \in [0,1]\}$, and we suppose further that $\Gamma_j = \{(s,0) : s \in [s_0, s_1]\}$ and $\Gamma_{j'} = \{(t,0) : t \in [t_0, t_1]\}$, where $0 < s_0 < t_0 < s_1 < t_1 < 1$, so that Γ_j and $\Gamma_{j'}$ overlap (the most general situation). In this case the integral (4.40) (with $\Psi(s,t)$ given by (4.41)) is given explicitly by

$$J_k = \int_{s_0}^{s_1} \int_{t_0}^{t_1} g(s,t) \exp(\mathrm{i}k(|s-t| + \theta s + \rho t)) \,\mathrm{d}t \,\mathrm{d}s = J_k^{[1]} + J_k^{[2]} + J_k^{[3]},$$

where $\theta \in [-1,1]$, $\rho \in \{-1,1\}$, and

$$\begin{aligned}
J_k^{[1]} &= \int_{s_0}^{t_0} \int_{t_0}^{t_1} g(s,t) \exp(\mathrm{i}k((\theta-1)s + (\rho+1)t)) \,\mathrm{d}t \,\mathrm{d}s, \\
J_k^{[2]} &= \int_{t_0}^{s_1} \int_{t_0}^{s_1} g(s,t) \exp(\mathrm{i}k(|s-t| + \theta s + \rho t)) \,\mathrm{d}t \,\mathrm{d}s, \\
J_k^{[3]} &= \int_{t_0}^{s_1} \int_{s_1}^{t_1} g(s,t) \exp(\mathrm{i}k((\theta+1)s + (\rho-1)t)) \,\mathrm{d}t \,\mathrm{d}s.
\end{aligned}$$

The integrals $J_k^{[1]}$ and $J_k^{[3]}$ can be trivially put into the form (4.30); supposing for example that $\rho = 1$ and $\theta \neq 1$, we have

$$J_k^{[1]} = \int_{s_0}^{t_0} \left(\int_{t_0}^{t_1} g(s,t) \exp(2\mathrm{i}kt) \,\mathrm{d}t \right) \exp(\mathrm{i}k(\theta-1)s) \,\mathrm{d}s,$$

and both the inner and outer integrals can be evaluated by the FCC rules of Section 4.3 (noting that, in this case, $g(s,t)$ is singular at the point $s = t = t_0$). Evaluation of the integral $J_k^{[2]}$ follows in an identical fashion, splitting

the square $(s,t) \in [t_0, s_1] \times [t_0, s_1]$ into the two triangles corresponding to $s > t$ and $s < t$, and evaluating both the inner and outer integrals of each via the FCC rules of Section 4.3, using a Duffy transformation to deal with the singularity on the triangle boundaries corresponding to $s = t$.

Next we consider the case for which Γ_j and $\Gamma_{j'}$ lie on different sides of the polygon. Under the assumption that these sides are not parallel to each other (if the two sides are parallel, similar ideas can be applied, although in that case stationary points may occur; see Melenk and Langdon 2012 for details), we may assume, without loss of generality, the geometrical configuration shown in Figure 4.4, with $\Gamma_j = \{(s,0) : s \in [s_0, s_1]\}$ and $\Gamma_{j'} = \{(t\cos\alpha, t\sin\alpha) : t \in [t_0, t_1]\}$. In this case the integral (4.40) (with $\Psi(s,t)$ given by (4.41)) is given explicitly by

$$J_k = \int_{s_0}^{s_1} \int_{t_0}^{t_1} g(s,t) \exp(\mathrm{i}k(\sqrt{s^2 - 2st\cos\alpha + t^2} + \theta s + \rho t))\, \mathrm{d}t\, \mathrm{d}s,$$

where $\theta \in [-1,1]$ and $\rho \in \{-1,1\}$. As above, we will utilize the change of variables (4.43); in this case $t \mapsto \tau$, where

$$\tau = \sqrt{s^2 - 2st\cos\alpha + t^2} + \theta s + \rho t =: \Psi_{[s]}(t) = \Psi^{[t]}(s), \tag{4.47}$$

and we then have

$$\int_{s_0}^{s_1} \int_{\Psi^{[t_0]}(s)}^{\Psi^{[t_1]}(s)} \tilde{g}\big(s,\tau\big) \exp(\mathrm{i}k\tau)\, \mathrm{d}\tau\, \mathrm{d}s,$$

with $\tilde{g}$ again given by (4.45). It is shown in Melenk and Langdon (2012) that, for $\theta \in (-1,1)$,

$$\frac{\partial \tau}{\partial s} = 0 \quad \text{at } s = \left(\cos\alpha - \theta\sqrt{\frac{\sin^2\alpha}{1-\theta^2}}\right) t,$$

and $\partial^2\tau/\partial s^2 > 0$ for all $t > 0$ (if $\theta = \pm 1$ then $\partial\tau/\partial s \neq 0$). This can be clearly seen in Figure 4.5, where we plot the image of the rectangle $[0,4] \times [1,2]$ under the transformation (4.47), for $\theta = 0.5$, $\alpha = \pi/4$ and $\rho = 1$. As for the case of the smooth convex obstacle outlined above, we again proceed by breaking the outer integral up into five pieces, analogous to (4.46) (as shown with the dotted lines in Figure 4.5), and evaluating each of the pieces via a composite FCC rule, grading towards the singularities. We do not give any further details here. The functions corresponding to F_j in (4.46) have a logarithmic singularity (from the fundamental solution appearing in $\tilde{g}$) if $s_0 = t_0 = 0$, that is, if Γ_j and $\Gamma_{j'}$ meet at a corner, and algebraic singularities where $\Psi^{[t_0]}$ and $\Psi^{[t_1]}$ have turning points. The change of variables (4.47) has no stationary points for the geometrical configuration shown in Figure 4.4.

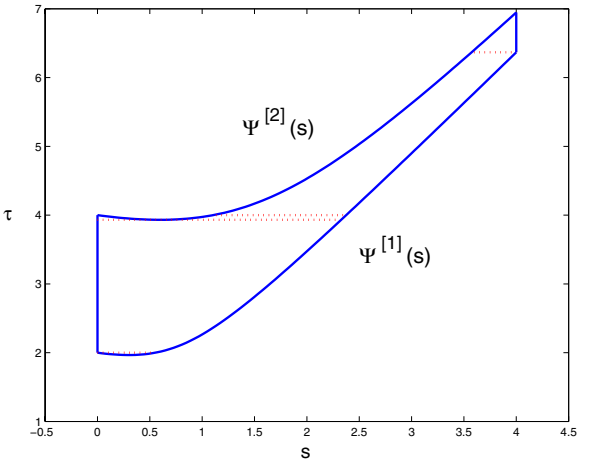


Figure 4.5. The image of the rectangle $[0, 4] \times [1, 2]$ under the transformation (4.47).

4.5. Oscillatory integration in non-variational hybrid schemes

The major advantage of the Galerkin approach in the design of hybrid methods is that the variational framework allows the establishment of error estimates, and most importantly, as we will see in Section 6, these error estimates can be explicit in the wavenumber k. The error estimates permit the development of more efficient methods, for example giving guidance on how to tune the coupling parameter η in the combined potential formulation.

However in practical codes, especially those which are based on second-kind formulations, collocation and Nyström methods often play a prominent role and it is often claimed that these are cheaper to implement than Galerkin methods, due to the apparent reduction in the amount of numerical integration which has to be done.

In collocation methods the solution is approximated by a linear combination of basis functions and the coefficients in the expansion are found by forcing the residual to vanish at a suitable set of points (equivalent to an application of an interpolatory – rather than orthogonal – projection onto the approximation space). Therefore the introduction of hybrid basis functions in collocation methods is straightforward.

The classical 'Nyström scheme' was originally formulated for second-kind integral equations with continuous kernels, and combined a standard quadrature approximation of the integral operator with collocation at the quadrature points: see, *e.g.*, Atkinson (1997) and the (much earlier) references therein. In the modern literature the term 'Nyström' is now often used to describe various methods based on combining quadrature and collocation, even if the collocation points have no relation to the quadrature points.

In this subsection we describe three families of hybrid methods (particularly appropriate for computing scattering by smooth convex obstacles), which are based either on a collocation, Nyström or practical discrete Galerkin approach, focusing particularly on the numerical integration problems which arise and how these are resolved. These are: (i) the Nyström methods of Bruno *et al.* (Bruno *et al.* 2004, Bruno and Geuzaine 2007), which are implemented using a number of innovative ideas including an extension of the method of stationary phase; (ii) the collocation methods of Huybrechs *et al.* (Huybrechs and Vandewalle 2007*b*, Asheim and Huybrechs 2010*b*), which employ a variation on the method of steepest descent to compute the integrals; (iii) the spherical-harmonics-based discrete Galerkin method of Ganesh and Hawkins (2011).

Let us start our discussion by recalling the direct combined potential integral equation (4.2), with solution v expressed using the ansatz (3.14). Then the integral equation to be solved for V is of the form (3.11), that is,

$$\left(\frac{1}{2}I + \widetilde{D_k}' - \mathrm{i}\eta\widetilde{S_k}\right)V \;=\; f, \tag{4.48}$$

where $\widetilde{S_k}$ and $\widetilde{D_k}'$ are the modulated integral operators given by (3.12) and (3.13). Following the discussion in Section 4.1.2, the integral operators $\widetilde{S_k}$ and $\widetilde{D_k}'$ both have an action of the form

$$(RV)(x) = \int_\Gamma g(x,y)\exp(\mathrm{i}k\Psi(x,y))V(y)\,\mathrm{d}s(y), \quad x \in \Gamma, \tag{4.49}$$

where, analogously to (4.19), $g(x,y)$ is smooth, except at the diagonal $x = y$, and non-oscillatory.

In a collocation approach, the action of an operator of the form (4.49) on suitable basis functions has to be computed for some discrete set of collocation points x. (For example, at least in 2D, the FCC methods described in Section 4.3 could be employed for this task.) In a Nyström approach, a quadrature approximation of the integral operator of the form (4.49) is first devised, taking as input a suitable set of point values of V. This yields corresponding approximations of the integral operators in (4.48). The equation (4.48) could then be solved for example by an iterative method which only required the action of these operators. In this way it is possible to devise a Nyström method without needing to adopt the classical collocation method of solving for the Nyström solution.

The work of Bruno *et al.* (2004) and Bruno and Geuzaine (2007) adopts a Nyström approach. We summarize this for the 3D case. The first step is to cover the scattering surface Γ with an atlas of overlapping charts, each assumed to be the image of a rectangle in $\mathbb{R}^2$, under a local invertible map (here assumed smooth). Then introduce a partition of unity subordinate to this covering and note that determining any function V on Γ is equivalent

to determining χV for each member χ of the partition of unity. Using the local parametrization, determining χV on Γ is equivalent to determining it on the parameter rectangles. Since χV is smooth and vanishes on the boundary of its parameter rectangle, the FFT can be used to obtain V at any point on Γ quickly from point values on uniform grids in parameter space. (The actual algorithm is quite technical and is described in detail in Bruno and Geuzaine 2007, §3.2.)

Now, turning to computation of the action of the integral operator R in (4.49), the starting point is the observation that as $k \to \infty$, for each $x \in \Gamma$, $RV(x)$ is dominated by contributions from V and its derivatives at the critical points (namely the singular point $y = x =: x_0$ and any points $x_1, \ldots, x_n$ where the phase Ψ is stationary, that is, where $\nabla_y \Psi(x, y)|_{y=x_i} = 0$). The stationary points could be determined by Newton's method with starting guesses obtained by geometrical arguments (at least when Γ is convex). Then the integral operator R is approximated by

$$RV(x) \approx \sum_{i=0}^{n} \int_{\Gamma_i} g(x, y) \exp(\mathrm{i}k\Psi(x, y)) c_i(y) V(y) \, \mathrm{d}s(y),$$

where each Γ_i is a neighbourhood of x_i with k-dependent radius chosen to shrink to zero with a rate depending on whether $i = 0$ (singular point) or $i = 1, \ldots, n$ (stationary points), and c_i is a smooth 'windowing function' with support in Γ_i.

Finally, given that values of V at all points on Γ are cheap to compute (see above), the integrals over each Γ_i are obtained by integrating in polar coordinates around each x_i. This has the benefit that the Jacobian of the polar coordinate transformation cancels the singularity in the singular integral (over Γ_0) but also oscillations in the transformed integrand are prominent only in the radial direction and so this reduces the complexity of the computation of the contributions to RV. Full details are in Bruno and Geuzaine (2007), and related results using the same ideas are described in Bruno and Reitich (2007). (The observation that such changes of variables can cancel weak singularities in boundary integral operators goes back at least to Wienert (1990); see also Ganesh, Graham and Sivaloganathan (1998) and Graham and Sloan (2002).)

The key novelty of the collocation method employed in Huybrechs and Vandewalle (2007*b*) is the sparsity of the resulting linear system. This is achieved via the use of locally supported basis functions, coupled with the observation that integrals for which the integrand does not contain singularities (those for which the collocation point lies outside the support of the basis function) and for which the phase does not contain stationary points, decay rapidly as k grows. The integrals that remain, which contain complicated phase functions, are evaluated using a special quadrature rule, that combines features of generalized Filon quadrature (Iserles 2005, Iserles and

Nørsett 2005, Olver 2007, Olver 2010) and the numerical method of steepest descent (Huybrechs and Vandewalle 2006, Asheim and Huybrechs 2010*a*). Crucially, this rule requires only local approximation of the amplitude near special points, and this localization is what allows the sparse formulation to hold. The method described in Huybrechs and Vandewalle (2007*b*) is not supported by a rigorous analysis, but the results suggest that this algorithm is comparable in accuracy to others described in this subsection, appearing to offer arbitrary accuracy with a computational cost that is independent of k, and with the added advantage of a sparse rather than a full linear system.

The work in Asheim and Huybrechs (2010*b*) builds upon these ideas, making the observation that, for complicated scattering configurations, if one is only interested in the solution on a particular part of the boundary, then reasonable accuracy can be achieved via a consideration of mainly just local effects, leading to substantial cost savings compared to algorithms for which the solution is sought throughout the domain.

An alternative but closely related approach to the hybrid numerical-asymptotic schemes described in this article is the partition-of-unity-based method with plane wave enrichment, developed by workers such as Bettess and Trevelyan for the solution of general Helmholtz problems for which, in general, identification of the leading-order asymptotic behaviour would be extremely challenging (see, *e.g.*, Perrey-Debain *et al.* 2004 and the references therein). In recent work, Honnor, Trevelyan and Huybrechs have applied the integration rules developed by Huybrechs and Vandewalle (2006, 2007*a*) in the implementation of these methods (Honnor *et al.* 2010, Trevelyan, Honnor and Huybrechs 2007) to good effect.

Another integration scheme for these problems was proposed in Trevelyan and Honnor (2009), with the main idea there being to attempt to line up the direction of the oscillations with the coordinate axes, so as to convert multidimensional oscillatory integrals into oscillatory integrals for which the oscillation is only in one direction. This idea is similar in some ways to the change of variables / FCC approach described in Section 4.4, and has been shown to lead to a signficant reduction in computational cost compared to standard (Gaussian) quadrature.

A fully discrete hybrid Galerkin method for scattering by smooth 3D obstacles (diffeomorphic to the sphere) is introduced in Ganesh and Hawkins (2011). The idea is to approximate V in (4.48) globally using spherical harmonics. This provides an accurate approximation away from the shadow boundary, but is not so effective in the vicinity of the shadow boundary. However, it is argued in Ganesh and Hawkins (2011) that this does not matter in the context of achieving reasonable (global) results, since the amplitude of the oscillations is small near the shadow boundary; numerical results suggest that this amplitude is of the order of a hundredth of the maximum amplitude of V over the entire boundary. A Galerkin scheme is

then used to discretize the integral equation, leading to quadruple integrals to be evaluated over the entire surface of the scatterer. The outer Galerkin integrals are discretized by a discrete sum defined using a Gauss-rectangle quadrature rule (similar to the quadrature scheme of Ganesh and Graham (2004), where a fully discrete scheme for low- to mid-range frequency three-dimensional scattering was proposed). The rectangle rule is exponentially accurate for smooth periodic functions (in the azimuthal direction), and the Gauss rule is superalgebraically accurate in the latitudinal direction; indeed this scheme is exact for products of spherical harmonics up to a given order. To maintain global accuracy, the number of quadrature points for these outer integrals must grow with $O(k^{2/3})$.

The inner integrals are then approximated using surface patches, defined for three different types of critical points, namely: the observation point (where the integrand has a removable singularity); the stationary points; and so-called 'steepness points', which correspond to points around which the gradient of the phase is non-zero but small. These points represent, in some sense, the next term in an asymptotic expansion of a method of stationary phase type of approximation. Each of these three types of critical point has a spherical cap placed around it, and the integral is evaluated numerically on this cap, with the radius of the patch depending both on the nature of the critical point and on the distance to the shadow boundary. The singular critical points are evaluated via a rotation and translation procedure, with the Jacobian of the polar coordinate transformation cancelling the singularity in a very similar way to that described above for the scheme of Bruno and Geuzaine (2007). The remaining integrations are carried out via a rectangle rule in the azimuthal direction, and a uniform partition in the non-periodic direction. On each interval of the uniform partition, standard quadrature is applied if the integrand is slowly oscillating, and Filon quadrature (as described in Section 4.3, but using a cubic polynomial interpolatory rule) is applied if the remaining integrand is highly oscillatory. Results are presented for spherical and non-spherical convex scatterers, for a range of wavenumbers $1 \leq k \leq 100000$, and it appears that accuracy (either high- or low-order prescribed tolerance) can be maintained for only a mild growth of $O(k^{2/3})$ in the number of unknowns as k increases.

5. Conditioning and coercivity

In Section 2 we met various standard integral equation formulations of scattering problems and saw that, in many cases, for every $k > 0$, the BVPs were well-posed, with the relevant integral operators bounded as mappings between appropriate Sobolev spaces. In this section we aim to determine *explicitly* the dependence of the integral operators on k, in order to understand better their behaviour for high frequencies. (In many cases the dependence

on k is known for the whole frequency range $k > 0$, but we focus on the high-frequency case, which is the subject of the article.) Since the integral operators depend on k in a complicated non-linear way, determining this k-dependence is, in many cases, a challenging problem. We restrict ourselves to discussing mainly the exterior Dirichlet problem (2.12) (which includes the sound-soft scattering problem (2.15)), although some of the bounds we obtain on integral operators will be applicable to other BVPs.

In the context of the three questions posed in Section 1, this section will provide the remaining ingredients to prove k-explicit error estimates of the form (1.7), addressing **Q3**; these ingredients are then assembled in Section 6.

In this section, $(\cdot,\cdot)$ will denote the $L^2(\Gamma)$ inner product and $\|\cdot\|$ will denote either the $L^2(\Gamma)$ norm of an element of $L^2(\Gamma)$ (as in Section 3), or the $L^2(\Gamma) \to L^2(\Gamma)$ norm of an operator. We will mainly be concerned with the combined potential operators $A'_{k,\eta}$ and $A_{k,\eta}$, defined by (2.69) and (2.72) respectively, but we will also give results, where available, for the new class of integral operators introduced in Section 2.9, namely $A'_{k,\eta,Z}$ defined by (2.99), a special case of which is the star-combined operator $\mathscr{A}_k$ (2.103). Recall from Remark 2.24 that $\|A'_{k,\eta}\| = \|A_{k,\eta}\|$, and similarly for their inverses. Thus any results on the $L^2(\Gamma)$ norms of $A'_{k,\eta}$ and $(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}$ also hold for $A_{k,\eta}$ and $A^{-1}_{k,\eta}$, respectively. For the same reasons, if $A'_{k,\eta}$ is coercive, then $A_{k,\eta}$ is coercive with the same coercivity constant.

The outline of the section is as follows: we begin in Section 5.1 with a summary of the main bounds on $\|A'_{k,\eta}\|$ and $\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\|$, and thus on the condition number of $A'_{k,\eta}$,

$$\operatorname{cond}(A'_{k,\eta}) = \|A'_{k,\eta}\|\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\|. \tag{5.1}$$

These bounds immediately suggest how to choose the parameter η to minimize the condition number of $A'_{k,\eta}$ for k large. The next two subsections, Section 5.2 and Section 5.3, give a summary of relevant results and techniques from scattering theory that are key components of the bounds on $\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\|$ (together with the representation of $(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}$ in Theorem 2.33), and of the methods used to establish coercivity of $A'_{k,\eta}$ and $\mathscr{A}_k$. There have been several investigations of conditioning and coercivity in the special cases when Γ is the circle or sphere. This is because for these two domains the integral operators diagonalize in the Fourier and spherical harmonic bases respectively, and thus bounds on the quantities of interest, *e.g.*, the norms of the operators, can be obtained by bounding eigenvalues of the operators. We discuss the conditioning and coercivity results obtained in this way for these two special domains in Section 5.4. Sections 5.5 and 5.6 discuss bounds on $\|A'_{k,\eta}\|$ and $\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\|$, respectively, for more general domains than the circle and sphere. Section 5.7 discusses conditions under which $A'_{k,\eta}$ is coercive, and the corresponding bounds on its coercivity constant.

Establishing coercivity of $A'_{k,\eta}$ and the related star-combined operator $\mathscr{A}_k$ are vital requirements for the error analysis in Section 6. We note that, whereas bounds on $\|A'_{k,\eta}\|$ can be obtained by norm estimation techniques that apply to general oscillatory integral operators, the bounds on $\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\|$ and the coercivity constant rely heavily on methods and results from classical scattering theory.

Similarly to Section 3, for two quantities D and E which may depend on k we write $D \lesssim E$ if $D \leq C\,E$ for some constant C that is independent of k. Also we write $D \sim E$ if $D \lesssim E$ and $E \lesssim D$.

5.1. Summary of the main results on the conditioning of $A'_{k,\eta}$ and $A_{k,\eta}$

Some examples of the behaviour of $\|A'_{k,\eta}\|$ and $\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\|$ for different domains are shown in Figure 5.1. The following is a short summary of the main bounds on $A'_{k,\eta}$ and $(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}$ discussed in this section.

- For a general Lipschitz domain (in 2D or 3D),

$$\frac{1}{2} \leq \|A'_{k,\eta}\| = \|A_{k,\eta}\| \lesssim 1 + k^{(d-1)/2}\left(1 + \frac{|\eta|}{k}\right), \tag{5.2}$$

  for all $k > 0$. The upper bound is sharp in 2D if the domain contains a straight line segment. (See Theorem 5.14 and Lemmas 5.17 and 5.18.)

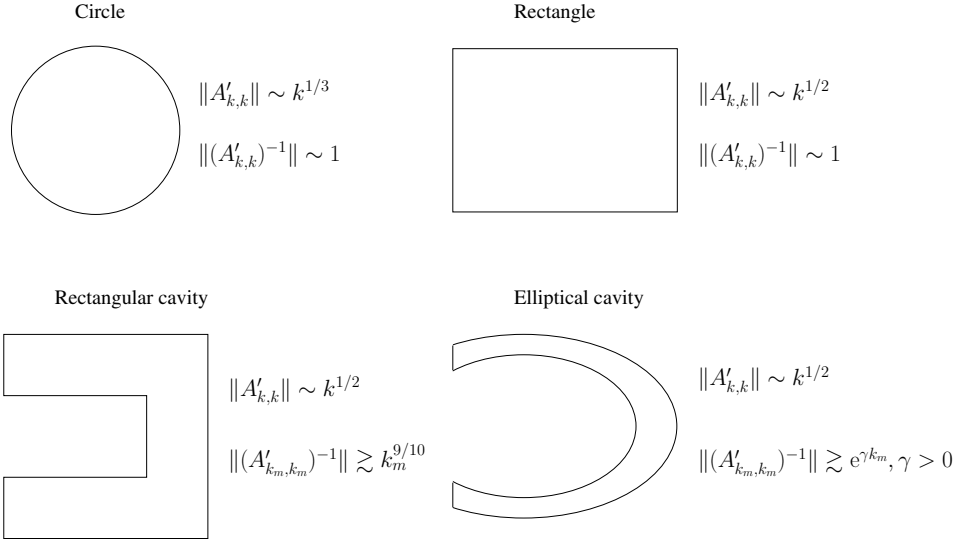


Figure 5.1. Examples of the behaviour of $\|A'_{k,k}\|$ and $\|(A'_{k,k})^{-1}\|$ as $k \to \infty$. Here k_m denotes a specific sequence of wavenumbers, which are different for the rectangular and elliptical cavities (see Section 5.6.2 for more details).

- For a star-shaped (in the sense of Definition 5.5 below) Lipschitz domain (in 2D or 3D),

$$2 \leq \|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\| = \|A^{-1}_{k,\eta}\| \lesssim 1 + \frac{1+k}{|\eta|}, \tag{5.3}$$

  for all $k > 0$ (see Theorem 5.22 and Lemma 5.17). For a general (smooth) non-trapping domain (in the sense of Definition 5.4 below) the upper bound is multiplied by a factor of $k^{2+(d-1)/2}$, although this should be considered a preliminary bound and not a definitive one. Indeed, numerical experiments suggest that the upper bound in (5.3) holds for some non-trapping domains that are not star-shaped. The precise definitions of trapping and non-trapping are given in Definition 5.4, but, roughly speaking, a trapping domain is one that contains an open cavity that can 'trap' high-frequency waves.

- There exist trapping domains such that, for some $\gamma > 0$,

$$\|(A'_{k_m,\eta})^{-1}\| = \|A^{-1}_{k_m,\eta}\| \gtrsim \exp(\gamma k_m)\left(1 + \frac{|\eta|}{k_m}\right)^{-1},$$

  for some sequence $k_m \to \infty$; an example is the so-called elliptical cavity domain in Figure 5.1 (see Theorem 5.24).

Remark 5.1. The commonly recommended choices of η in the literature are to take η proportional to k for all but small values of k, and then η either constant (for $d = 3$) or proportional to $(\log k)^{-1}$ (for $d = 2$) for k small. Up until the last few years, these choices have been based on investigations when Γ is the circle or sphere (see the references in Section 5.4) or computational experience (Bruno and Kunyansky 2001).

The bounds (5.2) and (5.3) show that the choice $\eta \sim k$ is optimal for large k in the sense that it minimizes the rate of growth with respect to k of the upper bound on $\mathrm{cond}(A'_{k,\eta})$. Thus

$$\mathrm{cond}(A'_{k,k}) \lesssim k^{(d-1)/2}, \quad \text{as } k \to \infty \tag{5.4}$$

for star-shaped Lipschitz domains. This bound is sharp for any star-shaped polygon.

The upper bound in (5.2) is not sharp as $k \to 0$. However, sharp bounds on $\|A'_{k,\eta}\|$ can be obtained in the $k \to 0$ limit which back up the previously recommended choices of η for small k mentioned above (Betcke *et al.* 2011, §2.6, §2.7).

Remark 5.2. A natural question is whether or not the norm bounds given above continue to hold if the operators are approximated by their discrete counterparts, and so to what extent the bounds above are relevant to understanding conditioning at a discrete level. For conventional Galerkin boundary element discretizations this question has been addressed to a large extent

in Betcke *et al.* (2011), in particular showing that (5.4) holds at a discrete level for a variety of 2D star-shaped domains.

Remark 5.3. For reasons of space we do not treat in this article the important implications of condition number estimates and coercivity for the behaviour of iterative solvers for the linear systems that arise in Galerkin methods. A recent review of these issues in the context of BIEs for high-frequency scattering is that of Antoine and Darbas (2012).

5.2. Relevant classical scattering results

In this subsection we collect some classical results about the high-frequency Helmholtz equation. Whereas in Section 3 we discussed the high-frequency asymptotics of the solution, here we discuss some classical results that bound the solution in terms of the data (in suitable norms).

These results are taken from a large body of work concerned with both the Helmholtz equation and the wave equation. The problem involving the Helmholtz equation that has received most interest is the question of how the solutions behave as $k \to \infty$. For scattering problems involving the wave equation the most-studied problem is the long-time behaviour of the energy in a neighbourhood of the obstacle. These two problems are obviously related, since when one takes the Fourier transform in time of the wave equation one obtains the Helmholtz equation; however, to understand rigorously the relationship between the two problems one must understand how solutions of the wave equation with singularities in the initial data (such as a delta function) behave when they hit the obstacle. Understanding this so-called *propagation of singularities* was one of the main motivations for the development of the tools of *microlocal analysis*.

Some classic books and monographs describing this body of work in scattering theory from different perspectives are Babich and Buldyrev (2008), Borovikov and Kinber (1994), Hörmander (1985*a*, 1985*b*), Lax and Phillips (1989), Melrose (1995), Morawetz (1975*b*) and Vainberg (1989) (with the Russian texts translations of earlier Russian originals).

A key concept in scattering theory is the geometrical classification of domains as either *trapping* or *non-trapping*. We give the non-technical definition; see, for instance, Lax and Phillips (1989, Epilogue). For a more mathematical, but technical, definition see Melrose and Sjöstrand (1982, Definition 7.20) or Melrose (1979, Definition 1.3). In this definition and the rest of the section, as in Section 2, $B_R := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^d, |x| < R\}$.

Definition 5.4. (Trapping and non-trapping for smooth domains) Assume that Ω_+ is smooth, that is, Γ is C^∞. For any $R > 0$ such that $\overline{\Omega_-} \subset B_R$, consider all possible rays starting in $\Omega_+ \cap B_R$ (*i.e.*, starting from every point and travelling in every possible direction). Whenever a

ray hits Γ, continue it according to the law of reflection (angle of incidence equals angle of reflection) until it leaves B_R. We call Ω_+ *trapping* if there are arbitrarily long paths or closed paths of rays; otherwise Ω_+ is called *non-trapping*.

(Note that Definition 5.4 does not cover rays that hit the boundary at a tangent, and there are additional subtleties with these. Indeed, Taylor (1976) showed that, in some cases, one cannot uniquely define the reflection of rays tangent to the boundary.)

We have defined trapping and non-trapping for C^∞ domains since the propagation of singularities of the wave equation on C^∞ domains is fully understood by the results of Melrose and Sjöstrand (1978, 1982). However, when Ω_+ is not C^∞, and especially when it is not C^1, understanding how a ray reflects is more complicated. Following the development of the very effective but non-rigorous Geometrical Theory of Diffraction (Keller 1962), there has been much work on rigorously understanding the propagation of singularities on domains with corners and edges. The recent papers by Melrose, Vasy and Wunsch (2008, 2012) both contain good overviews of this work.

To illustrate the difficulty involved in formulating a definition of trapping for non-smooth domains, consider the particular example of rays hitting a convex polygon. When a ray hits a corner it produces diffracted rays emanating from the corner, and in particular some that travel along the sides of the polygon (understanding these rays on the boundary is implicit in the approximation results for the convex polygon in Section 3.3). This means that there exist 'glancing rays' that travel around the boundary of the polygon (hitting a corner and then either continuing on the next side or travelling back) and do not escape to infinity; thus the exterior of a convex polygon is, in this sense, a trapping domain. At each diffraction from a corner, however, these rays lose energy, and thus the trapping is in a weaker sense than having a closed path of rays (as in Definition 5.4).

We state below some results about solutions of the Helmholtz equation in non-trapping domains (Theorems 5.6 and 5.7) that depend on the propagation of singularities results of Melrose and Sjöstrand (1978, 1982) for C^∞ domains. Using the recent results about propagation of singularities on manifolds with corners and edges from the programme of work by Melrose, Vasy and Wunsch, it is reasonable to believe that analogous (or slightly weaker) results to Theorems 5.6 and 5.7 would hold for the exterior of a non-trapping polygon (in the weaker sense discussed above), for example. However, although the relevant technical tools now exist, such results have not yet been proved. (Actually, we note that, in the special case of the exterior of a polygon, either the results of Gérard and Lebeau (1993), about propagation of singularities from wedges with analytic boundaries, or the

results of Hillairet (2005), about propagation of singularities on Euclidean surfaces with conic singularities, may be sufficient to achieve this goal, again with some non-trivial technical work outstanding.)

A slightly different, but related, question is whether there exists the appropriate analogue of the propagation of singularities results of Melrose and Sjöstrand (1978, 1982) for, say, C^2 domains (instead of C^∞ domains), possibly allowing for higher-order diffractive effects. To the authors' knowledge this does not appear to be the case, although we note that Ivrii's work on the Weyl law and spectral asymptotics on domains slightly better than C^1 (Bronstein and Ivrii 2003, Ivrii 2003) contains some results for non-tangent rays.

The preceding paragraphs hopefully give an indication of some of the subtleties associated with the concepts of trapping and non-trapping on non-smooth domains. For the remainder of this section we will consider domains such as the rectangular and elliptical cavities in Figure 5.1 as trapping domains, despite not satisfying Definition 5.4, since they are not C^∞, since for these obstacles there exist closed paths of rays that hit only smooth parts of the boundary.

We have just encountered a slight 'culture clash' between the classic scattering literature and the numerical analysis literature: classical scattering theory is happiest in smooth domains, whereas from the point of view of practical applications we want to consider domains with corners and edges. What then should we aim for in the numerical analysis of scattering problems? An important class of C^∞ domains for which the non-trapping condition holds consists of domains that are star-shaped in the following sense.

Definition 5.5. (Star-shaped) We say that Ω_- is star-shaped with respect to the point $x_0 \in \Omega_-$ if there exists $c > 0$ such that $(x - x_0) \cdot n \geq c$ for almost every $x \in \Gamma$, where n is the normal vector pointing outwards from Ω_-. We say that Ω_- is star-shaped if it is star-shaped with respect to some $x_0 \in \Omega_-$.

If Ω_- is star-shaped and C^∞ then Ω_+ is non-trapping in the sense of Definition 5.4 (Lax and Phillips 1989, Chapter 5, Proposition 3.1) (star-shapedness guarantees that the rays can only be reflected a finite number of times before escaping from the obstacle). Since the normal vector is defined almost everywhere on Lipschitz boundaries, star-shapedness is a well-defined property for Lipschitz domains, and thus a reasonable aim from the point of view of numerical analysis of scattering problems is to prove results for star-shaped Lipschitz domains, and then also for (smooth) non-trapping domains.

Another 'culture clash' is that classical scattering theory is happiest in 3D (essentially because the fundamental solution for the Helmholtz equation $\Phi_k(x, y)$ is an analytic function of k in 3D, but not in 2D). However, from a

numerical analysis perspective one often starts in 2D, where computations are easier, and then progresses to 3D.

One way to understand the significance of trapping and non-trapping is the following. Recall that the Helmholtz operator with $k > 0$ in a bounded domain can have non-trivial solutions for certain homogeneous boundary conditions (these are eigenfunctions of the Laplacian). In an unbounded domain the Helmholtz equation with $k > 0$ cannot have any non-trivial solutions satisfying homogeneous boundary conditions, provided an appropriate radiation condition is prescribed (Corollary 2.9). However, as $k \to \infty$, solutions of the Helmholtz equation behave more and more like rays (this is the whole notion of ray theory), and thus if the domain is trapping then, for certain k, there will be solutions of the Helmholtz equation localized in the trapping part of the obstacle and behaving almost like non-trivial solutions satisfying homogeneous boundary conditions. This informal discussion can be made mathematically precise through the concepts of *resonances* and *quasimodes* (see the references in Section 5.6.2).

In Section 5.6.2 we take a closer look at the type of behaviour that solutions of the Helmholtz equation can exhibit in trapping domains (and define the concepts of a resonance and a quasimode); for the remainder of this subsection we look at bounds on the solution operator of the Helmholtz equation in *non-trapping* domains.

Theorem 5.6. (Vainberg 1975) Let Ω_+ be a non-trapping domain (in the sense of Definition 5.4) in 2D or 3D. If $g \in L^2(\Omega_+)$ has compact support, and $v \in H^2_{\rm loc}(\Omega_+)$ satisfies

$$\Delta v + k^2 v = g,$$

the Sommerfeld radiation condition (2.9), and either

$$\gamma v = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad \partial_n v = 0 \text{ on } \Gamma,$$

then, given any $R > 0$ such that $\overline{\Omega_-} \subset B_R$, for every $k_0 > 0$,

$$k\|v\|_{L^2(\Omega_+\cap B_R)} + \|v\|_{H^1(\Omega_+\cap B_R)} + \frac{1}{k}\|v\|_{H^2(\Omega_+\cap B_R)} \lesssim \|g\|_{L^2(\Omega_+)}, \qquad (5.5)$$

for $k \geq k_0$.

We will not go into detail about how this bound was obtained, referring the reader to the original paper by Vainberg (1975) and also the accounts in Vainberg (1999) and Vainberg (1989) for this information, but we will make two brief remarks: firstly, that the bound is sharp in terms of the powers of k in its k-dependence, and secondly that it relies on the results on propagation of singularities in Melrose and Sjöstrand (1978, 1982). See also Remark 5.9 for more discussion on this type of bound.

Whereas Theorem 5.6 obtained bounds on solutions to the inhomogeneous Helmholtz equation in Ω_+, we now discuss bounds on the Dirichlet

to Neumann map for the homogeneous Helmholtz equation (1.1) in Ω_+ (the map P^+_{DtN} introduced in Section 2.7). Via results in Section 2.7 (in particular Theorem 2.33) these will help us obtain bounds on $\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\|$. The following theorem giving bounds on this map has recently been obtained from Theorem 5.6.

Theorem 5.7. (Lakshtanov and Vainberg 2012) Let Ω_+ be a non-trapping domain (in the sense of Definition 5.4) in 2D or 3D. If u is a solution of (1.1) in Ω_+ satisfying the Sommerfeld radiation condition (2.9), then, for every $k_0 > 0$,

$$\|\partial_n u\|_{H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)} \lesssim k^3 \|\gamma u\|_{H^{1/2}(\Gamma)},$$

and

$$\|\gamma u\|_{H^{1/2}(\Gamma)} \lesssim k \|\partial_n u\|_{H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)},$$

for all $k \geq k_0$.

We note that this paper also contains analogous bounds for $k \in \mathbb{C}$ with $0 < \arg k < \pi/2$ that hold for general Lipschitz obstacles.

Using certain 'multiplier methods', applicable only to bounding $\partial_n u$ in $L^2(\Gamma)$ (to be explained in more detail in Section 5.3), one can obtain the following bound on P^+_{DtN} that is better than the first bound in Theorem 5.7 from the point of view of k-dependence.

Theorem 5.8. Let Ω_- be a Lipschitz star-shaped domain in 2D or 3D. Let u be a solution of (1.1) in Ω_+ satisfying the Sommerfeld radiation condition (2.9). Then, if $\gamma u \in H^1(\Gamma)$,

$$\|\partial_n u\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \lesssim \|\nabla_\Gamma \gamma u\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} + k\|\gamma u\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}, \tag{5.6}$$

for all $k > 0$ (where ∇_Γ is the surface gradient operator defined in (A.14)).

The bound (5.6) was essentially proved in Morawetz and Ludwig (1968); the authors only considered the smooth star-shaped case, but the arguments are valid for Lipschitz domains with a little extra technical work (for example, (5.6) was proved in the case that Γ is Lipschitz and piecewise smooth in Chandler-Wilde and Monk (2008)).

Using a mixture of the arguments of Lakshtanov and Vainberg (2012) and the multiplier methods used to prove Theorem 5.8, Spence (2012) proved that, when Ω_+ is non-trapping, for every $k_0 > 0$,

$$\|\partial_n u\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \lesssim k^2 \|\gamma u\|_{H^1(\Gamma)}, \tag{5.7}$$

for all $k \geq k_0$. However, a sharper bound than (5.7) can almost certainly be obtained (at least in 2D) by translating the results of Morawetz (1975*a*) into this setting.

Remark 5.9. (Resolvent estimates) The bound in Theorem 5.6 is a bound on the operator $R(k) := (\Delta + k^2)^{-1}$, that is, the resolvent of the Laplacian. We now briefly discuss bounds of this type because (a) they are a crucial component of scattering theory, and (b) some of the recent developments in the error analysis of BIEs for the Helmholtz equation for large k provide an alternative perspective on these bounds.

(a) Rewriting (5.5) in terms of $R(k)$, it becomes

$$\|\chi R(k)\chi\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)\to H^j(\mathbb{R}^d)} \lesssim k^{j-1}, \quad j = 0, 1, 2, \tag{5.8}$$

for any $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)$, and this is the form in which resolvent estimates usually appear in the scattering theory literature. (The bound (5.8) is known as a 'local resolvent estimate' because of the pre- and post-multiplication of $R(k)$ by a cut-off function.) The simplest situation where one encounters a bound of this form is that of the Helmholtz equation in $\mathbb{R}^d$ (the resolvent of the so-called 'free Laplacian'). In this case the estimate (5.8) appears in, for example, Vainberg (1975, Theorem 3) and Burq (2002, §2.1). Generalizations of this estimate (which remove the 'local' nature at the cost of working in more technical function spaces) appear in, for example, Hörmander (1983*b*, Theorem 14.3.7) and Perthame and Vega (1999) (note that Theorem 14.3.7 of Hörmander (1983*b*) is for fixed k, but a rescaling of the independent variable yields the result for arbitrary k). In the case of the Laplacian in the exterior of a bounded obstacle, resolvent estimates were obtained by Vainberg (1975, Theorem 7) (quoted as Theorem 5.6 above) and Morawetz (1975*a*, Theorem I.2D) (although the latter is not quite in the form of (5.8)).

(b) The error analysis for the Helmholtz equation recently developed by Melenk and co-workers, and reviewed in the BIE context in Section 6.3, has at its heart an additive splitting of the solution into a part with finite regularity but k-independent bounds, and a part that is analytic with k-explicit bounds for all its derivatives. In $\mathbb{R}^d$ this splitting leads to an alternative proof of the classical local free resolvent estimate (5.8) (Melenk and Sauter 2010, Lemma 3.5). See also Esterhazy and Melenk (2012, §3) for an overview of this work.

5.3. Rellich- and Morawetz-type identities

In this subsection we discuss the so-called Rellich- and Morawetz-type identities. We do this because many of the results about $\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\|$ and coercivity of $A'_{k,\eta}$ that we discuss in Sections 5.6 and 5.7 have been proved using these techniques, and several key results that we quoted in Section 2 have been proved using them, notably the regularity result in Theorem 2.12 which follows from Nečas (1967) and the results of Verchota (1984).

The method of multipliers is one of the few truly general techniques in PDE theory. It consists of multiplying the PDE by a judiciously chosen function and integrating (often by parts). In our case we consider the Helmholtz equation, written as $\mathcal{L}u = 0$ with $\mathcal{L} = \Delta + k^2$, and restrict attention to the case where the multiplier is a function of u, namely $\overline{\mathcal{N}u}$, where $\mathcal{N}$ is some linear operator.

In this framework Green's first identity (given in the Appendix as equation (A.26)) with $v = u$ is equivalent to the choice $\mathcal{N}u = u$. Rellich-type identities are obtained by choosing $\mathcal{N}u$ to be some derivative of u: for example, the derivative in the radial direction in the case of star-shaped domains (so $\mathcal{N}u = x \cdot \nabla u$) or a derivative along the vertical coordinate axis in the case of domains that are the hypograph of a function.

The multiplier $x \cdot \nabla u$ was originally introduced by Rellich (1940) to obtain an expression for the eigenvalues of the Laplacian in star-shaped domains as an integral over the boundary (as opposed to the usual expression as an integral over the domain used, for example, in the Rayleigh–Ritz method). Following on from their work using the Rellich multiplier for Laplace's equation (Payne and Weinberger 1955), Payne and Weinberger (1958) generalized the resulting identity to second-order elliptic systems with variable coefficients. This general identity, in which the multiplier is an arbitrary derivative of u (that is $Z \cdot \nabla u$ for some arbitrary vector field Z) was independently introduced by Hörmander (1954). We note that the Rellich identity with multiplier $x \cdot \nabla u$ is often known as the Derrick–Pohozaev identity (see, for example, Evans (1998, §9.4.2)). This is because it was independently introduced by both Pohozaev (1965) and Derrick (1964) in their studies of the possible non-existence of solutions of $\Delta u + \lambda f(u) = 0$. (Actually, Derrick's proof of the identity was not via the multiplier $x \cdot \nabla u$, but via a scaling argument: see Berestycki and Lions (1983, §2.1) for a nice account of both proofs.)

Morawetz-type identities consist of taking certain linear combinations of both derivatives of u and u itself (that is, linear combinations of the Rellich and Green multipliers). These are discussed in more detail for the Helmholtz equation in Section 5.3.1; see, for example, Morawetz (1961, 1968), Strauss (1975) and Morawetz, Ralston and Strauss (1977) for their use in the context of wave equations.

Rellich- and Morawetz-type identities have been used in many different contexts since their introduction; in the following three subsections we discuss three uses relevant to this article.

(1) Bounding the Dirichlet to Neumann map for second-order elliptic PDEs (including the Laplace and Helmholtz equations), Section 5.3.1.

(2) Bounding the energy norm of solutions of the Helmholtz equation, Section 5.3.2.

(3) Proving coercivity of integral operators related to the Helmholtz equation, Section 5.3.3.

Remark 5.10. Here we have understood Rellich- and Morawetz-type identities in the context of multiplier methods. An alternative approach is to view them as consequences of Noether's theorem (relating symmetry groups and conservation laws); see, for example, Olver (1993, Notes to Chapter 4).

5.3.1. Bounding the Dirichlet to Neumann map

For simplicity, let $d = 2$ (the three-dimensional case, $d = 3$, is slightly more complicated) and consider the simplest Rellich-type multiplier: $\mathcal{N}u = x\cdot\nabla u$.

Multiplying $\mathcal{L}u = 0$ by $\overline{\mathcal{N}u}$ and integrating by parts leads to the following identity for solutions of $\mathcal{L}u = 0$:

$$\nabla \cdot \big(2\mathrm{Re}\,\big(x \cdot \overline{\nabla u}\nabla u\big) + \big(k^2|u|^2 - |\nabla u|^2\big)x\big) = 2k^2|u|^2 \tag{5.9}$$

(for details see, *e.g.*, Spence *et al.* 2011, Lemma 2.1). Assuming $\mathcal{L}u = 0$ in Ω_-, integrating this identity over Ω_- and using the divergence theorem yields

$$\int_\Gamma \big[(x\cdot n)\big(|\partial_n u|^2 + k^2|u|^2 - |\nabla_\Gamma u|^2\big) + 2\mathrm{Re}\,\big(x\cdot\overline{\nabla_\Gamma u}\partial_n u\big)\big]\,\mathrm{d}s = 2k^2\int_{\Omega_-}|u|^2\,\mathrm{d}x. \tag{5.10}$$

In the simplest possible case of $k = 0$ (*i.e.*, the Laplace equation) the right-hand side of (5.10) is zero, and so if $\min(x\cdot n) > 0$ then (5.10) can be used to bound $\|\partial_n u\|^2_{L^2(\Gamma)}$ by $\|\nabla_\Gamma u\|^2_{L^2(\Gamma)}$ and *vice versa*. Indeed, from (5.10) it follows that

$$\min_{x\in\Gamma}(x\cdot n)\|\partial_n u\|^2_{L^2(\Gamma)} \le \max_{x\in\Gamma}(x\cdot n)\|\nabla_\Gamma u\|^2_{L^2(\Gamma)} - 2\mathrm{Re}\int_\Gamma x\cdot\overline{\nabla_\Gamma u}\partial_n u\,\mathrm{d}s. \tag{5.11}$$

Using the standard inequality $2ab \le \epsilon a^2 + b^2/\epsilon$ on the final term yields $\|\partial_n u\|^2 \lesssim \|\nabla_\Gamma u\|^2$. All this relies on Ω_- being star-shaped with respect to the origin (recall Definition 5.5). For more general domains one must use a more general vector field Z in the multiplier with $Z\cdot n > 0$ on Γ, and then control the resulting non-divergence terms, but a similar result can be obtained; see, for example, McLean (2000, Theorem 4.2.4).

A key advantage of identities such as (5.10) is that, modulo some non-trivial technical work, they hold when Γ is Lipschitz. Indeed this method of bounding the Dirichlet to Neumann map was used by Nečas (1967) in his proof of Theorem A.5 of the Appendix, by Jerison and Kenig, who independently discovered the Rellich identity (5.9) in their famous work on the Laplacian on Lipschitz domains (see, *e.g.*, Kenig 1994), and implicitly by Verchota (1984) in his proof that $\frac{1}{2}I - D_0$ is invertible in $L^2(\Gamma)$ when Γ is Lipschitz.

Whereas Nečas, and Jerison and Kenig applied the identity (5.9) in an interior domain, Verchota needed to apply (5.9) both in Ω_- and the exterior domain Ω_+. When (5.9) is applied in Ω_+, in order for there to be no contribution from infinity, one requires the surface integral over a large ball to tend to zero as the radius R of the ball tends to infinity. This integral is equal to

$$\int_{\Gamma_R} \left[R\big(|\partial_n u|^2 + k^2|u|^2 - |\nabla_\Gamma u|^2\big) + 2\mathrm{Re}\left(x \cdot \overline{\nabla_\Gamma u}\partial_n u\right)\right] \mathrm{d}s, \tag{5.12}$$

where $\Gamma_R := \partial B_R$. When $k = 0$ and u is a solution of the Laplace equation in Ω_+ that vanishes at infinity, (5.12) tends to zero as $R \to \infty$. However, when u is a solution of the Helmholtz equation that satisfies the radiation condition (2.9), the integral (5.12) does not tend to zero (this is because the derivatives of the Helmholtz solution decay more slowly at infinity than the derivatives of the Laplace solution). Thus, if one seeks to bound the exterior Dirichlet to Neumann map for the Helmholtz equation using (5.9), the sign of the volume terms in (5.10) is such that the terms on Γ bound $\|\partial_n u\|^2_{L^2(\Gamma)}$ in terms of $\|\nabla_\Gamma u\|^2_{L^2(\Gamma)}$ but (5.12) does not tend to zero as $R \to \infty$, and this non-zero contribution cannot be immediately controlled.

Because of this, Morawetz and Ludwig (1968) introduced the multiplier $\mathcal{N}u = r\mathcal{M}u$, where

$$\mathcal{M}u := \frac{x}{r} \cdot \nabla u - \mathrm{i}ku + \frac{d-1}{2r}u, \tag{5.13}$$

and $r = |x|$. This leads to an identity very similar to the Rellich identity (5.9), namely that, for solutions of $\mathcal{L}u = 0$,

$$\nabla\cdot\big(2\mathrm{Re}\left(r\overline{\mathcal{M}u}\nabla u\right)+\big(k^2|u|^2-|\nabla u|^2\big)x\big) = \big(|\nabla u|^2-|u_r|^2\big)+|u_r-\mathrm{i}ku|^2, \tag{5.14}$$

where $u_r = (x \cdot \nabla u)/r$. As with the Rellich identity, the non-divergence terms are all positive, and when integrated over Ω_+ the resulting integral over Γ is the same as in (5.10), except that the left-hand side now contains an extra term proportional to $\mathrm{Re}\,(\overline{u}\partial_n u)$ (which can be controlled using the same inequality that we used to deal with the final term in (5.11)). In contrast to the Rellich identity, however, the choice of terms subtracted from $x \cdot \nabla u$ in the multiplier (5.13) means that the analogue of the integral over Γ_R (5.12) tends to zero as $R \to \infty$. This is because, if u satisfies the radiation condition (2.9), the multiplier $r\mathcal{M}u$ is lower order at infinity than $x \cdot \nabla u$: the first two terms in the multiplier $\mathcal{M}u$ defined in (5.13) equal the quantity in the radiation condition (2.9), and the term $\frac{d-1}{2r}u$ subtracts off the next term in the asymptotic expansion, so that

$$\mathcal{M}u(x) = O\left(\frac{1}{r^{(d+3)/2}}\right) \text{ as } r \to \infty$$

(compared to $u_r - \mathrm{i}ku = O(r^{-(d+1)/2})$ from (2.10)). Thus, the identity (5.14) *can* be used to obtain a bound on the Dirichlet to Neumann map for the Helmholtz equation in Ω_+, ultimately resulting in Theorem 5.8. Following the introduction of the multiplier $\mathcal{M}u$ in Morawetz and Ludwig (1968), more general multipliers were then used by Morawetz (1975*a*) to obtain estimates for the Helmholtz equation (as a stepping stone to estimates for the wave equation).

One area where Rellich identities have been used extensively to treat time harmonic scattering problems is rough surface scattering. A standard model of this phenomenon is the Helmholtz equation posed in the infinite region above the graph of a function $f : \mathbb{R}^{d-1} \to \mathbb{R}$. Here the radiation condition is more subtle than in the bounded obstacle case, and the notion of 'outgoing' must be formulated in terms of the Fourier transform of the solution at a certain height above the surface; see Chandler-Wilde and Monk (2005) and the references therein.

The appropriate Rellich identity to use in this case is that with multiplier $e \cdot \nabla u$, where e is a unit vector in the vertical d-coordinate direction: this ensures that $e \cdot n > 0$ on the boundary (in this case, the graph of the function f). When this identity is applied in the analogue of Ω_+ (the region above the graph of f), we again want there to be no contribution from infinity; this is the case if an integral analogous to (5.12) tends to zero as $R \to \infty$ (where R is now the height above the graph of f). Similar to the bounded obstacle case, this integral does not tend to zero as $R \to \infty$. However, whereas in the bounded obstacle case this problem can be fixed by adding terms to the Rellich multiplier $x \cdot \nabla u$ to mirror the radiation condition, adding terms to the Rellich multiplier $e \cdot \nabla u$ does not appear helpful in the rough surface case (this is related to the more complicated behaviour of the scattered field at infinity when the scatterer is unbounded). Nevertheless, the integral analogous to (5.12) can be controlled using bounds on the Fourier transform of the solution above the surface (Chandler-Wilde and Monk 2005, Lemma 2.2), and thus a Dirichlet to Neumann map estimate can still be obtained (Chandler-Wilde, Heinemeyer and Potthast 2006). It is shown in Spence (2012) that the analogue of these bounds in the bounded obstacle case (Chandler-Wilde and Monk 2008, Lemma 2.1) is almost exactly equivalent to using the Morawetz–Ludwig multiplier (5.13).

5.3.2. Bounding the energy norm of solutions of the Helmholtz equation
By slightly changing the Rellich multiplier $x \cdot \nabla u$ one can ensure that the non-divergence terms in the resulting identity become the energy norm of the solution u, that is, $\|u\|_{1,k,D}$, where

$$\|u\|^2_{1,k,D} := \|\nabla u\|^2_{L^2(D)} + k^2 \|u\|^2_{L^2(D)} \tag{5.15}$$

(where D is either Ω_- or Ω_+). Indeed, the multiplier $\mathcal{N}u = x \cdot \nabla u + \alpha u$ for α a real constant yields

$$\begin{aligned}\nabla \cdot \big(2\mathrm{Re}\,\big(x \cdot \overline{\nabla u} + \alpha \overline{u}\big)\nabla u + \big(k^2|u|^2 - |\nabla u|^2\big)x\big) \\ = (d - 2 - 2\alpha)|\nabla u|^2 + (2\alpha - d)k^2|u|^2,\end{aligned} \tag{5.16}$$

where d is the dimension. (This identity can also be understood as adding a multiple of the pointwise form of Green's identity to the Rellich identity, and indeed this is the way it has been understood in most of the instances of its use.) Choosing $2\alpha = d-1$ means that the non-divergence terms in (5.16) become $-\|u\|^2_{1,k,D}$. Although of obvious independent interest, bounds on the energy norm can be translated into bounds on the inf-sup constant for the standard variational formulations of the Helmholtz equation that are the starting point for finite element discretizations; see, *e.g.*, Chandler-Wilde and Monk (2008, Lemma 3.4).

The fact that Rellich identities can give bounds on the energy norm was used for the Helmholtz equation in interior domains by Makridakis, Ihlenburg and Babuška (1996, Proposition 2.1), Melenk (1995), Cummings and Feng (2006) and Hetmaniuk (2007). In exterior domains, Chandler-Wilde and Monk (2008) used them to prove the bound (5.5) without the third term on the left-hand side when Ω_- is a star-shaped domain in 2D and 3D, obtaining an explicit value for the hidden constant on the right-hand side of the bound. (In this application the problem that (5.12) does not tend to zero as $R \to \infty$ was overcome via Chandler-Wilde and Monk 2008, Lemma 2.1. An effective alternative is to use the Morawetz–Ludwig multiplier (5.13); see Spence 2012.) For rough surface scattering modelled by the Helmholtz equation, bounds on the energy norm of the solution were obtained via Rellich identities by Chandler-Wilde and Monk (2005), Claeys and Haddar (2007) and Lechleiter and Ritterbusch (2010). Finally, we note that Rellich identities were used to prove analogous results for the equations of linear elasticity by Cummings and Feng (2006), and for the Maxwell equations by Hiptmair, Moiola and Perugia (2011*b*) and Haddar and Lechleiter (2011).

5.3.3. Proving coercivity of integral operators

As discussed in Section 5.3.1 above, the Rellich identity was a key component of Verchota's bound on $\|\big(\frac{1}{2}I - D_0\big)^{-1}\|$ (Verchota 1984). In essence, Verchota's argument can be seen as applying the Dirichlet to Neumann map bounds in Ω_- and Ω_+, that follow from (5.11), to the particular solution of the Laplace equation $u = \mathcal{S}_0\phi$. Verchota combines these bounds with the jump relations (2.41) to obtain bounds on $\|(\frac{1}{2}I - D_0')^{-1}\| = \|(\frac{1}{2}I - D_0)^{-1}\|$.

Recently it has become clear that the exact structure of the Rellich-identity terms on Γ when $u = \mathcal{S}_k\phi$ can be used to prove the stronger property (compared to invertibility) of *coercivity* in the sense of (2.124)

(Spence *et al.* 2011). This discovery was motivated by the relatively well-known fact that applying Green's first identity (A.26) with $u = \mathcal{S}_k\phi$ in Ω_- and Ω_+, and then using the jump relations (2.41), yields

$$\mathrm{Re}\,(-\mathrm{i}(S_k\phi,\phi)_{L^2(\Gamma)}) \geq 0, \tag{5.17}$$

for all $\phi \in L^2(\Gamma)$; see, *e.g.*, Engleder and Steinbach (2007, Lemma 3.1) or Spence *et al.* (2011, §1.3). (A different proof of this result is given in Nédélec 2001, §3.4.4.) Given that this use of Green's first identity gives information about part of the combined potential operator $A'_{k,\eta}$ (namely the part involving S_k), a natural question is whether repeating the argument with a different identity can obtain information about more, or even all, of $A'_{k,\eta}$.

Repeating the argument leading to (5.17) with Green's identity replaced by the Morawetz–Ludwig identity (5.14) yields the inequality

$$\mathrm{Re}\,\big(\big(x\cdot n\,D'_k + x\cdot\nabla_\Gamma S_k - \mathrm{i}\eta S\big)\phi,\phi\big)_{L^2(\Gamma)} \geq 0, \tag{5.18}$$

for all $k > 0$ with the particular choice of $\eta(x) = k|x| + \mathrm{i}(d-1)/2$; this shows that the star-combined operator (2.103) is coercive uniformly in k for all star-shaped Lipschitz domains (see Theorem 5.26 below).

Looking at the terms on the left-hand side of (5.18), we see that if the vector field x in the Morawetz–Ludwig identity is replaced by a more general vector field $Z(x)$, and if $Z(x)$ is equal to the normal vector on Γ (so that $Z\cdot\nabla_\Gamma S_k = 0$ and $Z\cdot n = 1$), then the left-hand side becomes $\mathrm{Re}\,(D'_k - \mathrm{i}\eta S)\phi,\phi)_{L^2(\Gamma)}$. Thus, if $Z(x)$ is also such that the inequality in (5.18) is maintained after replacing x by $Z(x)$, then this inequality shows that the standard combined-potential operator $A'_{k,\eta}$ is coercive, that is, for some $\alpha_{k,\eta} > 0$,

$$|(A'_{k,\eta}\phi,\phi)| \geq \alpha_{k,\eta}\|\phi\|^2, \tag{5.19}$$

for all $\phi \in L^2(\Gamma)$ (and hence $A_{k,\eta}$ is also coercive by the considerations leading to Remark 2.24). Necessary conditions for the inequality analogous to (5.18) to hold are that the non-divergence terms of the analogue of the identity (5.14) are non-negative, and also $Z(x)$ must be proportional to x as $r \to \infty$ for there to be no contribution from infinity (the analogue of (5.12) must tend to zero as $R \to \infty$). In this way, one can prove $A'_{k,\eta}$ is coercive by showing there exists a vector field $Z(x)$ satisfying the constraints outlined above (Spence, Kamotski and Smyshlyaev 2012). This is analogous to Morawetz's reformulation of the energy decay of solutions to the wave equation in terms of the existence of an appropriate multiplier in Morawetz (1975*a*); however, we note that the multipliers that need to be constructed to prove coercivity satisfy more stringent requirements than Morawetz's multipliers; see Spence *et al.* (2012). Coercivity results obtained using this technique are discussed in Section 5.7.

5.4. Bounds obtained by Fourier analysis

The majority of this subsection discusses investigations of conditioning and coercivity in the case where Γ is either a circle or a sphere, in which case a complete theory is possible due to the diagonalization of the operators in the Fourier ($d = 2$) or spherical harmonic ($d = 3$) bases. However, we want to emphasize at the beginning that these are not the only domains where these (in some sense) explicit methods can be used. Indeed, the real requirement is that the domain is one in which the Helmholtz equation is separable, in which case classical analytical techniques of applied mathematics can be brought to the problem. For example, boundary integral operators on the ellipse are considered in Kress and Spassov (1983) and Rodin and Steinbach (2003) for the Laplace equation, and in Betcke, Phillips and Spence (2012*b*) for the Helmholtz equation. The separability requirement can be relaxed slightly, but then the analytical techniques become more involved and only yield approximate results; see, *e.g.*, the investigations of the conditioning of first-kind BIEs for the Helmholtz equation in several canonical domains (including the exterior of a crack) in Warnick and Chew (1999, 2001, 2004).

Remark 5.11. One particularly noteworthy investigation using Fourier analysis is Ha-Duong's work on scattering by a flat screen (in 3D) and a crack (in 2D). Coercivity for both S_k and H_k, as mappings between the appropriate trace spaces, was proved in Ha-Duong (1990), but under the assumption that $\mathrm{Im}\,(k) > 0$ (for an alternative proof, which essentially repeats the argument using Green's identity leading to (5.17) but with $\mathrm{Im}\, k > 0$, see Ha-Duong 2003). Frequency-explicit coercivity estimates for H_k for $k > 0$ were shown in Ha-Duong (1992), and a non-frequency-explicit coercivity estimate for S_k for $k > 0$ was stated in Costabel (2004, Proposition 2.3) but without proof. These results have recently been sharpened and extended in Chandler-Wilde and Hewett (2012).

The case where Γ *is the circle or sphere.* As with the rest of this section we focus on the exterior Dirichlet problem (2.12) (which includes the sound-soft scattering problem (2.16)). Partial results for the analogous formulation of the Neumann problem, that is, (2.73) and (2.77) with $\beta = 0$, are given in Kress (1985), Amini (1990) and Amini (1993). The conditioning of the combined-potential integral equations for electromagnetic scattering in these domains was studied for small k in Kress (1985), and the conditioning of certain 'regularized' formulations of the acoustic Dirichlet problem was considered in Buffa and Sauter (2006) (these 'regularized' formulations were discussed briefly in Section 2.11).

When Γ is the circle or sphere, the analysis is simplified by the fact that $D'_k = D_k$ and thus $A'_{k,\eta} = A_{k,\eta}$ (Kress 1985).

Suppose Γ is the unit circle, with parametrization $\zeta(\theta) = (\cos\theta, \sin\theta)$. With this parametrization $L^2(\Gamma)$ is isometrically isomorphic to $L^2[0, 2\pi]$. We can write any $\varphi \in L^2[0, 2\pi] = L^2(\Gamma)$ as

$$\varphi(\theta) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \widehat{\varphi}(m) \exp(\mathrm{i}m\theta), \quad \text{where } \widehat{\varphi}(m) := \int_0^{2\pi} \varphi(\theta)\, \exp(-\mathrm{i}m\theta)\, \mathrm{d}\theta,$$

in which case the L^2-inner product and norm are given by

$$(\varphi, \psi) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \widehat{\varphi}(m)\overline{\widehat{\psi}(m)} \quad \text{and} \quad \|\varphi\|^2 = \frac{1}{2\pi} \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} |\widehat{\varphi}(m)|^2.$$

On the circle the operators S_k, D_k, and hence $A_{k,\eta}$ are convolution operators and all act diagonally on the basis $\{\exp(\mathrm{i}m\theta)\}_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}$ with the corresponding eigenvalues given by

$$\lambda^{S_k}(m) = \frac{\pi\mathrm{i}}{2} H^{(1)}_{|m|}(k) J_{|m|}(k), \tag{5.20a}$$

$$\lambda^{D_k}(m) = \frac{\pi\mathrm{i}k}{2} H^{(1)}_{|m|}(k) J'_{|m|}(k) - \frac{1}{2}, \tag{5.20b}$$

$$\lambda^{A_{k,\eta}}(m) = \frac{\pi}{2} H^{(1)}_{|m|}(k)\big(\mathrm{i}k J'_{|m|}(k) + \eta J_{|m|}(k)\big). \tag{5.20c}$$

By this we mean that

$$R\phi(\theta) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \lambda^R(m) \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}m\theta} \widehat{\phi}(m),$$

for $R = S_k, D_k$, or $A_{k,\eta}$; see, *e.g.*, Kress (1985, equation (4.4)) or Domínguez *et al.* (2007, Lemma 1)). Thus $\lambda^R(m)$ is the eigenvalue associated with the eigenfunction $\exp(\mathrm{i}m\theta)$.

On the sphere the eigenvalues for these operators (in the spherical harmonic basis) are proportional to the expressions (5.20) with m replaced by $m + 1/2$ (where the constant of proportionality is independent of k and m); see, *e.g.*, Kress (1985), Domínguez *et al.* (2007).

Since the eigenfunctions $\exp(\mathrm{i}m\theta)$, $m \in \mathbb{Z}$, are an orthonormal basis of $L^2[0, 2\pi] = L^2(\Gamma)$, bounding norms can be recast as bounding eigenvalues. In particular, with $\mathbb{N}_0 := \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}$,

$$\|R\| = \sup_{m\in\mathbb{N}_0} |\lambda^R(m)|, \quad \|R^{-1}\| = \Big(\inf_{m\in\mathbb{N}_0} |\lambda^R(m)|\Big)^{-1}. \tag{5.21}$$

Obtaining a bound on the coercivity constant of $A_{k,\eta}$ in (5.19) can also be translated into obtaining a bound on the eigenvalues. Indeed, the variational form obtained when solving $A_{k,\eta}\varphi = g$ with the Galerkin method (see (1.6)) can be rewritten in the Fourier basis as

$$a_{k,\eta}(\varphi, \psi) = (A_{k,\eta}\varphi, \psi) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \lambda^{A_{k,\eta}}(m) \widehat{\varphi}(m) \overline{\widehat{\psi}(m)}. \tag{5.22}$$

If, for example, $\alpha_{k,\eta} > 0$, where

$$\alpha_{k,\eta} := \inf_{m\in\mathbb{N}_0} \operatorname{Re}\left(\lambda^{A_{k,\eta}}(m)\right), \tag{5.23}$$

then for $\varphi \in L^2(\Gamma)$,

$$\operatorname{Re}\left(a_{k,\eta}(\varphi,\varphi)\right) = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \operatorname{Re}\left(\lambda^{A_{k,\eta}}(m)\right)|\widehat{\varphi}(m)|^2 \geq \alpha_{k,\eta}\|\varphi\|^2; \tag{5.24}$$

so that $\alpha_{k,\eta}$ is a coercivity constant for $A'_{k,\eta}$. (Another potential way of getting a lower bound for the coercivity constant would be to consider the imaginary parts of $\lambda^{A_{k,\eta}}(m)$. However, Figure 5.2 shows that the imaginary parts are not bounded away from zero even in a case where the operator is coercive.)

Using (5.21), and bounding above the appropriate combinations of Bessel and Hankel functions, the following upper bounds on $\|S_k\|$, $\|D_k\|$, and $\|A_{k,\eta}\|$ can be obtained.

Theorem 5.12. For Γ the circle or sphere, for $k > 0$,

$$\|S_k\| \lesssim k^{-2/3}, \quad \|D_k\| = \|D'_k\| \lesssim 1, \tag{5.25}$$

so that

$$\|A_{k,\eta}\| \lesssim 1 + |\eta|k^{-2/3}. \tag{5.26}$$

The bound for $\|S_k\|$ in (5.25) was proved for the circle and sphere by Giebermann (1997), Domínguez *et al.* (2007) and Banjai and Sauter (2007). The bound for $\|D_k\|$ in (5.25) was proved by Banjai and Sauter (2007), with Giebermann (1997) and Domínguez *et al.* (2007) proving the weaker bound $\|D_k\| \lesssim k^{1/3}$. (To be precise we note that Domínguez *et al.* (2007) do not explicitly state the bound for $\|S_k\|$, but obtain the appropriate bound on the eigenvalues (5.20a), and Banjai and Sauter (2007) state the bound for $\|S_k\|$ for the sphere only, but due to the fact that the eigenvalues on the circle are very similar to those on the sphere their result is easily extended to the circle case.)

The bound (5.26) indicates that with the usual choice of $\eta = k$, $\|A_{k,\eta}\| \lesssim 1 + k^{1/3}$. The lower bounds obtained by more general methods in Section 5.5.2 show that this upper bound is sharp. The bound (5.26) also shows that the choice $\eta \sim k^{2/3}$ means that $\|A_{k,\eta}\|$ is bounded uniformly in k. Although this might at first suggest that $\eta = k^{2/3}$ is a better choice than $\eta = k$, the former choice apparently leads to $\|A^{-1}_{k,\eta}\|$ growing like $k^{1/3}$ (this is suggested by Theorem 5.22 and numerical experiments of Betcke *et al.* 2011) and thus the condition number of $A_{k,k^{2/3}}$ in the case of a circle and sphere grows at the same rate as $k \to \infty$ as that of $A_{k,k}$.

Theorem 5.13. (Domínguez *et al.* 2007) When Γ is the circle, with $\alpha_{k,\eta}$ defined by (5.23), there exists a $k_0 > 0$ such that

$$\alpha_{k,k} \geq \frac{1}{2},$$

for all $k \geq k_0$, so that $A_{k,k}$ is coercive with a coercivity constant of $1/2$. When Γ is the sphere, (5.19) holds for $\eta = k$ for sufficiently large k, with

$$\alpha_{k,k} \geq \frac{1}{2} - O\left(\frac{1}{k^{2/3}}\right), \quad \text{as } k \to \infty.$$

These lower bounds on the eigenvalues, first conjectured by Giebermann (1997), are much harder to prove than the upper bounds of Theorem 5.12.

Recall that $\alpha_{k,\eta}$ in (5.19) and $\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\|$ are related by

$$\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\| \leq 1/\alpha_{k,\eta} \tag{5.27}$$

(this follows immediately from equation (2.125)). Thus the bounds of Theorem 5.13 immediately imply that

$$\|A_{k,k}^{-1}\| \leq 2$$

for all $k \geq k_0$ for the circle, and

$$\|A_{k,k}^{-1}\| \leq 2 + O\left(\frac{1}{k^{2/3}}\right), \quad \text{as } k \to \infty,$$

for the sphere.

5.5. Bounds on norms of boundary integral operators

We now discuss bounds on the norms of S_k, D_k, D'_k, $A_{k,\eta}$ and $A'_{k,\eta}$ for much more general domains than just the circle and sphere. (Recall from Remark 2.24 that $\|D_k\| = \|D'_k\|$ and $\|A_{k,\eta}\| = \|A'_{k,\eta}\|$.)

5.5.1. Upper bounds

Theorem 5.14. (Chandler-Wilde *et al.* 2009) If Γ is Lipschitz then

$$\|S_k\| \lesssim k^{(d-3)/2}, \quad \|D_k\| \lesssim 1 + k^{(d-1)/2}, \quad \|D'_k\| \lesssim 1 + k^{(d-1)/2}, \tag{5.28}$$

for $k > 0$; thus

$$\|A'_{k,\eta}\| = \|A_{k,\eta}\| \lesssim 1 + k^{(d-1)/2}\left(1 + \frac{|\eta|}{k}\right)$$

for $k > 0$ (uniformly in η).

These bounds were obtained by using the following idea. If T is an integral operator on Γ with kernel $t(x,y)$ then

$$\|T\|_{L^1(\Gamma)\leftarrow L^1(\Gamma)} = \operatorname*{ess\,sup}_{y\in\Gamma} \int_\Gamma |t(x,y)|\,\mathrm{d}s(x),$$
$$\|T\|_{L^\infty(\Gamma)\leftarrow L^\infty(\Gamma)} = \operatorname*{ess\,sup}_{x\in\Gamma} \int_\Gamma |t(x,y)|\,\mathrm{d}s(y)$$

(provided these integrals exist); see, *e.g.*, Jörgens (1982). Thus, by the Riesz–Thorin interpolation theorem,

$$\|T\|_{L^2(\Gamma)\leftarrow L^2(\Gamma)} \le \big(\|T\|_{L^1(\Gamma)\leftarrow L^1(\Gamma)}\|T\|_{L^\infty(\Gamma)\leftarrow L^\infty(\Gamma)}\big)^{1/2};$$

see, *e.g.*, Stein and Weiss (1971, Chapter V, Theorem 1.3). Furthermore, if $|t(x,y)| \le \tilde{t}(x,y)$, where $\tilde{t}$ is such that $\tilde{t}(x,y) = \tilde{t}(y,x)$, then

$$\|T\|_{L^2(\Gamma)\leftarrow L^2(\Gamma)} \le \operatorname*{ess\,sup}_{x\in\Gamma} \int_\Gamma \tilde{t}(x,y)\,\mathrm{d}s(y). \tag{5.29}$$

In the case of S_k the bound (5.29) is applied with $T = S_k$ (with $\tilde{t}(x,y)$ chosen as $|\Phi_k(x,y)|$), whereas for D_k and D_k' it is applied to the perturbation $D_k - D_0$ (since the singularity of these double-layer operators is too strong for the operators themselves to be bounded on $L^1(\Gamma)$ and $L^\infty(\Gamma)$ for general Lipschitz Γ). In the 2D case the bounds on D_k and D_k' in (5.28) are then proved using bounds on (the derivatives of) Hankel functions similar to those in Lemma 4.6.

It is important to note that these bounds ignore the oscillation in k. For example, the method described above gives the bound, for $k > 0$,

$$\begin{aligned}\|S_k\| &\le \operatorname*{ess\,sup}_{y\in\Gamma} \int_\Gamma |\Phi_k(x,y)|\,\mathrm{d}s(y) \\ &= \operatorname*{ess\,sup}_{y\in\Gamma} \int_\Gamma \frac{1}{4\pi|x-y|}\,\mathrm{d}s(y) \lesssim 1, \quad \text{for } d = 3.\end{aligned} \tag{5.30}$$

Despite this apparent crudeness the bound (5.30) is sharp in its k-dependence for many geometries in 2D (and so are the bounds on $\|A_{k,\eta}'\|$ and $\|A_{k,\eta}\|$); we will see this below in Lemma 5.18 when we discuss lower bounds.

The same idea can be used to bound the surface gradients of S_k, $D_k - D_0$, and $D_k' - D_0'$ and this gives bounds on the operators S_k, D_k, and D_k' as mappings from $L^2(\Gamma)$ into $H^1(\Gamma)$ (provided Γ is smooth enough for these operators to be bounded), again using bounds similar to those in Lemma 4.6 in the 2D case.

Theorem 5.15. (Graham *et al.* 2012) If Γ is Lipschitz then

$$\|S_k\|_{H^1(\Gamma)\leftarrow L^2(\Gamma)} \lesssim 1 + k^{(d-1)/2}, \tag{5.31}$$

for all $k > 0$, and if Γ is $C^{2,\mu}$, for some $\mu \in (0,1)$, then

$$\|D_k\|_{H^1(\Gamma)\leftarrow L^2(\Gamma)} \lesssim 1 + k^{(d+1)/2}, \quad \|D_k'\|_{H^1(\Gamma)\leftarrow L^2(\Gamma)} \lesssim 1 + k^{(d+1)/2},$$

for all $k > 0$.

We remark that the requirement that Γ is $C^{2,\mu}$ ensures that the mappings $D_0, D_0' : L^2(\Gamma) \to H^1(\Gamma)$ are bounded; see Kirsch (1989, Theorem 4.2), Colton and Kress (1998, Theorem 3.6).

The bounds of the previous theorem are an important ingredient both in the proof of k-explicit quasi-optimality for the h-version of the BEM discussed in Section 6.1, and in the upper bounds on $\|(A_{k,\eta}')^{-1}\|$ in Section 5.6.1.

In Section 2.9 we introduced the integral operator $A_{k,\eta,Z}'$, defined by (2.99) for $k > 0$, $\eta \in L^\infty(\Gamma)$, and $Z \in (L^\infty(\Gamma))^d$. This definition involves D_k' and S_k (like $A_{k,\eta}'$) but also $\nabla_\Gamma S_k$. Supplementing the bounds (5.28) with (5.31) we obtain that

$$\|A_{k,\eta,Z}'\| \lesssim 1 + k^{(d-1)/2}\left(1 + \frac{\|\eta\|_\infty}{k}\right) \tag{5.32}$$

for all $k > 0$.

Finally, a technique for obtaining upper bounds on $\|S_k\|$ and $\|D_k\|$ that does take into account the oscillatory nature of the kernels is the following standard idea from harmonic analysis (see, *e.g.*, Stein 1993, Chapter 7, §2), whose use in this context was suggested in Chandler-Wilde and Graham (2009). Observe that, for example,

$$\|S_k\| = \|S_k^* S_k\|^{1/2},$$

where S_k^* is the Hilbert space adjoint of S_k (so its kernel is the complex conjugate of the kernel of S_k). Now $S_k^* S_k$ is an integral operator whose norm can be estimated using (5.29) above. The kernel of $S_k^* S_k$ is itself an integral, and this can be estimated using standard techniques for oscillatory integrals. The use of this method of estimating norms is ongoing research, but an initial bound obtained by this technique is the following.

Theorem 5.16. Let Ω_- be a strictly convex C^2 domain with strictly positive curvature in 3D. Then given $\epsilon > 0$ there exists a $k_0 > 0$ such that

$$\|S_k\| \lesssim \frac{1}{k^{1/20-\epsilon}},$$

for $k \geq k_0$.

This final bound should be contrasted with the cruder bound $\|S_k\| \lesssim 1$ for $d = 3$ obtained in Theorem 5.14 above. This shows that taking into account the oscillatory nature of the kernels can, at least for some domains (and especially in 3D), provide better bounds.

5.5.2. Lower bounds

The technique used so far to obtain lower bounds on $\|S_k\|, \|D_k\|$, and $\|A'_{k,\eta}\|$ is to design a particular $\phi_k \in L^2(\Gamma)$, depending on k and the geometry of the obstacle, to make $\|S_k\phi_k\|/\|\phi_k\|$ (or the analogous expressions with S_k replaced by D_k or $A'_{k,\eta}$) as large as possible. This technique strongly depends on the geometry of the obstacle, and has almost exclusively to date been used in 2D. The first bound we discuss is an exception in that it holds both in 2D and 3D. It relies on the fact that $A'_{k,\eta}$ is a compact perturbation of the identity on C^1 domains.

Lemma 5.17. (Chander-Wilde *et al.* 2009, Theorem 4.3) In both 2D and 3D, if part of Γ is C^1 then $\|A_{k,\eta}\| \geq 1/2$ and $\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\| \geq 2$.

A variety of lower bounds on $\|S_k\|$ and $\|D_k\|$ were obtained in Chandler-Wilde, Graham, Langdon and Lindner (2009). We give four examples.

Lemma 5.18. (Chandler-Wilde *et al.* 2009, Theorem 4.2) In the 2D case, if Γ is Lipschitz and contains a straight line section, then there exists $k_0 > 0$ such that

$$\|S_k\| \gtrsim \frac{1}{k^{1/2}} \tag{5.33}$$

for $k \geq k_0$, and

$$\|A'_{k,\eta}\| = \|A_{k,\eta}\| \geq \frac{|\eta|}{k^{1/2}} - 1 + O\left(\frac{|\eta|}{k}\right)$$

for $k \geq k_0$, uniformly in $\eta > 0$.

The lower bounds of Lemma 5.18 shows that the upper bounds on $\|S_k\|$ and $\|A_{k,\eta}\|$ (for $\eta \gtrsim k$) in Theorem 5.14 are sharp in the 2D case if part of Γ contains a straight line segment.

The following two lemmas show that the upper bounds when Γ is a circle, (5.25), are sharp.

Lemma 5.19. (Chandler-Wilde *et al.* 2009, Theorem 4.4) In the 2D case, if Γ is Lipschitz and C^2 in a neighbourhood of some point on the boundary then there exists $k_0 > 0$ such that

$$\|S_k\| \gtrsim \frac{1}{k^{2/3}}$$

for $k \geq k_0$.

Lemma 5.20. (A special case of Chandler-Wilde *et al.* 2009, Theorem 4.7) If Γ is C^1 then there exists $k_0 > 0$ such that

$$\|D_k\| \gtrsim 1$$

for $k \geq k_0$.

Lemma 5.21. (A special case of Chandler-Wilde *et al.* 2009, Theorem 4.6) If Γ is a 2D polygon then there exists $k_0 > 0$ such that

$$\|D_k\| \gtrsim k^{1/4}$$

for $k \geq k_0$.

5.6. Bounds on inverses

5.6.1. Upper bounds on $\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\|$

The bounds on $\|A'_{k,\eta}\|$ in Section 5.5 were obtained directly from the definition of the integral operator, with the fact that this operator is used to solve the Helmholtz equation entering only via the fact that its kernel is given in terms of the fundamental solution (1.2). In contrast, the bounds on $\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\|$ that we discuss in this subsection are obtained by using Theorem 2.33, which expresses $(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}$ in terms of solution maps to BVPs involving the Helmholtz equation.

The known upper bounds on $\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\|$ are collected in the following theorem.

Theorem 5.22. If Ω_- is a star-shaped Lipschitz domain in 2D or 3D, then

$$\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\| \lesssim 1 + \frac{1+k}{|\eta|}, \tag{5.34}$$

for $k > 0$ (Chandler-Wilde and Monk 2008), and if Ω_+ is a non-trapping domain (in the sense of Definition 5.4) in 2D or 3D then, for every $k_0 > 0$,

$$\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\| \lesssim k^{2+(d-1)/2}\left(1 + \frac{k}{|\eta|}\right) \tag{5.35}$$

for $k \geq k_0$ (Spence 2012).

This theorem is proved using Theorem 2.33, which gives a bound on $\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\|$ in terms of bounds on the exterior Dirichlet to Neumann map, and on the interior impedance to Dirichlet map. To bound the exterior Dirichlet to Neumann map we use Theorem 5.8 (in the star-shaped case) and equation (5.7) (in the non-trapping case). To bound the interior impedance to Dirichlet map when Ω_- is star-shaped we use the Rellich identity (using the ideas in Section 5.3.1), and for more general domains we use a weaker bound obtained using Green's representation theorem along with the bounds of Theorem 5.15; for details see Chandler-Wilde and Monk (2008) and Spence (2012).

An explicit value for the hidden constant in the bound (5.34) is given in Chandler-Wilde and Monk (2008, Theorem 4.3). For example, for a square of side length $2a$, with the choice $\eta = k$, $\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\| < 5\frac{1}{4}$ if $ka \geq 1$, for a

cube of side $2a$, again with $\eta = k$, $\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\| < 8$ for $ka \geq 1$. The hidden constant in (5.35) ultimately depends on the hidden constant in (5.5), which is in principle computable.

Regarding the sharpness of the bounds of Theorem 5.22, if $k/|\eta| = O(1)$ as $k \to \infty$, then Lemma 5.17 implies that (5.34) is sharp in its k-dependence. The bound (5.35) for the non-trapping case is almost certainly not sharp, with the numerical experiments of Betcke *et al.* (2011) and Betcke and Spence (2011) indicating that the stronger bound (5.34) holds for several 2D non-trapping and non-star-shaped domains, at least for moderate values of k. (Betcke and Spence (2011) investigate the coercivity constant of $A'_{k,\eta}$, which implies bounds on $\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\|$ via (5.27).)

5.6.2. Lower bounds on $\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\|$

From the analysis and numerical experiments described above it is not implausible to conjecture that the upper bound (5.34) on $\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\|$ holds whenever Ω_+ is non-trapping in both 2D and 3D.

This motivates the question: 'How fast can $\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\|$ grow when Ω_+ is trapping?' This question was investigated in both 2D and 3D in Chandler-Wilde *et al.* (2009) and Betcke *et al.* (2011), with further work in Betcke, Chandler-Wilde, Graham and Langdon (2012*a*). In this subsection we discuss two theorems taken from the first two of these papers. These theorems give examples of 2D trapping domains for which $\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\|$ grows through some increasing sequence of wavenumbers; analogous results for certain 3D trapping domains can be found in Betcke *et al.* (2012*a*). In these theorems the $\gtrsim$ notation means that the implied constants in (5.36) and (5.37) below are both independent of m.

Theorem 5.23. (Chandler-Wilde *et al.* 2009, Theorem 5.1) If Ω_+ contains a square of side length $2a$, two parallel sides of which form part of Γ (an example is the rectangular cavity in Figure 5.1), and if $k_m = m\pi/2a$, $m \in \mathbb{N}$, then

$$\|A^{-1}_{k_m,\eta}\| \gtrsim (k_m a)^{9/10} \left(1 + \frac{|\eta|}{k_m}\right)^{-1}. \tag{5.36}$$

Theorem 5.24. (Betcke *et al.* 2011, Theorem 2.8) If, for some $a_1 > a_2 > 0$, Ω_+ contains the ellipse $E := \{(x_1, x_2) : (x_1/a_1)^2 + (x_2/a_2)^2 < 1\}$, and if Γ coincides with the boundary of this ellipse in neighbourhoods of the points $(0, \pm a_2)$, then there exists a sequence $0 < k_0 < k_1 < k_2 < \cdots$, with $k_m \to \infty$ as $m \to \infty$, such that, for some $\gamma > 0$,

$$\|A^{-1}_{k_m,\eta}\| \gtrsim \exp(\gamma k_m) \left(1 + \frac{|\eta|}{k_m}\right)^{-1} \tag{5.37}$$

(an example of such a domain is the elliptical cavity in Figure 5.1).

Numerical evidence for both these estimates was given in Betcke *et al.* (2011), with evidence for (5.36) also given in Löhndorf and Melenk (2011, Example 4.7).

These two theorems are proved by looking at particular solutions of the Helmholtz equation, in the rectangular cavity and elliptical cavity respectively, and translating the properties of the solutions into properties of the integral operator $A'_{k,\eta}$. In order to understand the solutions that we use to prove the theorems, we first need to discuss briefly the concepts of *resonances* and *quasimodes*.

A resonance of the exterior Dirichlet problem (2.12) is a complex wavenumber $k_{\rm res}$ such that there exists a non-trivial solution $u_{\rm res}$ of the Helmholtz equation in Ω_+ satisfying (2.10) and *zero* Dirichlet boundary conditions. From Corollary 2.9 we know that resonances cannot occur for $\operatorname{Im} k \geq 0$ (because in this case if $u = 0$ on Γ then $u = 0$ in Ω_+), and thus any resonances must lie in the lower half complex plane (actually Corollary 2.9 only considers real k, but the result also holds for $\operatorname{Im} k \geq 0$). Note that (2.10) implies that, for $\operatorname{Im} k < 0$, the solution $u_{\rm res}(x)$ must grow exponentially as $r \to \infty$.

The location of resonances in the lower half complex plane and their relationship to trapping are classic questions in scattering theory, with appropriate generalizations of these questions still active research topics today. In the 1967 first edition of Lax and Phillips (1989) it was conjectured that:

(1) for any non-trapping domain there are no resonances in a strip $\{k : -\alpha \leq \operatorname{Im}\{k\} \leq 0\}$ for some constant $\alpha > 0$;

(2) for any trapping domain there is a sequence of resonances $\{k_m\}_{m=1}^{\infty}$ such that $\operatorname{Im}\{k_m\} \to 0$ as $m \to \infty$.

The first conjecture (intimately linked to the question of local energy decay for solutions of the wave equation that was mentioned briefly in Section 5.2) was proved to be true in Vainberg (1975) and Melrose (1979) (using the results of Melrose and Sjöstrand 1978). However, an example of a trapping domain for which there are no resonances in a strip below the real axis was given in Ikawa (1983), and thus the second conjecture is false. The second conjecture is true if one restricts attention to trapping domains that contain a trapped ray that is stable under perturbation – a so-called 'elliptic' trapped ray (this was proved by Stefanov and Vodev using the link with quasimodes; see the references in the discussion of quasimodes below). Thus the elliptical cavity domain in Figure 5.1 contains a sequence of resonances converging to the real axis, but the square cavity domain in the same figure need not. More details about these results can be found in Lax and Phillips (1989, Epilogue), Vainberg (1999), Melrose (1995), for example. (The 2D case is more subtle than the 3D case due to the presence of a branch point in the

fundamental solution (1.2) at $k = 0$.) A nice non-technical discussion of resonances is given in Zworski (1999).

A related concept is that of a quasimode. In the context of acoustic scattering, a quasimode is a solution of the inhomogeneous Helmholtz equation for $k > 0$ where the source is small relative to the solution. (We index everything by m at this stage since in what follows we will always consider a family of quasimodes with wavenumbers k_m strictly increasing as $m \to \infty$.) We call v_m a quasimode if, for some compactly supported $g_m \in L^2(\Omega_+)$,

$$\Delta v_m + k_m^2 v_m = g_m,$$

where $k_m > 0$, v_m satisfies zero Dirichlet boundary conditions and the Sommerfeld radiation condition (2.9), and, for some $R > 0$ such that $\Omega_- \subset B_R$, the bound

$$\|v_m\|_{L^2(\Omega_+ \cap B_R)} \gtrsim L(k_m) \|g_m\|_{L^2(\Omega_+)} \tag{5.38}$$

holds where the factor $L(k_m)$ is 'large'. Thus, one can think of k_m^2 as being 'nearly' an eigenvalue of the Laplacian.

How large can we expect $L(k_m)$ to be? Theorem 5.6 tells us that a solution v of the Helmholtz equation in a non-trapping domain with zero Dirichlet boundary conditions and source g satisfies

$$\|v\|_{L^2(\Omega_+ \cap B_R)} \lesssim \frac{1}{k} \|g\|_{L^2(\Omega_+)}.$$

Thus a bound of the form (5.38) cannot hold, even with $L(k_m)$ constant, for non-trapping domains.

One intuitively expects that, if there is a resonance k_{res} in the lower half complex plane close to the positive real axis, then there will be a quasimode with $k_m > 0$ close to k_{res}. This intuition turns out to be correct, and the relationship between resonances and quasimodes was elucidated in Stefanov and Vodev (1995), Stefanov and Vodev (1996), Tang and Zworski (1998) and Stefanov (1999, 2003). For more information on quasimodes in general see, *e.g.*, Lazutkin (1999).

Theorems 5.23 and 5.24 are proved by constructing quasimodes with

$$L(k_m) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for the square cavity domain,} \\ \exp(\beta k_m) & \text{for some } \beta > 0, \text{ for the elliptical cavity domain.} \end{cases}$$

The construction of the quasimodes in the square cavity domain given in Chandler-Wilde *et al.* (2009) is based on the fact that $u(x) = \sin(k_m x_1)$ with $k_m = m\pi/a$, $m \in \mathbb{N}$ is an eigenfunction of the 1D Laplacian with eigenvalue k_m^2 on $[0, a]$ under Dirichlet boundary conditions. The quasimode v_m is then defined by $\chi(x)u(x)$, where $\chi(x)$ is a smooth function with compact support in the cavity. In a similar way, the quasimodes in the elliptical cavity domain constructed in Betcke *et al.* (2011) are based on the fact that, for the ellipse

$\{(x_1/a_1)^2 + (x_2/a_2)^2 < 1\}$, with $a_1 > a_2 > 0$, there are eigenfunctions of the Laplacian that become exponentially localized about the stable periodic orbit $\{(0, x_2) : |x_2| \le a_2\}$ as $k_m \to \infty$.

Given a domain with a family of quasimodes satisfying (5.38), one can show that

$$\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\| \gtrsim \left(\frac{L(k_m)}{k_m^{d-2}} - \frac{1}{k_m^{(d-1)/2}}\right)\left(1 + \frac{|\eta|}{k_m}\right)^{-1}. \tag{5.39}$$

In the case of the elliptic cavity, this bound combined with the exponential growth of $L(k_m)$ establishes Theorem 5.24, that is, (5.37) holds for any $\gamma < \beta$. Since $L(k_m)$ does not increase for the square cavity, a more subtle argument is needed to obtain the growth in Theorem 5.23.

In the rest of this subsection we briefly sketch how the bound (5.39) is obtained, in large part following Betcke *et al.* (2011, §2.5). We also indicate how to prove Theorem 5.23 given that the bound (5.39) is too crude to achieve this.

Given a quasimode v_m such that both v_m and g_m are compactly supported, first define v_m^I as the Newtonian potential

$$v_m^I(x) := \int_{\Omega_+} \Phi_k(x, y) g_m(y)\, \mathrm{d}y, \quad x \in \mathbb{R}^d.$$

(The I superscript indicates that we will think of v_m^I as an incident field for a Helmholtz scattering problem; in particular note that v_m^I is an incident field in the sense of Definition 2.11.) Now, by standard properties of the Newtonian potential (see, *e.g.*, McLean 2000, Chapter 6, Sauter and Schwab 2011, Chapter 3),

$$\Delta v_m^I + k_m^2 v_m^I = \begin{cases} g_m & \text{in } \operatorname{supp}(g_m) \subset \Omega_+, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Define v_m^S by $v_m^S = v_m - v_m^I$ (the superscript S indicates that we think of v_m^S as the scattered field). Then v_m^S satisfies the sound-soft scattering problem (2.16) for incident field v_m^I. It follows from Theorem 2.46 that

$$A'_{k,\eta}\left(\frac{\partial v_m}{\partial n}\right) = f_m,$$

where

$$f_m := \left(\frac{\partial v_m^I}{\partial n} - \mathrm{i}\eta v_m^I\right)\Big|_\Gamma.$$

To prove the bound (5.39), we need only show that

$$\left\|\frac{\partial v_m}{\partial n}\right\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \gtrsim \left(\frac{L(k_m)}{k^{d-2}} - \frac{1}{k_m^{(d-1)/2}}\right)\left(1 + \frac{|\eta|}{k_m}\right)^{-1} \|f_m\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}. \tag{5.40}$$

This bound follows from combining (5.38) with the bounds

$$\left\| \frac{\partial v_m}{\partial n} \right\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \gtrsim \|v_m\|_{L^2(\Omega_+)} \left(k_m^{(3-d)/2} - \frac{1}{L(k_m)} \right) \tag{5.41}$$

and

$$\|g_m\|_{L^2(\Omega_+)} \gtrsim k_m^{-(d-1)/2} \left(1 + \frac{|\eta|}{k} \right)^{-1} \|f_m\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}. \tag{5.42}$$

The bound (5.41) can be established by using Green's integral representation theorem to write v_m in Ω_+ in terms of the Newtonian potential of g_m and the single-layer potential of $\partial v_m/\partial n$ (the analogue of Theorem 2.21 for the inhomogeneous Helmholtz equation; see, *e.g.*, McLean 2000, Theorems 7.5 and 9.6), using bounds on the norms of the potentials as mappings from Γ to Ω_+ similar to those obtained in Section 5.5.1, and finally using (5.38) to relate the norm of g_m to that of v_m. The bound (5.42) can be established by using the definition of v_m^I in terms of the Newtonian potential, and then results on the norms of the potentials used for the first bound (for details see Betcke *et al.* 2011, §2.5).

As noted above, the lower bound on $\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\|$ is too crude to prove Theorem 5.23. Instead the result can be obtained by directly obtaining a bound from below on $\|\partial v_m/\partial n\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}$, and a bound from above on $\|f_m\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}$. The former follows trivially from the definition of v_m, whereas the latter requires carefully estimating the oscillatory integrals in the definition of v_m^I (for details see Chandler-Wilde *et al.* 2009, §5).

5.7. Bounds on coercivity constants

The results obtained by Fourier analysis show that $A_{k,k}$ is coercive for sufficiently large k when Γ is the circle and sphere. Given that it is surprising that coercivity holds, even in these special cases (as discussed in Section 2.11), a numerical investigation of the conditions under which coercivity holds was undertaken in Betcke and Spence (2011). Before we report the results of that investigation we discuss the information about $\alpha_{k,\eta}$, the coercivity constant of $A'_{k,\eta}$ in (5.19), that can be obtained through its relationship with $\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\|$ (5.27). The fact that $\|(A'_{k,\eta})^{-1}\| \geq 2$ from Theorem 5.17 means that $\alpha_{k,\eta} \leq 1/2$. Furthermore, Theorems 5.23 and 5.24 imply that, for the rectangular and elliptical cavities respectively,

$$\alpha_{k_m,\eta} \lesssim k_m^{-9/10} \left(1 + \frac{|\eta|}{k_m} \right), \quad \alpha_{k_m,\eta} \lesssim \exp\left(-\gamma k_m\right) \left(1 + \frac{|\eta|}{k_m} \right) \tag{5.43}$$

(where the k_m are different for each domain). Thus, with the standard choice $\eta \sim k$, even if coercivity holds for some k, it cannot hold uniformly as $k \to \infty$ for these two domains.

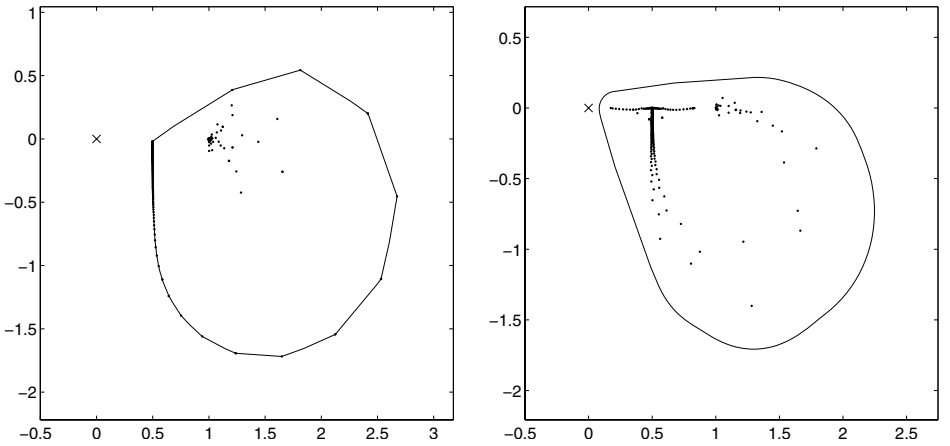


Figure 5.2. Eigenvalues and boundary of the numerical range of the boundary integral operator $A'_{k,k}$ when Γ is the unit circle (a) and the equilateral triangle with side length 1 (b) for $k = 50$, where $\times$ marks the origin.

Coercivity constants for a range of 2D domains were computed using the connection between the coercivity constant of an operator and its numerical range in Betcke and Spence (2011). Recall that the numerical range of a bounded linear operator T on a Hilbert space $\mathcal{V}$ is defined by

$$W(T) := \{(T\phi, \phi) : \phi \in \mathcal{V},\ \|\phi\| = 1\}.$$

From this definition it is straightforward to see that if T is coercive with coercivity constant α then $\alpha = \inf_{z \in W(T)} |z|$. Thus T is coercive if and only if $0 \notin \overline{W(T)}$.

Standard algorithms from numerical linear algebra exist for computing the numerical range of finite-dimensional operators. Betcke and Spence (2011) used these to compute the numerical range of Galerkin discretizations of $A'_{k,k}$ and proved that these numerical ranges converge to $W(A'_{k,k})$ (in an appropriate sense) as the dimension of the Galerkin approximation space tends to infinity.

Figure 5.2 shows both the boundary of the numerical range and the eigenvalues of $A'_{k,k}$ when Γ is the unit circle and the equilateral triangle for $k = 50$. The circle plot shows that $A_{k,k}$ is coercive with constant $1/2$, confirming Theorem 5.13. The triangle plot shows that $A'_{k,k}$ is also coercive in this case. A striking difference between these two plots is that for the circle the numerical range is the convex hull of the eigenvalues, but for the triangle this is not the case. Recalling the result that the closure of the numerical range of a normal operator is the convex hull of its spectrum (see, *e.g.*, Gustafson

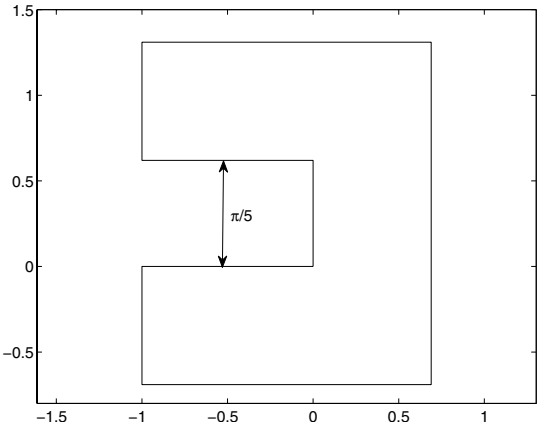


Figure 5.3. A particular rectangular cavity domain. The open cavity has a width of $\pi/5$.

and Rao 1997, Theorem 1.4-4), this indicates that $A'_{k,k}$ is a normal operator on the circle but not on the triangle. From the other computations in Betcke and Spence (2011) it appears that in 2D $A'_{k,\eta}$ is normal if and only if Γ is a circle. Proving one direction is easy: the fact that $A'_{k,\eta}$ and its adjoint both diagonalize in the Fourier basis mean that they commute, and thus $A'_{k,\eta}$ is normal (this is also true for the sphere). Proving the converse is more difficult, and at the time of writing still an open problem. However, the analogous result for S_k has been proved in Betcke *et al.* (2012*b*), and this paper also contains an investigation of the non-normality of $A'_{k,\eta}$ using tools such as pseudospectra (as advocated by Trefethen and Embree 2005).

From the computations in Betcke and Spence (2011) it was conjectured that $A'_{k,k}$ is coercive whenever the domain is non-trapping. Indeed these computations show $A'_{k,k}$ to be coercive uniformly in k for k between 10 and 100 for several non-trapping domains (including non-smooth ones such as an L-shaped polygon), but not coercive for the particular rectangular cavity domain in Figure 5.3. (Computations for higher k were not performed, because of the large matrix dimensions: here the Galerkin discretizations of $A'_{k,k}$ used a piecewise polynomial basis and followed the 'ten points per wavelength' convention.)

The numerical range of $A'_{k,k}$ for $k = 4$ and 5, when Ω_- is the trapping domain shown in Figure 5.3, is shown in Figure 5.4. These wavenumbers were chosen because $k = 5$ is the first of the sequence of wavenumbers for which quasimodes of the exterior Helmholtz problem in this domain can be constructed, with a corresponding resonance in the lower half-plane close to the real axis (recall the discussion in Section 5.6.2). Although $A'_{k,k}$ is invertible for every $k > 0$. Figure 5.4 shows that $A'_{5,5}$ is not coercive,

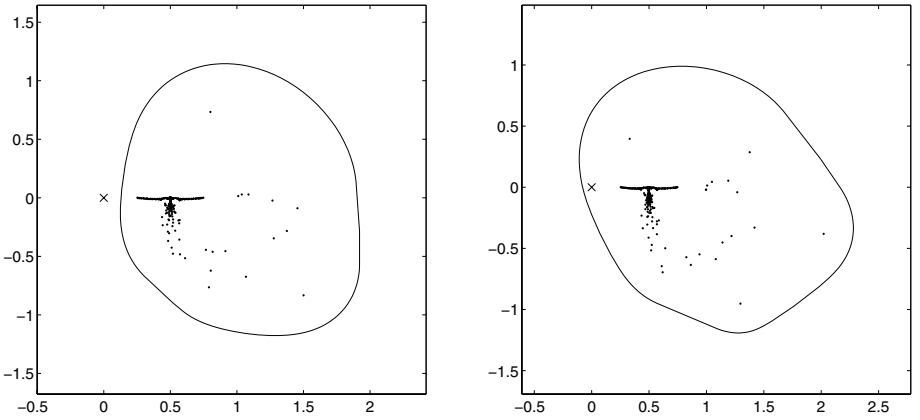


Figure 5.4. The numerical range of $A'_{k,k}$ when Ω_- is the trapping domain from Figure 5.3 in the cases $k = 4$ (a) and $k = 5$ (b), where $\times$ marks the origin.

whereas $A'_{4,4}$ is. Thus, not only is $A'_{k,k}$ not uniformly coercive as $k \to \infty$, as shown by (5.43), but it is not coercive for at least one finite value of k.

Interestingly, the spectra of $A'_{k,k}$ for $k = 4$ and 5 are almost the same, and in particular are both contained in the right half-plane. This illustrates the fact that the spectrum does not determine the behaviour of non-normal operators, as explained in more detail in Trefethen and Embree (2005).

We now discuss two theorems about coercivity; the first regarding $A'_{k,\eta}$, and the second regarding the star-combined operator $\mathscr{A}_k$ defined in (2.103). The first theorem says that, with a choice of η proportional to k, $A'_{k,\eta}$ is coercive on smooth convex domains once k is large enough.

Theorem 5.25. (Spence *et al.* 2012) Let Ω_- be a strictly convex C^3 domain with strictly positive curvature in either 2D or 3D. Then there exists a constant η_0 such that, given $\delta > 0$, there exists $k_0 > 0$ (depending on δ) such that, for $\eta = \eta_0 k$ and $k \geq k_0$,

$$\operatorname{Re}\,(A'_{k,\eta}\phi, \phi)_{L^2(\Gamma)} \geq \left(\frac{1}{2} - \delta\right)\|\phi\|^2_{L^2(\Gamma)}, \tag{5.44}$$

for all $\phi \in L^2(\Gamma)$. This bound also holds with $A'_{k,\eta}$ replaced by $A_{k,\eta}$.

This result essentially includes the earlier results of Domínguez *et al.* (2007) for the circle and sphere, as special cases.

The second theorem shows that, when Ω_- is star-shaped, if we are prepared to use the star-combined operator $\mathscr{A}_k$, which is a slight modification of $A'_{k,\eta}$ (as discussed in Section 2.9), coercivity holds uniformly for all $k > 0$ with only the requirement that Γ is Lipschitz.

Theorem 5.26. (Spence *et al.* 2011) Suppose that Ω_- is a bounded Lipschitz domain that is star-shaped with respect to the origin. Then, for all $\phi \in L^2(\Gamma)$,

$$\mathrm{Re}\,(\mathscr{A}_k\phi,\phi)_{L^2(\Gamma)} \geq \alpha\|\phi\|^2_{L^2(\Gamma)}, \tag{5.45}$$

where the star-combined operator $\mathscr{A}_k$ is given by

$$\mathscr{A}_k = (x\cdot n)\left(\frac{1}{2}I + D'_k\right) + x\cdot\nabla_\Gamma S_k - \mathrm{i}\eta S_k \tag{5.46}$$

with the function η chosen as

$$\eta = k|x| + \mathrm{i}\frac{d-1}{2}, \tag{5.47}$$

and the k-independent coercivity constant α is given by

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{2}\operatorname*{ess\,inf}_{x\in\Gamma}(x\cdot n(x)) > 0. \tag{5.48}$$

Note that Theorem 2.37 (about the invertibility of $\mathscr{A}_k$) follows from (5.45) using the analogue of (5.27) (with $A'_{k,\eta}$ replaced by $\mathscr{A}_k$).

These two theorems were proved using Rellich–Morawetz-type identities and the ideas in Section 5.3.3. Proving that $A'_{k,\eta}$, or some modified version of $A'_{k,\eta}$, is coercive is still open in the general non-trapping case.

6. Error analysis

In this section we return to the problem of proving, explicitly in k, the convergence of various boundary element methods for the Helmholtz equation. The key first step in doing this is to obtain the quasi-optimal error estimate (1.7) with explicit estimates for C and N_0 in terms of k (**Q3** of the Introduction). Then k-explicit convergence rates are obtained by estimating the best approximation error $\inf_{w_n\in\mathcal{V}_N}\|v-w_N\|$ explicitly in k (recall that for a function $w\in L^2(\Gamma)$, $\|w\|$ denotes $\|w\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}$ unless otherwise specified). We discuss this question for the direct and indirect combined potential equations and the star-combined equation, namely

$$A_{k,\eta}v := \left(\frac{1}{2}I + D_k - \mathrm{i}\eta S_k\right)v = f, \tag{6.1}$$

$$A'_{k,\eta}v := \left(\frac{1}{2}I + D'_k - \mathrm{i}\eta S_k\right)v = f, \tag{6.2}$$

(for real $\eta\neq 0$), and

$$\mathscr{A}_k v := (x\cdot n)\left(\frac{1}{2}I + D'_k\right)v + x\cdot\nabla_\Gamma S_k v - \mathrm{i}\eta S_k v = f, \tag{6.3}$$

where η is the smooth function of $x \in \Gamma$ given by (2.102). These equations are well-posed in $L^2(\Gamma)$; see Theorems 2.27 and 2.37. Specifically, this section contains the following.

- For general piecewise polynomial Galerkin methods, k-explicit quasi-optimality results for (6.1) and (6.2) on smooth (but otherwise general) boundaries Γ are given in Sections 6.1 and 6.3. In addition a k-explicit estimate of the best approximation error $\inf_{w_n \in \mathcal{V}_N} \|v - w_N\|$ for a particular class of boundaries Γ in the case of the sound-soft scattering problem (2.16) is given in Section 6.2.
- For a range of hybrid Galerkin methods taken from those discussed in Section 3, k-explicit quasi-optimality and convergence estimates are given in Section 6.4.

For second-kind integral equations such as (6.2) and (6.1), there are several classical approaches to error analysis, all based on viewing the integral operator as a compact k-dependent perturbation of a well-posed k-independent operator. The classical choice for the latter operator is $\frac{1}{2}I$, although a different choice is made in Löhndorf and Melenk (2011): see Section 6.3. The abstract theory of projection methods (*e.g.*, Atkinson 1997) then provides an error analysis, which covers not only the Galerkin method but also collocation and even Nyström methods. Another (closely related) classical approach is via the general variational theory of Galerkin methods, based on the discrete inf-sup condition. Here approximations such as collocation can be treated through an application of the Strang lemma (Ciarlet 2002). Up until recently, neither of these classical approaches has easily lent itself to explicit estimation of C and N_0 in (1.7) in terms of k, so recent research has had to develop new ideas for this task. A recent contribution is Banjai and Sauter (2007), along with the already-mentioned Löhndorf and Melenk (2011). In earlier work, for the particular integral equation (3.30) studied in Section 3.2, a complete k-explicit error analysis was developed in Chandler-Wilde *et al.* (2002) for a simple h-version piecewise-polynomial discrete collocation method, in particular showing that (1.7) holds with C independent of k, provided that kh is below some threshold.

In Section 6.1 we discuss the application of the classical projection analysis for general smooth Γ and for the h-version BEM in 2D and 3D following Graham, Löhndorf, Melenk and Spence (2012). In this analysis, not only must the mesh diameter h decrease with some negative power of k to ensure that the Galerkin equations are solvable ('mesh threshold'), but also C in (1.7) may grow with k. The key ingredients for this theory are bounds on the inverse of $A_{k,\eta}$ (respectively $A'_{k,\eta}$) given in Theorem 5.22 and estimates for the smoothing properties of the compact parts of $A_{k,\eta}$, $A'_{k,\eta}$ as mappings from $L^2(\Gamma)$ to $H^1(\Gamma)$ given in Theorem 5.15. At the end of Section 6.1,

we compare the results obtained for the h-version BEM via the projection analysis with those obtained using the Galerkin variational framework in Banjai and Sauter (2007). In Section 6.2 we combine the quasi-optimal error estimate from Section 6.1 with an estimate of the best approximation error to obtain a convergence rate for a special case of (6.2) approximated with a low-order BEM.

The standard piecewise polynomial methods considered in Sections 6.1, 6.2 and 6.3 are not 'high-frequency' methods since they use only conventional piecewise polynomial basis functions, and the particular character of these basis functions is heavily exploited in the analysis. Nevertheless the derivation of k-explicit error estimates for such methods is a topic of recent research interest so it has a natural place in this review. In this case, the highly oscillatory nature of the solution means that the mesh diameter must decrease with increasing k. The general convention is that

$$h \lesssim k^{-1} \tag{6.4}$$

(*i.e.*, a fixed number of grid points per wavelength) should be sufficient for adequate approximation of the solution. While the analysis of Section 6.1 suggests that a somewhat smaller h is required for quasi-optimality (1.7) to hold independently of k, the example in Section 6.2 proves that (6.4) is indeed sufficient for accurate best approximation in the special case of scattering from a smooth convex obstacle, using low-order conventional BEM.

In Section 6.3 we give an overview of the substantial progress made in Melenk (2012) and Löhndorf and Melenk (2011), concerning the analysis of *hp*-BEM (*i.e.*, boundary elements of order p on meshes of diameter h, with refinement in both h and p allowed). This theory provides sufficient conditions that ensure (1.7) holds, with C independent of k, for general analytic boundaries Γ. These conditions are satisfied if, for example, hk/p is sufficiently small and p grows logarithmically in k.

An alternative and very powerful way to obtain quasi-optimality is to establish the (rather strong) property of coercivity for the relevant boundary integral operator. Despite the fact that the Helmholtz equation with high wavenumber is typically viewed as highly indefinite, some corresponding boundary integral formulations have remarkable coercivity properties, as discussed in Section 5.7. These allow us to establish quasi-optimality for Galerkin methods using *any* approximating subspace without a mesh threshold and would provide alternative proofs of quasi-optimality for h- or *hp*-BEM. However, more importantly for this article, this approach gives us the only currently known way of establishing quasi-optimality for the hybrid methods introduced in Section 3. This error analysis for hybrid spaces is discussed in Section 6.4.

The error analysis of this section assumes that all (highly oscillatory) Galerkin integrals are computed exactly. Estimates for fully discrete Galerkin

methods which combine results of this section with some of the quadrature error estimates from Section 4 to provide rigorous fully discrete error estimates for some hybrid methods are presented in Kim (2012).

Concerning notation in this section, for the h-version BEM (where the polynomial degree p of the basis functions is fixed), the approximating space is denoted by $\mathcal{V}_h$, while for the hp version, we denote it by $\mathcal{V}_{h,p}$. We do not give a formal definition of such families of spaces here, but refer the reader for example to Sauter and Schwab (2011, §4.1) or Löhndorf and Melenk (2011, §3.3). We implicitly assume that the meshes are quasi-uniform and that exact representation of Γ is used. Since we work in $L^2(\Gamma)$, our boundary element spaces may be either continuous or discontinuous piecewise polynomials. In Section 6.4 we will be concerned with hybrid spaces, which in general depend on piecewise polynomials of various degrees and also on k. In this case the relevant spaces, already described in detail in Section 3, will be denoted in the abstract way as $\mathcal{V}_N$. Similar to Sections 3 and 5, for two quantities D and E which may depend on h, p, and k, in this section we write $D \lesssim E$ if $D \leq C\,E$ for some constant C which is independent of h, p, and k (hence C is also independent of N, the dimension of $\mathcal{V}_N$). Also we write $D \sim E$ if $D \lesssim E$ and $E \lesssim D$.

6.1. k-explicit error estimates for the h-version of the BEM

In this subsection we write the combined potential operators on the left-hand side of (6.2) and (6.1) in abstract form as $\lambda I + L_k$, where $\lambda = 1/2$. We also make the assumption that $\eta \in \mathbb{R}$ is chosen so that

$$C^{-1} \leq \eta/k \leq C \tag{6.5}$$

for some constant $C > 0$, and the parameter η does not appear explicitly in the abstract notation L_k. Thus, in abstract form, we are solving the equation

$$(\lambda I + L_k)v = f. \tag{6.6}$$

Recall that since $\lambda I + L_k$ denotes one of the operators $A_{k,\eta}$, $A'_{k,\eta}$ defined by (6.1) and (6.2) this operator is always invertible on $L^2(\Gamma)$ when Γ is Lipschitz; see Theorem 2.27. Moreover, the bounds on $\|A_{k,\eta}^{-1}\|$ presented in Theorem 5.22 are a key ingredient to the theory below.

Now let us consider the h version of the Galerkin method, that is, we seek an approximation $v_h \in \mathcal{V}_h$, $\subset L^2(\Gamma)$, the space of piecewise polynomials of some fixed degree $p \geq 0$ on shape-regular meshes of diameter h, with h decreasing to zero. The Galerkin equations may be written

$$\big((\lambda I + L_k)v_h, w_h\big) = \big(f, w_h\big), \quad \text{for all } w_h \in \mathcal{V}_h. \tag{6.7}$$

With P_h being the orthogonal projection from $L^2(\Gamma)$ onto $\mathcal{V}_h$, the Galerkin

equations (6.7) are equivalent to the operator equation

$$\big(\lambda I + P_h L_k\big) v_h = P_h f. \tag{6.8}$$

We begin with a simple classical lemma.

Lemma 6.1. Suppose for some $\delta > 0$,

$$\|(I - P_h)L_k\|\|(\lambda I + L_k)^{-1}\| \le \frac{\delta}{1+\delta}. \tag{6.9}$$

Then the Galerkin equations have a unique solution and satisfy the quasi-optimal error estimate

$$\|v - v_h\| \le \lambda(1+\delta)\|(\lambda I + L_k)^{-1}\| \inf_{w_h \in \mathcal{V}_h} \|v - w_h\|. \tag{6.10}$$

Proof. Since $\delta > 0$, the hypothesis implies that

$$\|I - (\lambda I + L_k)^{-1}(\lambda I + P_h L_k)\| \le \left(\frac{\delta}{1+\delta}\right) < 1.$$

Using the fact that $(I - A)$ is invertible if $\|A\| < 1$ (with $\|(I-A)^{-1}\| \le (1 - \|A\|)^{-1}$), the previous bound implies that $(\lambda I + L_k)^{-1}(\lambda I + P_h L_k)$ is invertible, with

$$\|(\lambda I + P_h L_k)^{-1}(\lambda I + L_k)\| \le \frac{1}{1 - \delta/(1+\delta)} = 1 + \delta.$$

Thus $(\lambda I + P_h L_k)$ is invertible and

$$\|(\lambda I + P_h L_k)^{-1}\| \le (1+\delta)\|(\lambda I + L_k)^{-1}\|.$$

Since we also have

$$\begin{aligned} v - v_h &= v - (\lambda I + P_h L_k)^{-1} P_h f \\ &= (\lambda I + P_h L_k)^{-1}(\lambda v - P_h(f - L_k v)) \\ &= \lambda\big(\lambda I + P_h L_k\big)^{-1}(I - P_h)v, \end{aligned}$$

the required estimate (6.10) follows readily. □

The following corollary is the consequence of Lemma 6.1 when we have at our disposal an estimate of the smoothing power of L_k.

Corollary 6.2. Suppose

$$N(k) := \|L_k\|_{H^1(\Gamma) \leftarrow L^2(\Gamma)} < \infty. \tag{6.11}$$

Then, for all $\delta > 0$ there exists $C_\delta > 0$ such that the condition

$$hN(k)\|(\lambda I + L_k)^{-1}\| \le C_\delta \tag{6.12}$$

is sufficient to ensure that the quasi-optimal estimate (6.10) holds.

Proof. By standard approximation theory (see, for example Sauter and Schwab (2011, §§4.3.4, 4.3.5)),

$$\|(I - P_h)L_k\| \lesssim h\, N(k), \tag{6.13}$$

and so the result then follows from Lemma 6.1 (with C_δ taken to be $\delta/(1+\delta)$ multiplied by the hidden constant in (6.13)). □

While Lemma 6.1 and Corollary 6.2 provide general criteria which ensure that the quasi-optimality estimate (6.10) holds, a bit more work is needed to obtain k-explicit requirements on h. Combining Theorems 5.14 and 5.15 from Section 5.5 and recalling the choice (6.5) of η, we see that for $s \in [0,1]$, and provided $C^{2,\mu}$, for some $\mu \in (0,1)$, then for all $k_0 > 0$

$$\|L_k v\|_s \lesssim k^{\beta_d + s}\|v\|, \quad \text{where } \beta_d = (d-1)/2, \tag{6.14}$$

for $k \geq k_0$ where $\|\cdot\|_s$ denotes the norm in $H^s(\Gamma)$. (Theorem 5.14 gives this estimate for $s = 0$, Theorem 5.15 gives it for $s = 1$, and the case of $s \in (0,1)$ follows by interpolation.) Using this estimate with $s = 1$, we obtain directly the following result that quantifies the mesh threshold required for quasi-optimality.

Theorem 6.3. Suppose that (6.14) holds for $s = 1$. Then, for each $\delta > 0$ there exists $C_\delta > 0$ (independent of h and k) such that the condition

$$h \leq C_\delta\, k^{-(\beta_d+1)}\|(\lambda I + L_k)^{-1}\|^{-1} \tag{6.15}$$

ensures that the Galerkin equations have a unique solution satisfying the quasi-optimality estimate (6.10).

Remark 6.4. For star-shaped domains, Theorem 5.22 gives us the upper bound $\|(\lambda I + L_k)^{-1}\| \lesssim 1$, and combining this with Theorem 6.3 immediately shows that the quasi-optimality estimate (6.10) holds for star-shaped $C^{2,\mu}$ domains provided $h \lesssim k^{-3/2}$ in 2D, and provided $h \lesssim k^{-2}$ in 3D. While these requirements are somewhat stronger than the convention (6.4), they are sufficient to ensure that quasi-optimality holds with the constant in front of the best approximation error in (6.10) independent of k, at least for these domains.

In fact, as we shall now show, with a bit more work and with an additional assumption, one can sharpen the quasi-optimality estimate (6.10) to show that the Galerkin solution is asymptotically just as good as the best possible approximation to v from $\mathcal{V}_h$, that is, we shall show that

$$\frac{\|v - v_h\|}{\inf_{w_h \in \mathcal{V}_h}\|v - w_h\|} \to 1 \quad \text{as } h \to 0. \tag{6.16}$$

Theorem 6.5. Suppose (6.11) holds, and suppose also that

$$M(k) := \|(\lambda I + L_k^*)^{-1} L_k\|_{H^1(\Gamma) \leftarrow L^2(\Gamma)} < \infty, \tag{6.17}$$

where L_k^* is the adjoint of L_k. Then the condition (6.12) is sufficient to ensure that the Galerkin equations have a unique solution, and furthermore there exists a C_0 independent of h and k such that if

$$C_0\, h\, C(k) \leq 1 \tag{6.18}$$

where

$$C(k) = N(k) + (\lambda + \|L_k\|)M(k),$$

then

$$\inf_{w_h \in \mathcal{V}_h} \|v - w_h\| \leq \|v - v_h\| \leq [1 + C_0\, h\, C(k)] \inf_{w_h \in \mathcal{V}_h} \|v - w_h\|. \tag{6.19}$$

Proof. If we apply P_h to (6.6) and subtract the resulting equation from (6.8), we obtain

$$\lambda(v_h - P_h v) = P_h L_k (v - v_h). \tag{6.20}$$

Then, writing

$$\|v - v_h\|^2 = (v - v_h, v - P_h v) + (v - v_h, P_h v - v_h), \tag{6.21}$$

we essentially now have to show that the second term on the right-hand side goes to zero more quickly than $\|v - v_h\|^2$. This is done by taking the inner product of (6.20) with $v - v_h$ to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda(v - v_h, P_h v - v_h) &= -(v - v_h, P_h L_k (v - v_h)) \\ &= (v - v_h, (I - P_h) L_k (v - v_h)) \\ &\quad - (v - v_h, L_k (v - v_h)). \end{aligned} \tag{6.22}$$

Using Cauchy–Schwarz and (6.13), the first term on the right-hand side of (6.22) may be estimated as

$$|(v - v_h, (I - P_h) L_k (v - v_h))| \lesssim h\, N(k)\, \|v - v_h\|^2. \tag{6.23}$$

The second term on the right-hand side of (6.22) may be rewritten as

$$\begin{aligned} (v - v_h, L_k (v - v_h)) &= ((\lambda I + L_k)^{-1} (\lambda I + L_k)(v - v_h), L_k (v - v_h)) \\ &= ((\lambda I + L_k)(v - v_h), (\lambda I + L_k^*)^{-1} L_k (v - v_h)) \\ &= ((\lambda I + L_k)(v - v_h), (I - P_h)(\lambda I + L_k^*)^{-1} L_k (v - v_h)), \end{aligned}$$

where the last line uses Galerkin orthogonality (6.20), that is, $P_h(\lambda I + L_k)(v - v_h) = 0$. (This is the classical 'superconvergence argument' for second-kind integral equations; see, *e.g.*, Chandler 1980.) Hence, using Cauchy–Schwarz and (6.13) again, we have

$$|(v - v_h, L_k (v - v_h))| \lesssim h\, (\lambda + \|L_k\|)\, M(k)\, \|v - v_h\|^2. \tag{6.24}$$

Thus, using (6.23) and (6.24) in (6.22) and using the definition of $C(k)$, we obtain

$$|(v - v_h, P_h v - v_h)| \lesssim hC(k) \|v - v_h\|^2.$$

Finally, combining this with (6.21) and using Cauchy–Schwarz, we obtain

$$\big(1 - (C_0/2)C(k)h\big) \|v - v_h\| \lesssim \|v - P_h v\|,$$

for some constant C_0. If the threshold (6.18) holds then this yields the result (6.19). □

We now investigate how $C(k)$ in the condition (6.18) depends on k. For simplicity we assume that Γ is $C^{2,\mu}$ for some $\mu \in (0,1)$, and thus the bound (6.14) holds. In this case the condition (6.12) for existence and uniqueness of a solution to the Galerkin equations is contained within the condition (6.15).

For a bound on the k-dependence of $C(k)$ we need to bound $M(k)$. This is possible using the bounds on $\|(\lambda I + L_k)^{-1}\|$ (and thus on $\|(\lambda I + L_k^*)^{-1}\|$), but the resulting bounds on $M(k)$ are unlikely to be sharp. For example in the case Γ is star-shaped (so $\|(\lambda I + L_k)^{-1}\| \lesssim 1$), consider u and g related by

$$(\lambda I + L_k^*)^{-1} L_k u = g.$$

Then $(\lambda I + L_k^*)g = L_k u$ and $\lambda \|g\|_1 \lesssim k^{\beta_d+1}\big(\|g\| + \|u\|\big)$. Moreover, $\|g\| \lesssim \|L_k u\| \lesssim k^{\beta_d}\|u\|$, and so

$$M(k) \lesssim k^{2\beta_d+1}.$$

Thus, using (6.11) and (6.14), $C(k) \lesssim k^{3\beta_d+1}$ and the condition (6.18) becomes

$$hk^{3\beta_d+1} \lesssim 1,$$

that is, $hk^{5/2} \lesssim 1$ in 2D, and $hk^4 \lesssim 1$ in 3D. Finally, we can obtain conditions under which we have asymptotic optimality, *i.e.*, (6.16): from the estimate (6.16) we see this is the case if $hC(k) \to 0$ as $k \to \infty$.

In summary, the standard projection method argument shows that under the mesh threshold (6.15), that is, $hk^{3/2} \lesssim 1$ in 2D and $hk^2 \lesssim 1$ in 3D, we have quasi-optimality with C in (1.7) independent of k for $C^{2,\mu}$ star-shaped domains. The superconvergence argument shows us that, under the stronger conditions that h decreases faster than $k^{-5/2}$ in 2D (*i.e.*, $hk^{5/2} = o(1)$ as $k \to \infty$) and k^{-4} in 3D, (6.16) holds.

We now discuss the relation of the above results to the error analysis of Banjai and Sauter (2007), which is obtained using the variational approach. In particular, Corollary 3.3 of that reference proves that, in the case of piecewise constant BEM (*i.e.*, the approximating space is $\mathcal{V}_h$ with

polynomial degree $p = 0$), the Galerkin equations have a unique solution and satisfy the error estimate

$$\|v - v_h\| \lesssim C_c \inf_{w_h \in \mathcal{V}_h} \|v - w_h\|, \tag{6.25}$$

provided that

$$h\, C_c M(k) \text{ is sufficiently small.} \tag{6.26}$$

Here $M(k)$ is defined by (6.17) and C_c is the continuity constant of the sesquilinear form induced by $\lambda I + L_k$, so that

$$|((\lambda I + L_k)u, w)| \leq C_c \|u\| \, \|w\|. \tag{6.27}$$

Using (6.14) in the case $s = 0$, to bound C_c, we obtain from the results of Banjai and Sauter (2007) that

$$\|v - v_h\| \lesssim k^{\beta_d} \inf_{w_h \in \mathcal{V}_h} \|v - w_h\|, \tag{6.28}$$

provided

$$hk^{\beta_d} M(k) \text{ is sufficiently small.}$$

This can be compared to the conclusion of Remark 6.4 which says that if Γ is $C^{2,\mu}$ with $\mu \in (0, 1)$ (so that Theorem 6.3 holds) and star-shaped (so that $\|(\lambda I + L_k)^{-1}\| \lesssim 1$) then

$$\|v - v_h\| \lesssim \inf_{w_h \in \mathcal{V}_{h,p}} \|v - w_h\| \quad \text{provided } h \lesssim k^{-(\beta_d + 1)}. \tag{6.29}$$

An additional result in Banjai and Sauter (2007) is that, when Γ is the unit sphere, and with the choice $\eta \sim k^{2/3}$, it turns out that $\|L_k\| \lesssim 1$ (see Theorem 5.12 above), and hence $C_c \lesssim 1$ with this choice of η. Banjai and Sauter (2007) then made the additional assumption (backed up by some numerical evidence) that, for the unit sphere and with this choice of η,

$$M(k) \lesssim k \tag{6.30}$$

(where $M(k)$ is defined in (6.17)). Under this assumption, the stronger estimate

$$\|v - v_h\| \lesssim \inf_{w_h \in \mathcal{V}_h} \|v - w_h\| \quad \text{provided } hk \lesssim 1 \tag{6.31}$$

follows from (6.25) and (6.26). However, it is not clear if (6.30) holds.

If (6.31) holds, then the h-version BEM could be described as not suffering from the so-called 'pollution effect', a phenomenon widely studied in a finite element context; see, for example, Babuška and Sauter (2000). For h-version finite element methods the pollution effect has the consequence that the number of degrees of freedom per wavelength must increase as k increases, to maintain accuracy of the finite element solution. However, this effect can disappear when hp refinement is carefully applied; see, for example,

Ainsworth and Wajid (2010) and Melenk and Sauter (2011). Analogously, although the property (6.31) has not yet been proved to hold for the h-BEM, its analogue has recently been proved for the hp-BEM in Löhndorf and Melenk (2011) (that is, they proved that quasi-optimality, with a constant independent of k, holds for the hp-BEM provided the number of degrees of freedom per wavelength is above a certain threshold). We discuss this work in Section 6.3.

6.2. Best approximation error with piecewise polynomials in a particular case

To convert the quasi-optimality property (1.7) into an estimate of the convergence rate for the Galerkin solution, we need to estimate the best approximation error appearing on the right-hand side of (1.7). As discussed above, the convention for ensuring this approximation error is suitably controlled is that h should satisfy (6.4). If $\mathcal{V}_h$ denotes a space of piecewise polynomials of fixed degree p, an estimate which would justify this convention would be

$$\inf_{w_h \in \mathcal{V}_h} \|v - w_h\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \lesssim (hk)^{p+1} \|v\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}, \tag{6.32}$$

for sufficiently large k. In the following lemma we show that, in a relevant special case, (6.32) does indeed hold.

Lemma 6.6. Suppose Ω_- is a 2D strictly convex domain with C^∞ boundary Γ and strictly positive curvature. Suppose that u is the solution of the sound-soft scattering problem (2.16) and $v = \partial u/\partial n$. Then, for all fixed $\eta \in \mathbb{R}\backslash\{0\}$, (6.32) holds for $p = 0$.

Proof. We use the standard approximation result that

$$\inf_{w \in \mathcal{V}_h} \|v - w\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \lesssim h \|v\|_{H^1(\Gamma)} \tag{6.33}$$

and seek a k-explicit estimate on $\|v\|_{H^1(\Gamma)}$.

Domínguez *et al.* (2007, Theorem 5.4, Corollary 5.5) have proved that there exists $k_0 > 0$ such that, for all $k \geq k_0$,

$$v(x) = k\, V(x,k)\, \exp(\mathrm{i}kx \cdot \hat{a}), \tag{6.34}$$

where (see also Theorem 3.5 above), V satisfies

$$\|V(\cdot,k)\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \lesssim 1 \quad \text{and} \quad \|\nabla_\Gamma V(\cdot,k)\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \lesssim 1.$$

Now, since $v = \partial u/\partial n$, v also satisfies the integral equation (1.5) with $\eta = 0$ and f given by (1.4), that is,

$$\left(\frac{1}{2} I + D_k'\right) v = \frac{\partial u^I}{\partial n} = \mathrm{i}k\, (n \cdot \hat{a})\, \exp(\mathrm{i}kx \cdot \hat{a}).$$

Now, using Theorem 5.14,

$$(1+k^{1/2})\|v\| \gtrsim \left\| \left(\frac{1}{2} I + D_k' \right) v \right\| = \|f\| = k\|n \cdot \hat{a}\|.$$

Since $n \cdot \hat{a}$ does not vanish identically on Γ, we then have $\|v\| \gtrsim k^{1/2}$. (Note that, for Γ a circle or sphere, this argument gives the stronger bound $\|v\| \gtrsim k$ provided we use the bound on $\|D_k'\|$ in (5.25).)

Now, differentiating (6.34), we obtain

$$\nabla_\Gamma v(x) = k\big(\mathrm{i}v(x)(\hat{a} - (\hat{a}\cdot n)n) + \nabla_\Gamma V(x,k)\exp(\mathrm{i}kx\cdot\hat{a})\big),$$

and thus

$$|v|_{H^1(\Gamma)} \leq k\big(\|v\| + \|\nabla_\Gamma V(\cdot,k)\|\big).$$

Since the first term on the right-hand side grows like $k^{1/2}$ and the second term is bounded in k, it follows that $|v|_{H^1(\Gamma)} \lesssim k\|v\|$ for sufficiently large k, and the result follows on combination of this with (6.33). □

Whereas the previous lemma used asymptotic results about the solution of the sound-soft scattering problem to prove (6.32) for a specific Γ, it is possible to prove a weaker version of (6.32) for much more general Γ using only the fact that $v = \partial u/\partial n$ solves the integral equation (6.2), with f given by (1.4), and the bounds of Theorem 5.15.

Lemma 6.7. (Graham *et al.* 2012) Let $v = \partial u/\partial n$, where u is the solution to the sound-soft scattering problem (2.16) (so v satisfies (6.2) with f given by (1.4); see also (2.114)). If Γ is $C^{2,\mu}$, for some $\mu \in (0,1)$, then for all $k_0 > 0$,

$$\inf_{w_h \in \mathcal{V}_h} \|v - w_h\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \lesssim hk^{(d+1)/2}\|v\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \tag{6.35}$$

for all $k \geq k_0$.

The proof of this lemma bounds $\|v\|_{H^1(\Gamma)}$ by $\|v\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}$ using only the second-kind structure of the integral equation (6.2) and the $L^2(\Gamma) \to H^1(\Gamma)$ bounds on D_k' and S_k in Theorem 5.15 (see Graham *et al.* 2012 for the details). Thus this method also gives an analogous result for the *indirect* integral equation (6.1), even though the physical meaning of its solution is much less clear than for the direct equation (as discussed after Theorem 2.33).

Lemma 6.8. (Graham *et al.* 2012) Let v be the solution to the indirect boundary integral equation (6.1) with $f = -u^I$ (thus from (2.71) the scattered field u^S is then equal to $(\mathcal{D}_k - \mathrm{i}\eta\mathcal{S}_k)v$). If Γ is $C^{2,\mu}$, for some $\mu \in (0,1)$, then for all $k_0 > 0$,

$$\inf_{w_h \in \mathcal{V}_h} \|v - w_h\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \lesssim hk^{(d+1)/2}\|v\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \tag{6.36}$$

for all $k \geq k_0$.

At first sight it may appear strange that the bounds (6.35) and (6.36) hold for *all* (sufficiently smooth) domains, without any consideration of trapping or non-trapping (which, as we saw in Section 5, can affect the conditioning substantially). However, as mentioned above, all these bounds do is estimate $\|v\|_{H^1(\Gamma)}$ by $\|v\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}$, with no information about how large the latter may be (when Ω_- is star-shaped we know $\|v\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}$ is bounded polynomially in k by Theorem 5.22, whereas for certain trapping domains it is exponentially large by Theorem 5.24).

6.3. Recent results of Löhndorf and Melenk

Considerable progress on k-explicit error analysis for (6.1) and (6.2) was recently made by Löhndorf and Melenk (2011), who explore conditions under which the quasi-optimality estimate

$$\|u - u_h\| \leq C \inf_{v_h \in \mathcal{V}_{h,p}} \|u - v_h\| \tag{6.37}$$

holds with C independent of h, p and k, where the approximating space in the Galerkin method is the space $\mathcal{V}_{h,p}$, of piecewise polynomials of degree p on a quasi-uniform mesh of diameter h, and refinement with respect to both h and p is allowed.

To give an example of the results in Löhndorf and Melenk (2011), let us restrict to the indirect boundary integral equation (6.1), and assume that

$$\|(A^*_{k,\eta})^{-1}\| \lesssim 1 \tag{6.38}$$

(as holds, for example, for Lipschitz star-shaped domains by combining Theorem 5.22 with equation (2.65) and the remarks following it). Then a main result (namely Theorem 3.17) in Löhndorf and Melenk (2011) proves that for analytic surfaces Γ, there exist $C, \epsilon, \sigma > 0$ independent of h, p and k such that, provided

$$\left(\frac{h}{\sigma + h}\right)^{p+1} + \left(\frac{kh}{\sigma p}\right)^{p+1} \leq \epsilon k^{-5}, \tag{6.39}$$

then (6.37) holds with C independent of h, p and k.

Because of the superalgebraic convergence with respect to p on the left-hand side of (6.39), it is fairly straightforward to see that condition (6.39) is satisfied and thus quasi-optimality (without pollution) is obtained if

$$\frac{kh}{p} \lesssim 1 \quad \text{and} \quad p \gtrsim \log k. \tag{6.40}$$

Note that this mesh threshold condition is much less stringent than that which had to be imposed in the analysis of the standard h version in the previous subsection. For example, Theorem 6.3 requires $hk^{3/2}$ (respectively hk^2) to be sufficiently small in 2D (respectively 3D) for quasi-optimality to

be guaranteed in the case when $\|A_{k,\eta}^{-1}\| \lesssim 1$. Moreover, it is additionally shown in Löhndorf and Melenk (2011) that the modest conditions on h and p in (6.40) remain sufficient for (6.37), even if the right-hand side of (6.38) is allowed to grow in k with polynomial order. (Such growth occurs, for example, in a range of 'trapping' domains: see Section 5.6.2.) Analogous results also hold for the hp-BEM applied to the direct formulation (6.2).

The proof that (6.39) implies (6.37) has required the development in Löhndorf and Melenk (2011) and Melenk (2012) of substantial new technical tools for the Helmholtz equation. We only attempt a brief overview of these tools here.

The first step in the proof of (6.37) is to make a decomposition of the operator $A_{k,\eta}$ in (6.1) in the form

$$A_{k,\eta} = \left(\frac{1}{2}I + D_0 + \mathrm{i}S_0\right) + R_k + k[\mathcal{A}_k]. \tag{6.41}$$

The k-independent first term (in round brackets) has a bounded inverse in $L^2(\Gamma)$. The second term R_k satisfies the estimates

$$\|R_k\|_{H^1(\Gamma)\leftarrow L^2(\Gamma)} \lesssim k \quad \text{and} \quad \|R_k\|_{L^2(\Gamma)\leftarrow L^2(\Gamma)} \leq q, \tag{6.42}$$

where $q \in (0,1)$ may be chosen as small as we like. (Recalling (6.14), the norm of the compact part of $A_{k,\eta}$ from $L^2(\Gamma)$ to $H^1(\Gamma)$ generally grows with order k^{β_d+1}, so the left-hand estimate in (6.42) gives a better rate of growth than this for R_k.)

In the third term in (6.41), $\mathcal{A}_k$ is an operator which maps $L^2(\Gamma)$ into functions which are analytic in a neighbourhood of the surface Γ, but may not be continuous across Γ, and $[\cdot]$ denotes the jump of such a function across Γ. (Recall that Γ is assumed analytic in this theory.) Decompositions such as this are discussed in depth in Melenk (2012), where an analogous decomposition is also presented for A_k^{-1}.

The second step in the proof that (6.39) implies (6.37) is to combine these decompositions with the variational theory of the Galerkin method for (6.2) to show (Löhndorf and Melenk 2011, Theorem 3.8) (recalling assumption (6.38)) that there exists a positive constant ϵ so that (6.37) holds provided

$$\xi(h,p,k) \leq k^{-7/2}\epsilon,$$

where (with a slight change of the notation in Löhndorf and Melenk 2011), $\xi(h,p,k)$ is a bound on the rate of convergence of hp approximation of $k[u]$ and $[\partial u/\partial n]$ over all u in a certain space of analytic functions defined on a neighbourhood of Γ. Note that the quantity which we have here denoted ξ is closely related to the quantities denoted $\eta_i, i = 1,2$ in Löhndorf and Melenk (2011).

Finally the result is obtained by estimating ξ using the technology for quantifying hp approximation of analytic functions. Löhndorf and Melenk

(2011, Lemma 3.16) have shown that provided kh/p is sufficiently small, then

$$\xi(h,p,k) \lesssim k^{3/2}\left\{\left(\frac{h}{\sigma+h}\right)^{p+1} + \left(\frac{kh}{\sigma p}\right)^{p+1}\right\}.$$

Thus the proof that (6.39) implies (6.37) follows.

To summarize, we note that in Section 6.1 the essential mechanism driving the analysis is that the operator L_k appearing in $\lambda I + L_k$ has a suitable smoothing property (here we just need a k-explicit bound on the norm of L_k, operating from $L^2(\Gamma)$ to $H^1(\Gamma)$). The procedure of Löhndorf and Melenk (2011) is structurally similar: the decomposition in (6.41) is one where $A_{k,\eta}$ is decomposed into an invertible operator plus an (extremely) smoothing one. Ultimately, it is this smoothing property that leads to the condition (6.39).

6.4. Error estimates for hybrid numerical-asymptotic methods

The methods used to prove stability and convergence in the previous two subsections are heavily dependent on the fact that the basis functions in the Galerkin method are piecewise polynomial. For example the standard error estimate for piecewise polynomials in (6.13) plays a crucial role in Corollary 6.2 and also in Theorem 6.5: see (6.24).

In this subsection we are primarily concerned with proving estimates for hybrid methods whose basis functions are not usually piecewise polynomial. To do this we revert to classical Galerkin estimates provided by Céa's lemma; this was stated in a rather general form as Lemma 2.48, and we restate it here for this particular case.

Lemma 6.9. (Céa's lemma) Suppose we have a problem which can be written in weak form as follows. Seek $v \in L^2(\Gamma)$ such that

$$a(v,w) = (f,w), \quad \text{for all } w \in L^2(\Gamma), \tag{6.43}$$

and assume that a satisfies the conditions

$$\text{boundedness} \quad |a(u,w)| \le B_k \|u\| \, \|w\|, \tag{6.44}$$

$$\text{coercivity} \quad |a(u,u)| \ge \alpha_k \|u\|^2, \tag{6.45}$$

for all $u, w \in L^2(\Gamma)$. Let $\mathcal{V}_N$ be any subspace of $L^2(\Gamma)$ (which may depend on discretization parameters such as h or p and also, possibly, on the wave number k). Then consider the following approximate problem. Seek $v_N \in \mathcal{V}_N$ such that

$$a(v_N, w_N) = (f, w_N), \quad \text{for all } w_N \in \mathcal{V}_N.$$

This problem has a unique solution v_N which satisfies the error estimate

$$\|v - v_N\| \le \left(\frac{B_k}{\alpha_k}\right) \inf_{w_N \in \mathcal{V}_N} \|v - w_N\|.$$

We will apply this lemma to the Galerkin formulation in $L^2(\Gamma)$ of the combined potential equations (6.1) and (6.2), that is, we consider the case where the bilinear form a in (6.43) is

$$a_{k,\eta}(u,w) := (A_{k,\eta}u, w), \quad \text{or} \quad a'_{k,\eta}(u,w) := (A'_{k,\eta}u, w). \tag{6.46}$$

Moreover, we shall consider also formulations based on the star-combined formulation (6.3), where a is

$$a_{k,*}(u,w) := (\mathscr{A}_k u, w). \tag{6.47}$$

Using the continuity and coercivity results of Sections 5.5 and 5.7, we can now give some theorems on quasi-optimality for the Galerkin method.

Theorem 6.10. Let Ω_- be a C^3 strictly convex domain with strictly positive curvature in 2D or 3D. Suppose the equation (6.43) is solved with $f \in L^2(\Gamma)$ and the bilinear form a taken to be either $a = a_{k,\eta}$, $a = a'_{k,\eta}$ or $a = a_{k,*}$. Then there exists an $\eta_0 > 0$ (independent of k) and a $k_0 > 0$ such that if $\eta = \eta_0 k$, then

$$\|v - v_N\| \lesssim k^{(d-1)/2} \inf_{w_N \in \mathcal{V}_N} \|v - w_N\|, \quad \text{for all } k \geq k_0 \text{ and for all } N.$$

Proof. By Theorem 5.25 there exists an η_0 independent of k such that the operators $A_{k,\eta}$ and $A'_{k,\eta}$ are coercive for $\eta = \eta_0 k$ and for all k greater than some k_0. In addition, Theorem 5.14 states that with this choice of η, $\|A_{k,\eta}\|$ and $\|A'_{k,\eta}\|$ are $O(k^{(d-1)/2})$; thus the result follows from Céa's lemma. □

Theorem 6.11. Let Ω_- be a Lipschitz star-shaped domain in 2D or 3D. If the equation (6.43) is solved with $a = a_{k,*}$, then for all $k > 0$ and all N

$$\|v - v_N\| \lesssim (1 + k^{(d-1)/2}) \inf_{w_N \in \mathcal{V}_N} \|v - w_N\|.$$

Proof. The proof follows from the uniform coercivity of the star-combined operator, given in Theorem 5.26, and the upper bound of $O(k^{(d-1)/2})$ on its norm given in (5.32). □

Combining the previous two theorems with the best approximation results in Section 3 we can prove a number of results on the convergence rates of the hybrid numerical-asymptotic methods discussed in Section 3. Some examples are given below.

Theorem 6.12. Let Ω_- be a smooth (C^∞) strictly convex domain with strictly positive curvature in 2D. Suppose that the sound-soft scattering problem (2.16) is solved with the Galerkin method using the standard combined potential formulation (2.114) and the hybrid approximation space defined in Section 3.1 (originally introduced in Domínguez *et al.* 2007). Let p denote the degree of the polynomials used in each of the three zones (so

p is proportional to the total number of degrees of freedom of the method), and let n be an integer with $6 \leq n \leq p+1$. Then there exist η_0, k_0, δ, and c_0, all greater than zero, such that, if the coupling parameter η is chosen to be $\eta = \eta_0 k$, then

$$\|v - v_N\| \lesssim k^{19/18} \left\{ \left(\frac{k^{1/9}}{p} \right)^n + k^{4/9} \exp(-c_0 k^\delta) \right\}, \tag{6.48}$$

for all $k \geq k_0$, where c_0 and δ only depend on Γ. Thus, provided p grows slightly faster than $O(k^{1/9})$, the error is bounded as $k \to \infty$.

In the following three theorems (all concerning polygons),

$$M(u) := \sup_{x \in \Omega_+} |u(x)|,$$

as in Theorem 3.9. As discussed below this theorem, the best currently available bound on $M(u)$ is that it is $O(k^{1/2} \log^{1/2} k)$ as $k \to \infty$, but numerical experiments suggest it is in fact $O(1)$. For this reason, the bounds in the following theorems will be explicit in $M(u)$. Regarding notation, in what follows N denotes the total number of degrees of freedom, p the degree of polynomial approximation on each element, and n_s the number of sides of the polygon (as in Sections 3.2–3.4).

Theorem 6.13. Let Ω_- be a convex polygon. Suppose that the sound-soft scattering problem (2.16) is solved with the Galerkin method using the star-combined potential formulation (6.47) and the hybrid approximation space defined in Section 3.3.1 (originally introduced in Chandler-Wilde and Langdon 2007). Then, with the same notation as in Theorem 3.11, we have that, for all $k_0 > 0$,

$$\|v - v_N\| \lesssim kM(u)(n_s \log(kL))^{1/2} \left(\frac{n_s \log(kL)}{N} \right)^{p+1}, \tag{6.49}$$

for all $k \geq k_0$.

Theorem 6.14. Let Ω_- be a convex polygon. Suppose that the sound-soft scattering problem (2.16) is solved with the Galerkin method using the star-combined potential formulation (6.47) and the *hp*-type hybrid approximation space defined in Section 3.3.4 (originally introduced in Hewett *et al.* 2012). Then there exists a $\tau > 0$ such that, for all $k_0 > 0$,

$$\|v - v_N\| \lesssim k^{3/2} M(u) \exp(-p\tau) \tag{6.50}$$

for all $k \geq k_0$. Thus, if p grows logarithmically with k then the error decays exponentially. (Note that this is a simplified bound, with the power of k independent of corner angles. A similar philosophy is adopted in the following theorem.)

Theorem 6.15. Let Ω_- be a non-convex polygon of the type considered in Section 3.4. Suppose that the sound-soft scattering problem (2.16) is solved with the Galerkin method using the star-combined potential formulation (6.47) and the *hp*-type hybrid approximation space defined in Section 3.4 (originally introduced in Chandler-Wilde *et al.* 2012*a*). Then there exists a $\tau > 0$ such that, for all $k_0 > 0$,

$$\|v - v_N\| \lesssim k^2 M(u) \exp(-p\tau) \tag{6.51}$$

for all $k \geq k_0$. Thus, if p grows logarithmically with k, then the error decays exponentially.

As mentioned at the beginning of this section, all these error estimates assume that the Galerkin equations are solved exactly for v_N. In practice, the matrix entries of the sesquilinear form are highly oscillatory integrals, as discussed in Section 4. Fully discrete error estimates for hybrid methods in the case of a smooth convex obstacle have been obtained in Kim (2012), by combining Theorem 6.12 with the analysis from Section 4.4 and the quadrature error estimates from Section 4.3 and using the Strang lemma.

6.5. Alternative ways to measure the error

In this section we have concentrated on measuring the accuracy of v_N by considering

$$\|v - v_N\|. \tag{6.52}$$

In this subsection we discuss alternative measures of the error, which basically involve multiplying (6.52) by different powers of k. We consider only the case where $v = \partial u/\partial n$, with u the solution of the sound-soft scattering problem (2.16); the considerations for other Dirichlet boundary conditions, and for impedance boundary conditions, may be different.

Since v itself depends on k, rather than controlling the absolute error (6.52), it might seem more sensible to control relative error measures such as

$$\frac{\|v - v_N\|}{\|v\|} \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{\|v - v_N\|}{\|v^I\|},$$

where $v^I = \partial u^I/\partial n$ (we saw this earlier in Section 6.2). The advantage of the second of these is that the behaviour of $\|v^I\|$ is known, that is, $\|v^I\| \sim k$ as $k \to \infty$ for an arbitrary obstacle. For smooth convex obstacles, the Kirchhoff approximation shows that on the lit side $\|v\|$ grows in proportion to $\|v^I\| \sim k$, and thus it is reasonable to believe (and proved in Lemma 6.6 for the case of a circle) that $\|v\| \sim k$. (Note that the asymptotics from Domínguez *et al.* (2007) used in Lemma 6.6 show that $\|v\| \lesssim k$, and this lemma showed that $\|v\| \gtrsim k^{1/2}$.) Thus, the second measure of error, and also the first in at least the case that Γ is a circle, becomes

$$k^{-1}\|v - v_N\|. \tag{6.53}$$

As a third possibility, in certain cases where we use the ansatz (3.1), we always know the leading-order part of the solution V_0 (this could be zero), thus what is really being computed in the BEM is the difference $v - V_0$. To assess the performance of methods in this case, we can compute the relative L^2 error defined as

$$\frac{\|(v - V_0) - (v_N - V_0)\|}{\|v - V_0\|} = \frac{\|v - v_N\|}{\|v - V_0\|}. \tag{6.54}$$

An alternative is to take the view that the computation of $v = \partial u/\partial n$ is an intermediate step, and that the real goal is to compute u accurately in the domain Ω_+, by substituting the Galerkin approximation v_N to $\partial u/\partial n$ into Green's integral representation (2.107). Denoting the resulting approximation to u by u_N, we may seek to control

$$\frac{\|u - u_N\|_{L^p(G)}}{\|u\|_{L^p(G)}} \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{\|u - u_N\|_{L^p(G)}}{\|u^I\|_{L^p(G)}}, \tag{6.55}$$

where $G \subset \Omega_+$ is some particular region of interest.

Applying the Cauchy–Schwarz inequality to the expression for $u - u_N$ given by Green's integral representation yields the upper bound

$$|u(x) - u_N(x)| \le c(x)\|v - v_N\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}, \quad c(x) := \left\{ \int_\Gamma |\Phi(x,y)|^2 \, \mathrm{d}s(y) \right\}^{1/2}. \tag{6.56}$$

The k-dependence of $\|u\|_{L^p(G)}$ is, in general, unknown, but $\|u^I\|_{L^p(G)}$ is independent of k. In 3D, $c(x)$ is also independent of k, but in 2D $c(x) \sim k^{-1/2}$. Thus, if one seeks to achieve small values for the second measure of relative error in (6.55) by controlling $\|v - v_N\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}$, one needs to ensure that

$$k^{-(3-d)/2}\|v - v_N\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \tag{6.57}$$

is small. The scaling by $k^{-(3-d)/2}$ in (6.57) is actually rather natural in that it makes the expression (6.57) dimensionless.

In many applications it is not the solution u in Ω_+ that is required, but the far-field pattern of u^S, $F(\hat{x})$, defined in (2.10). In the case of sound-soft scattering, it follows from (2.107) that

$$u^S = -\mathcal{S}_k \frac{\partial u}{\partial n},$$

and an explicit formula for the far-field pattern of this is (2.23), with $\phi = \partial u/\partial n$. If we define F_N to be (2.23) with ϕ replaced by v_N (a Galerkin approximation to $\partial u/\partial n$), then we are again led to the consideration of (6.57), since by the Cauchy–Schwarz inequality we have

$$|F(\hat{x}) - F_N(\hat{x})| \lesssim k^{-(3-d)/2}\|v - v_N\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}. \tag{6.58}$$

We could also measure relative errors of F on $\mathbb{S}^{d-1}$ analogously to (6.55), that is,

$$\frac{\|F - F_N\|_{L^p(\mathbb{S}^{d-1})}}{\|F\|_{L^p(\mathbb{S}^{d-1})}}. \tag{6.59}$$

Remark 6.16. Finally we note that obviously the Hölder inequality could have been used instead of the Cauchy–Schwarz inequality in both (6.56) and (6.58) to give $|u(x)-u_N(x)|$ and $|F(\hat{x})-F_N(\hat{x})|$ in terms of other L^p norms of $v-v_N$ (with different powers of k). There is currently no theory on how $\|v-v_N\|_{L^p(\Gamma)}$ behaves, except for the case $p=2$. Note that the numerical results in Section 7.5 (in particular Tables 7.7 and 7.10) show that the error $\|v-v_N\|_{L^1(\Gamma)}$ can be considerably less than $\|v-v_N\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}$ (see also Hewett *et al.* 2012). Regarding the prospects of extending the theory, it is fairly straightforward to modify the best approximation results of Section 3 to apply in $L^p(\Gamma)$ rather than $L^2(\Gamma)$. (Via (A.25), such estimates can moreover be used to get best approximation results in negative Sobolev norms, for example in $H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$.) However, it is unclear how to prove a version of the k-explicit quasi-optimality results, such as Theorem 6.11, in $L^p(\Gamma)$ rather than $L^2(\Gamma)$.

7. Numerical results

In this section we present numerical results for a range of scattering problems, using the hybrid approximation spaces described in Section 3. In cases where the theory of Section 6 is applicable, the experiments confirm the validity of the error estimates proved in that section. The experiments also show that hybrid methods are effective computational algorithms in cases where a full error analysis is not available. Further, we see that the methods sometimes perform better than the theory predicts, with the number of degrees of freedom required to achieve a prescribed level of accuracy growing, as k increases, more mildly than predicted, and in some cases even decreasing.

These results confirm that hybrid methods achieve, at least for classes of scattering problems, the objectives set out in **Q1** in Section 1. For the examples with smooth scatterers, which we implement making full use of the numerical schemes for oscillatory integrals detailed in Section 4, we also show computation times. Impressively, these remain bounded as k increases at the same time as the accuracy increases, confirming that the objectives set out in **Q2** in Section 1 are also achieved.

7.1. Smooth convex obstacles

We thank T. Kim for the numerical results in this subsection. These illustrate the hybrid method described in Section 3.1, which was implemented

Table 7.1. Error e_p on unit circle with exact solution given by a Fourier series.

p	$k = 125$	$k = 250$	$k = 500$
4	3.49×10^{-2}	3.05×10^{-2}	2.71×10^{-2}
8	8.34×10^{-3}	3.96×10^{-3}	3.04×10^{-3}
12	1.03×10^{-2}	2.99×10^{-3}	1.22×10^{-3}
16	1.33×10^{-2}	4.44×10^{-3}	1.58×10^{-3}
22	1.74×10^{-2}	6.27×10^{-3}	2.42×10^{-3}

Table 7.2. Error e_p on unit circle with exact solution taken to be v_{24}.

p	$k = 1000$	$k = 4000$	$k = 16000$
4	4.41×10^{-2}	2.35×10^{-2}	2.50×10^{-2}
8	2.80×10^{-3}	2.20×10^{-3}	1.82×10^{-3}
12	9.61×10^{-4}	3.43×10^{-4}	2.61×10^{-4}
16	8.26×10^{-4}	1.81×10^{-4}	5.45×10^{-5}
22	5.68×10^{-4}	1.02×10^{-4}	9.68×10^{-6}

using the quadrature scheme described in Section 4.4. Throughout this subsection we compute the sound-soft scattering of an incident plane wave with direction $\hat{a} = (1, 0)$ by a smooth convex obstacle. The integral equation we solve is (2.114) with $\eta = k$. The boundary Γ will be parametrized by a mapping $\zeta : [0, 2\pi] \to \Gamma$ and the shadow boundary (3.6) consists of two points $x_i = \zeta(t_i)$, $i = 1, 2$. With the Fock zones (3.25), (3.26) taken to be

$$\Lambda_1 = [t_1 - ak^{-1/3+\delta},\ t_1 + a'k^{-1/3+\epsilon}], \quad \Lambda_2 = [t_2 - a'k^{-1/3+\epsilon},\ t_2 + ak^{-1/3+\delta}] \tag{7.1}$$

(with parameters described below), the approximating space is $\mathcal{V}_N$, as given by (3.27). Since, in this subsection, the order of the numerical scheme is determined by the polynomial degree p, we denote the space by $\mathcal{V}_p$. The Galerkin approximation of the factor V in (3.14) is then denoted V_p, and the corresponding approximation of v is denoted v_p.

Our first experiment is for the unit circle with $\zeta(t) = (\cos t, \sin t)$. In Table 7.1 we tabulate the proxy for the relative error (recall the discussion around (6.53))

$$e_p = \frac{1}{k}\|v - v_p\| \tag{7.2}$$

for various values of p and k. In this case the solution $v = \partial u/\partial n$ can

Table 7.3. Approximate errors $|V_p((-b,0),k)+2\mathrm{i}|$, for the elliptical scatterer with $b=3$, $c=1$.

p	$k=1000$	$k=4000$	$k=8000$	$k=16000$	Relative time
6	2.94×10^{-3}	8.71×10^{-3}	2.90×10^{-2}	5.26×10^{-2}	1
8	3.44×10^{-3}	2.54×10^{-3}	1.07×10^{-2}	2.20×10^{-2}	1.16
10	3.52×10^{-3}	1.01×10^{-3}	3.98×10^{-3}	9.21×10^{-3}	1.36
12	3.34×10^{-3}	8.34×10^{-4}	1.55×10^{-3}	3.80×10^{-3}	1.65
14	2.65×10^{-3}	7.35×10^{-4}	6.86×10^{-3}	1.49×10^{-3}	1.86
16	3.67×10^{-3}	7.94×10^{-4}	4.50×10^{-4}	5.14×10^{-4}	2.22
18	2.38×10^{-3}	7.05×10^{-4}	3.87×10^{-4}	1.87×10^{-4}	2.54

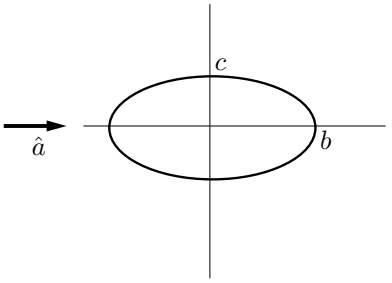
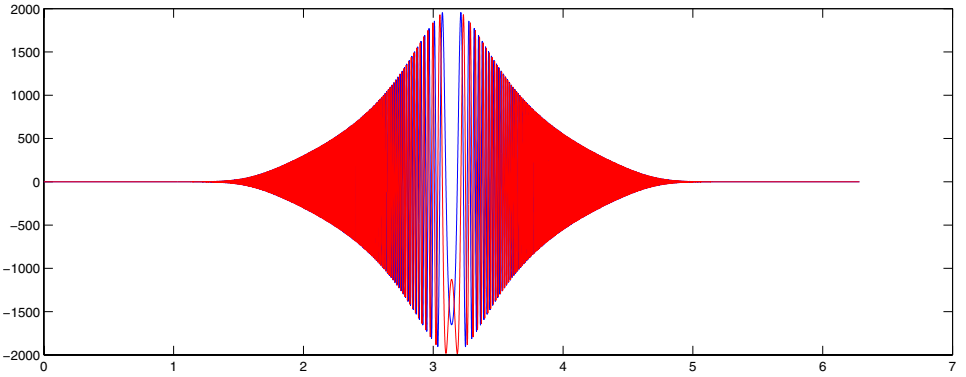


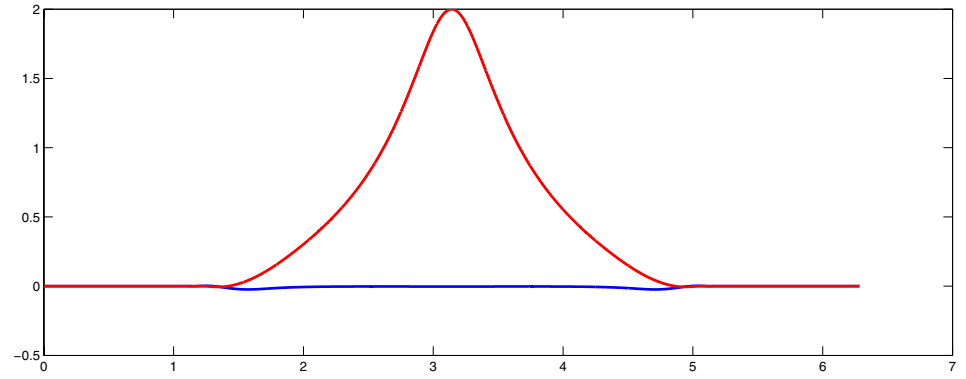
Figure 7.1. Elliptical scatterer with semi-axes b, c.

be found exactly as a Fourier series, and the errors (7.2) can be computed accurately by quadrature. The parameters for the Fock zones are $a=3.52$, $a'=2.20$, $\epsilon=1/9$, $\delta=0$. The table shows convergence as p increases, up to a saturation error which decreases as k increases. This is caused by the exponentially decaying k-dependent (but p-independent) term in the error estimate (6.48). We also notice an improvement in accuracy for fixed p as k increases, although the estimate in Theorem 6.12 does not predict this. The Fourier series providing the exact solution is slow to converge for very large k. We therefore illustrate the same convergence behaviour for larger values of k in Table 7.2, where we give values of e_p computed using v_{24} as an approximation of the exact solution v. Here the exponentially decaying k-dependent part of the error is not visible. In these examples the dimension of the hybrid space and hence the size of the matrix being inverted is $3p+3$.

Our second experiment is for an elliptical scatterer with semi-axes b, c, as shown in Figure 7.1. The parameters for the Fock zones are $a=24$, $a'=16$, $\epsilon=1/9$ and $\delta=0$. Here the exact solution v is unknown, but comparing the physical optics approximation (3.4) with the ansatz (3.7) (recall also (3.3)) it is known that the factor $V((-b,0),k)$ approaches $-2\mathrm{i}$ with rate $O(k^{-1})$ as $k\to\infty$. In Table 7.3 we give the values of the error $|V_p((-b,0),k)+2\mathrm{i}|$



(a) approximation to v



(b) approximation to $V(\cdot, k)$, both real (the bottom curve) and imaginary (the top curve) parts

Figure 7.2. Ellipse with $b = 3$, $c = 1$, $k = 1000$ and $p = 12$.

for the case $b = 3$, $c = 1$ for various values of k and polynomial degree p. In this case the quadrature rules from Section 4.4 are set up once and used for all values of k, so the computational times are fixed with respect to k. (More details of the choice of parameters in the quadrature rules and how to obtain fixed computation times with varying k are given in Kim (2012).) In Table 7.3, for fixed small p, the errors grow slightly with k. For larger p, the errors decrease as $k \to \infty$. The column for $k = 16000$ shows an experimental rate of decay of about $O(\exp(-0.45p))$ as $p \to \infty$. The final column indicates the computation time as a proportion of the time taken for $p = 1$ and shows an optimal growth rate of about $O(p^2)$. (Recall that the stiffness matrix for the Galerkin method has dimension $O(p)$.) For this ellipse, in Figure 7.2(a) we illustrate the computed oscillatory solution v, and in Figure 7.2(b) the corresponding slowly varying factor V (for $k = 1000$, computed with $p = 12$).

Table 7.4. The errors e_p defined in (7.3).

Standard				
p	$k = 200$	$k = 400$	$k = 600$	Time (s)
4	1.47×10^{-2}	3.09×10^{-2}	3.49×10^{-2}	84
8	2.18×10^{-3}	4.16×10^{-3}	4.99×10^{-3}	101
12	1.53×10^{-3}	6.83×10^{-4}	7.87×10^{-4}	135
16	2.25×10^{-3}	6.59×10^{-4}	3.73×10^{-4}	184
Star-combined				
p	$k = 200$	$k = 400$	$k = 600$	Time (s)
4	1.62×10^{-2}	3.54×10^{-2}	4.09×10^{-2}	118
8	2.91×10^{-3}	5.83×10^{-3}	6.24×10^{-3}	136
12	3.04×10^{-3}	9.85×10^{-4}	9.97×10^{-4}	180
16	2.72×10^{-3}	8.36×10^{-4}	6.97×10^{-4}	238

The final example compares the standard combined potential formulation (2.114) (with $\eta = k$) with the star-combined formulation (2.115). The ellipse parameters are $b = 2$, $c = 1$ and the Fock zone parameters are $a = 4.91$, $a' = 3.55$, $\epsilon = 1/9$, $\delta = 0$. The stiffness matrices for the surface gradient of the single-layer potential arising in the star-combined operator were computed using the 2D version of the integration by parts procedure in Section 4.1.3. In Table 7.4 we tabulate the relative error

$$e_p = \frac{\|v - v_p\|}{\|v\|}, \tag{7.3}$$

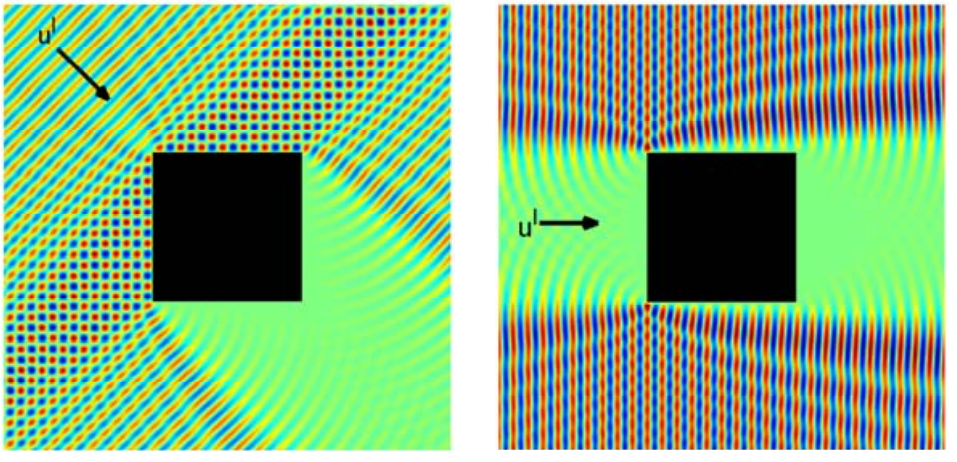
with the 'exact' solution v obtained (for moderate k only) via the Nyström method of Colton and Kress (1998, §3.5). The relative errors were estimated using Simpson's rule with a sufficient number of quadrature points. Again as k increases, and for low p, the errors may increase slightly. This is consistent with Theorem 6.12. Again, for larger p, the errors decrease as k grows, which is a better result than the theory predicts. The star-combined method performs comparably to the standard method. The computing times are longer (timings are in seconds) due to the appearance of an additional integral operator, namely $\nabla_\Gamma S_k$, but the stronger theory for this method motivates its investigation. The growth rate of the CPU time with increasing p in the star-combined case is of the same order as in the standard case.

Much more detail of these experiments, including an investigation of how the choice of the intervals Λ_1 and Λ_2 should depend on the curvature of Γ at the shadow boundary points, is given in Kim (2012).

7.2. Sound-soft convex polygon

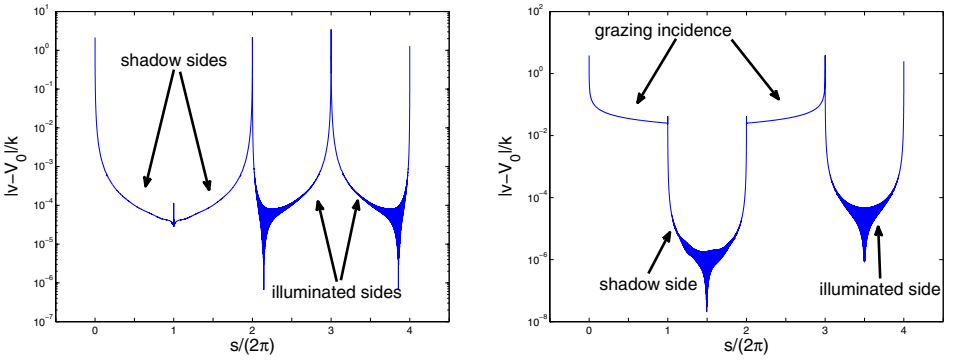
For the case of a sound-soft convex polygon, we present numerical results using the *hp*-version BEM described in Section 3.3.4. We consider scattering by a square of side length 2π (so that the number of wavelengths per side is equal to k), with both grazing and non-grazing incidence angles (showing the robustness of the scheme with respect to angle of incidence). The scatterers, the incident direction vectors and the corresponding total fields for $k = 10$ are all plotted in Figure 7.3. We solve the BIE (2.114), with $\eta = k$, and demonstrate exponential decay of the error on the boundary as the polynomial degree p increases, with only a very mild dependence on the wavenumber k, consistent with the best approximation error estimate (3.48).

Rigorous error estimates for this method are presented in Theorem 6.14 only in the context of the star-combined formulation. However, our numerical results, computed by solving the standard combined potential equation (2.114), are empirically consistent with (6.50). In our experiments we take the same degree p of polynomial approximation on each element, and the same number of layers on each graded mesh (chosen proportional to p; see also Section 3.3.4), using the same parameter choices as given in Hewett *et al.* (2012, §7), to which we refer for details. The total number of degrees of freedom for these examples is $16(p+1)^2$. Since, as in Section 7.1, the order of the numerical scheme is determined solely by the polynomial degree p, we again denote our approximation of $v = \partial u/\partial n$ by v_p.



(a) non-grazing incidence (b) grazing incidence

Figure 7.3. Scattering by a sound-soft square of side length 2π, $k = 10$.



(a) non-grazing incidence (b) grazing incidence

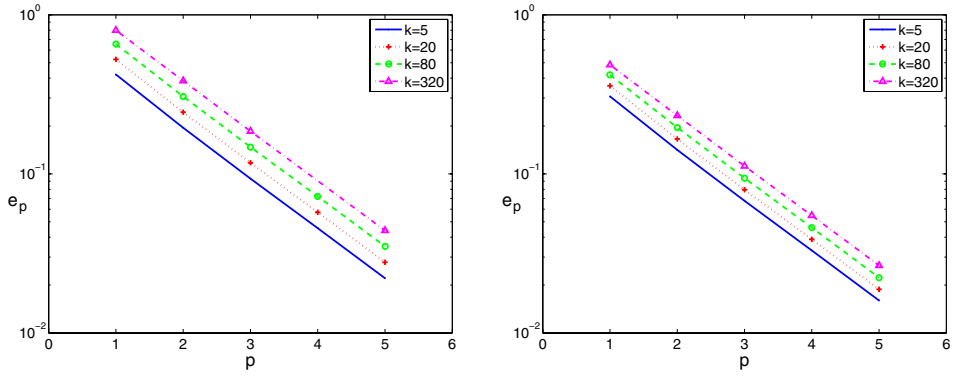
Figure 7.4. Scattering by a sound-soft square of side length 2π, for $k = 160$.

To illustrate the qualitatively different behaviour of the solution on sides with grazing incidence, in Figure 7.4 we plot, for $k = 160$ and for cases (a) and (b) of Figure 7.3, graphs of $|(v - V_0)(s)|/k$ against s, where V_0 is the known leading-order part of the solution (see (3.35) and (3.8)). The 'exact' solution $v = \partial u/\partial n$ is the numerical solution computed with 1024 degrees of freedom (corresponding to $p = 7$). The solution in each case is singular at the corners of the polygon, which are at $s = s_j := 2j\pi$, $j = 0, \ldots, 4$ (note the logarithmic scale on the vertical axis, and also that the solution is plotted for 100000 evenly spaced values of s). As s increases away from the corners, for case (a) $|(v - V_0)(s)|$ decays like $|s - s_j|^{-3/2}$ on all four sides, whereas for case (b) $|(v - V_0)(s)|$ decays like $|s - s_j|^{-3/2}$ on the illuminated and the shadow sides, but like $|s - s_0|^{-1/2}$ and $|s - s_3|^{-1/2}$ on the two sides with grazing incidence, as seen in Figure 7.4(b). This suggests that, for $n = 0$, Theorem 3.10 is sharp in its dependence on t for the case of grazing incidence, but not for non-grazing incidence. (For the impedance half-plane problem we saw this difference between grazing and non-grazing explicitly in (3.32) and (3.33), and we conjecture that similar estimates will hold for the polygonal scatterer considered here.) The function $|v - V_0|$ is highly oscillatory in the (apparently) shaded areas in Figure 7.4.

In Figure 7.5 we plot (on a logarithmic scale) a measure of relative L^2 error different from that in (7.3) (recall the discussion around (6.54)), namely

$$e_p = \frac{\|v - v_p\|}{\|v - V_0\|},$$

against p, for cases (a) and (b) and for a range of values of k. In each case we take the 'exact' reference solution to be that computed with $p = 7$. Full details of how e_p is accurately computed are provided in Hewett *et al.* (2012). The linear plots in Figure 7.5 clearly demonstrate exponential convergence



(a) non-grazing incidence (b) grazing incidence

Figure 7.5. Relative errors e_p for scattering by a sound-soft square of side length 2π.

with respect to the polynomial degree p, with only very mild growth in the relative error e_p as k increases. In particular it is clear from these figures that e_p remains bounded if p is increased by 1 each time k is increased by a factor of 4. Thus increasing p proportional to $\log k$ is enough to maintain accuracy. The scheme clearly copes well with grazing incidence; indeed, because $\|v - V_0\|$ is bigger, if anything the problem with grazing incidence is solved more accurately, as measured by e_p, than the one with non-grazing incidence.

Further numerical results for the same scheme, investigating how the error depends on the geometry of the obstacle (particularly the sharpness of the corners), and also demonstrating its accuracy for computing solutions in the domain Ω_+ and computing far-field patterns, can be found in Hewett *et al.* (2012). These results exhibit computation times that grow approximately logarithmically with k, illustrating the power of the quadrature schemes described in Section 4.4.

7.3. Curvilinear polygon

For the case of a sound-soft curvilinear polygon, we present numerical results using the scheme described in Section 3.3.2. The scatterer we consider is depicted in Figure 7.6, where we show the incident direction and total field, plotted for $k = 20$. The scattering obstacle consists of the intersection of two circles of radius 3, forming a 'lens' shape (with internal corner angles $2\pi/3$), and the incident field is such that the boundary between the shadow and illuminated regions coincides with the corners of the obstacle.

Full details of this example are provided in Langdon *et al.* (2010), where numerical results are presented for the case where the integral equation (2.114), with $\eta = k$, is solved using the hybrid approximation space

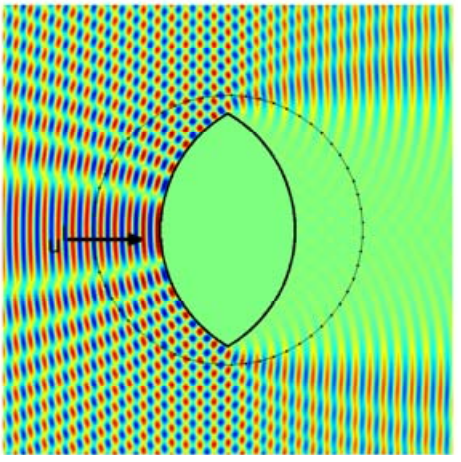


Figure 7.6. Scattering by a curvilinear polygon, $k = 20$; the dotted line indicates the circle on which the total field is computed, for comparison of errors between different discretizations, as described below.

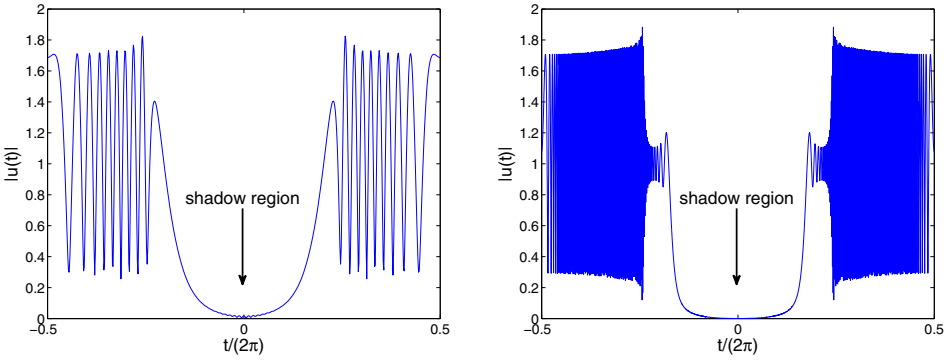
described in Section 3.3.2 and the unknowns V, $V_m^{\pm}$ are approximated with piecewise constant functions. These examples demonstrate that the number of degrees of freedom N required to approximate $v = \partial u/\partial n$ to a prescribed level of relative accuracy (using the measure (6.53)) appears to grow only logarithmically with k as k increases, and that $O(N^{-1})$ convergence is observed for fixed k.

Here, we investigate the accuracy of the approximation to the solution in the domain Ω_+; specifically we compute the total field $u = u^I + u^S$ (by substituting the approximation v_N to $v = \partial u/\partial n = \partial_n u$ into the representation formula (2.107)) on the circle (of radius $r = 3$) surrounding the scatterer, illustrated in Figure 7.6. With a slight abuse of notation, we denote the solution at the point $r(\cos t, \sin t)$ on the circle by $u_N(t)$, $t \in [-\pi, \pi]$, where $t = 0$ corresponds to the point on the circle in the deepest shadow (*i.e.*, furthest to the right in Figure 7.6). Plots of $|u(t)|$ for $k = 20$ and $k = 320$ (computed with $N = 1792$ and $N = 2264$ respectively) are shown in Figure 7.7, with the shadow region indicated.

In Figure 7.8 we plot the relative maximum error on the circle (recall (6.55)),

$$e_N = \frac{\max_{t\in[-\pi,\pi]} |u(t) - u_N(t)|}{\max_{t\in[-\pi,\pi]} |u(t)|},$$

against N for different values of k. The maxima in this formula were approximated by sampling t at $30k$ evenly spaced points on $[-\pi, \pi]$. The algebraic decay of e_N with increasing N is clear in Figure 7.8 (note the logarithmic scale on each axis). Moreover, for fixed N, e_N appears to grow



(a) $k = 20$ (b) $k = 320$

Figure 7.7. Total field evaluated on the circle of Figure 7.6.

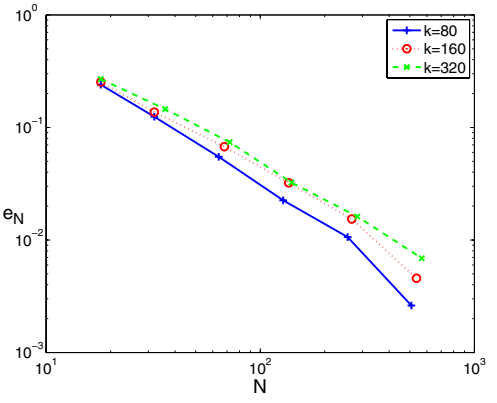
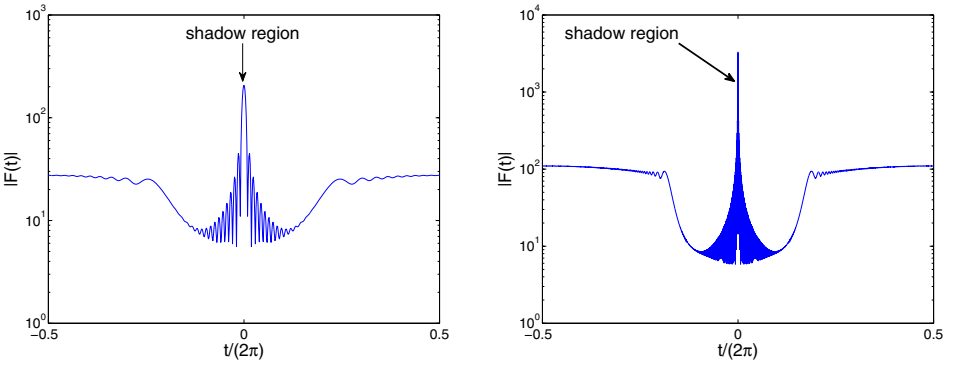


Figure 7.8. Relative maximum errors on the circle of Figure 7.6.

only mildly as k increases. In Table 7.5 (overleaf) we show the gradient of the best fitting (least-squares) linear approximations to the curves, for each fixed value of k; as piecewise constant basis functions have been used, we might expect these gradients to be approximately equal to one. The values vary for different values of k, but the average convergence rate is close to $O(N^{-1})$ in each case.

For this example we also compute an approximation to the far-field pattern F of u^S on the unit circle $\mathbb{S}^1$ (using the formula (2.23), with ϕ replaced by v_N, as discussed in Section 6.5), and the estimated orders of convergence as $N \to \infty$ for various fixed k are given in Table 7.5 (and see also Figure 7.10). With $F(t)$ denoting the far-field pattern in the direction $(\cos t, \sin t)$, plots of $F(t)$, $t \in [-\pi, \pi]$ for $k = 20$ and $k = 320$ (again computed with $N = 1792$ and $N = 2264$ respectively) are shown in



(a) $k = 20$ (b) $k = 320$

Figure 7.9. Far-field patterns, scattering by a curvilinear polygon.

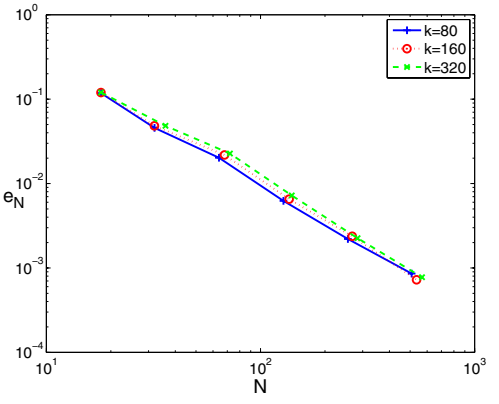


Figure 7.10. Relative absolute maximum errors in the far-field pattern, scattering by a curvilinear polygon.

Figure 7.9, again with the shadow region indicated. In Figure 7.10 we plot approximations to (recall (6.59))

$$e_N = \frac{\|F - F_N\|_{L^\infty(\mathbb{S}^1)}}{\|F\|_{L^\infty(\mathbb{S}^1)}},$$

for various k and N. To approximate the uniform norms, we computed F_N at $30k$ evenly spaced nodes on the unit circle. Again, the algebraic decay with respect to N for fixed k is clear (see Table 7.5), and the error for fixed N remains roughly constant as k increases. We have no convergence theory for this method, but the numerical results indicate that it works well. In particular with $k = 320$ the scatterer contains 640 wavelengths but about 100 degrees of freedom are sufficient to obtain 1% accuracy for the far-field pattern.

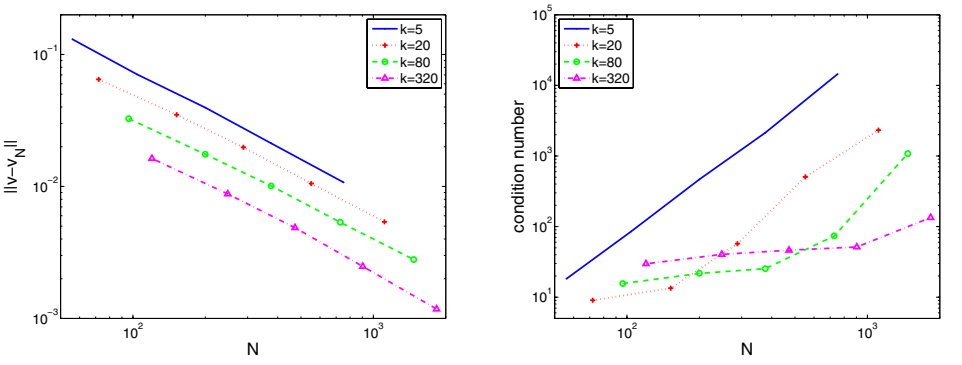
Table 7.5. Approximate orders of convergence (with respect to N for fixed k) for the computation of the total field in the domain (Figure 7.8) and the far-field pattern (Figure 7.10).

Figure	$k = 80$	$k = 160$	$k = 320$
Figure 7.8	-1.5	-1.2	-1.1
Figure 7.10	-1.7	-1.5	-1.5

7.4. Impedance convex polygon

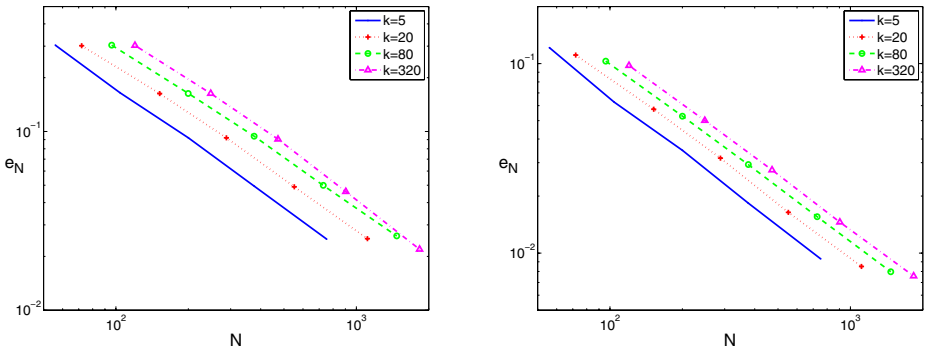
Here we present results for scattering by a convex polygon with impedance boundary conditions. The total field u is required to satisfy (2.13) with $h = 0$ and $\beta = 1$, so that the scattered field u^S satisfies (2.18) with h given by (2.17). We use the hybrid method described in Section 3.3.3 (with $p = 0$, that is, piecewise constant approximation to $V_m^{\pm}$) and, as in Section 7.2, we consider scattering by a square of side length 2π, considering incidence fields in both grazing and non-grazing directions. The problem is solved using the BIE (2.111), with unknown $v = \gamma u$. In fact this integral equation is not uniquely solvable for values of k that correspond to irregular frequencies (recall Remark 2.45). All of the examples in this subsection are computed for such values of k, and, as we shall see, the loss of uniqueness at the continuous level does not appear to lead to any problems at the discrete level for the hybrid method. (This is in contrast to conventional boundary element solvers, which are known to exhibit poor accuracy near irregular frequencies.) A comparison of our numerical results with the high-frequency asymptotics for the impedance wedge problem with grazing incidence (contained in Osipov, Hongo and Kobayashi 2002) reveals that our hybrid method provides an accurate solution (see Figure 7.13(b)).

In Figure 7.11(a) we plot the absolute errors $\|v - v_N\|$ (where $v = \gamma u$ is the Dirichlet data of the total field on Γ) for the case of non-grazing incidence, illustrating the convergence with respect to N (the total number of degrees of freedom) for various fixed k. The 'exact' solution v was computed using a large value of N (details are provided in Chandler-Wilde *et al.* 2012*b*). For fixed k, the convergence appears to be $O(N^{-1})$, and for fixed N it appears to be $O(k^{-1/2})$, both of which are consistent with the estimate (3.45) (assuming $M(u) = O(1)$) in the case $p = 0$ (recall piecewise constant approximation to $V_m^{\pm}$ is being used here). In Figure 7.11(b) we also plot the 2-norm condition number of the Galerkin matrix arising from the hybrid method for each value of k and N, showing that the conditioning improves as k increases (for fixed N). Further results and discussion, including discussion of the apparently



(a) errors (b) condition numbers

Figure 7.11. Scattering by a square with impedance boundary conditions: non-grazing example.



(a) non-grazing incidence (b) grazing incidence

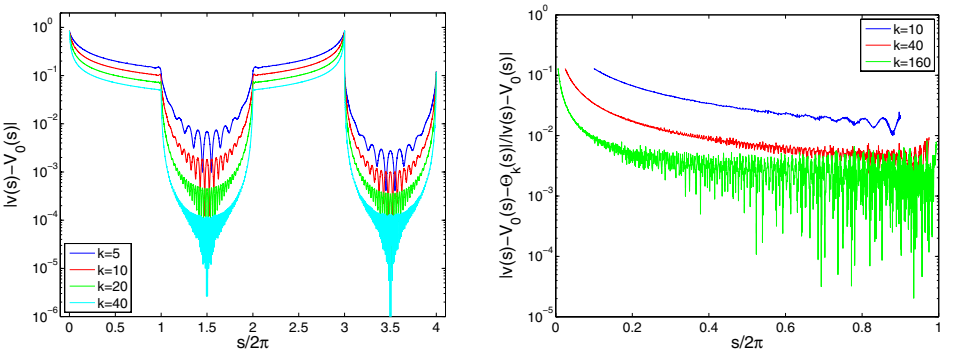
Figure 7.12. Scattering by a square with impedance boundary conditions: relative errors e_N, defined by (7.4).

advantageous aspects of hybrid methods when solving non-uniquely solvable BIEs, are given in Chandler-Wilde *et al.* (2012*b*).

As for the sound-soft problem described in Section 7.2, we again have an exact representation for the leading-order part of the solution V_0 in (3.35) (for details see Chandler-Wilde *et al.* 2012*b*, §2). In Figure 7.12 we show the relative errors, defined (as in (6.54)) by

$$e_N = \frac{\|v - v_N\|}{\|v - V_0\|}, \tag{7.4}$$

for various k and for the cases of incident fields with both grazing and non-grazing angles of incidence. A comparison of the relative errors for the two examples reveals that the results are similar, with the approximation to the



(a) (b)

Figure 7.13. Grazing incidence example: behaviour of solution and comparison with asymptotically derived formula. (a) Boundary solution: $k = 5$ (top), $k = 10$ (second from top), $k = 20$ (second from bottom), $k = 40$ (bottom). (b) Relative difference between boundary solution and asymptotic behaviour for scattering by wedge: $k = 10$ (top), $k = 40$ (middle), $k = 160$ (bottom).

grazing solution, as measured by e_N, slightly more accurate, reflecting the fact that $\|v - V_0\|$ is larger in the grazing incidence case.

Finally, we validate our computations via comparison with an asymptotic approximation, valid in the case of an infinite right-angled wedge with impedance boundary conditions, as derived by Osipov, Hongo and Kobayashi (2002). Specifically, their results predict that, for grazing incidence and when $\beta = 1$, on the edge that runs parallel to the incident direction (with t here representing distance from the corner),

$$v(t) - V_0(t) \sim \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{\pi k t}} \exp(\mathrm{i}(kt + \pi/4)) =: \Theta_k(t), \qquad \text{as } kt \to \infty. \tag{7.5}$$

In Figure 7.13(a) we show $|v - V_0|$ as a function of arc-length s on the whole boundary, with the sides parallel to the incident direction corresponding to $s \in [0, 2\pi]$ and $s \in [4\pi, 6\pi]$. In Figure 7.13(b) we plot

$$\frac{|v(s) - V_0(s) - \Theta_k(s)|}{|v(s) - V_0(s)|}, \tag{7.6}$$

on the interval $s \in [\lambda, 2\pi - \lambda]$, where (recall Section 1) $\lambda = 2\pi/k$ is the wavelength (*i.e.*, we exclude the region in the immediate vicinity of the corner from this comparison). As k increases, the ratio (7.6) decreases rapidly; for $k = 160$, it is of the order of 1% along almost the entire length of the side of the polygon. Chandler-Wilde *et al.* (2012*b*, Figure 4) reveal that, even for $k = 40$, the numerical and asymptotic solutions are almost indistinguishable except in the immediate vicinity of the corner. These

results provide strong support for the claim that the hybrid numerical-asymptotic approximation space has picked out the 'correct' solution to the integral equation, even in the absence of invertibility at the continuous level.

7.5. Non-convex polygon

For the case of a sound-soft non-convex polygon, we present numerical results for the solution of the BIE (2.114), with $\eta = k$, solved using the *hp* scheme of Section 3.4. Rigorous error estimates for this method are presented in Theorem 6.15 only in the context of the star-combined formulation. However, as in Section 7.2, the numerical results below indicate that solving the standard combined potential equation (2.114) yields results consistent with those proved in Theorem 6.15. Specifically, we see exponential decay of the error on the boundary as the polynomial degree p increases, with only a very mild dependence on the wavenumber k, consistent with (and in fact rather better than, in terms of dependence on k) the best approximation error estimate given in Theorem 3.13.

The scatterer is depicted in Figure 7.14, where we show the incident direction and total field for $k = 5$ (a circle, on which we compute the total field below, is also plotted in the figure). Full details of this example are provided in Chandler-Wilde *et al.* (2012*a*). Note that for this example, one (convex) side is entirely illuminated, two sides (one convex and one non-convex) are entirely in shadow, and one (non-convex) side is partially illuminated; the upper section of the vertical side in the figure is illuminated, whilst the lower section is shadowed by the adjacent non-convex (horizontal) side. This type of scenario involving partial illumination of a side is not possible for convex polygonal scatterers, and is one of the reasons for the more complicated asymptotics in this case (recall Figure 3.3).

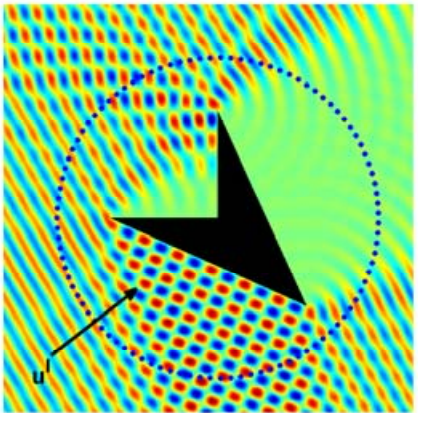


Figure 7.14. Total field, scattering by a non-convex polygon.

Table 7.6. Non-convex polygon: absolute and relative errors, $k = 5, 160$.

$k = 5$					$k = 160$				
p	N	$\|v - v_p\|/k$	e_p	e_p/e_{p-1}	p	N	$\|v - v_p\|/k$	e_p	e_p/e_{p-1}
1	56	1.7287	0.8108	–	1	56	0.3336	0.9280	–
2	120	1.3905	0.6522	0.80	2	120	0.2720	0.7564	0.82
3	208	1.1102	0.5207	0.80	3	208	0.2168	0.6029	0.80
4	320	0.8642	0.4053	0.78	4	320	0.1685	0.4686	0.78
5	456	0.6340	0.2974	0.73	5	456	0.1235	0.3434	0.73

Table 7.7. Non-convex polygon: absolute and relative errors (L^2 and L^1), $p = 4$.

$p = 4$					
k	N	$N/(L/\lambda)$	$\|v - v_p\|/k$	e_p	e_p^1
5	320	10.7	0.864	0.405	0.012
10	320	5.3	0.630	0.418	0.016
20	320	2.7	0.432	0.427	0.018
40	320	1.3	0.315	0.440	0.018
80	320	0.7	0.230	0.454	0.019
160	320	0.3	0.169	0.469	0.019

As in Section 7.2 we again take the same degree p of polynomial approximation on each element, and the same number of layers on each mesh (chosen proportional to p). For all examples in this subsection, the total number of degrees of freedom is $N = 12p^2 + 28p + 16$, and since the order of the numerical scheme is determined solely by the polynomial degree p, we again denote our approximation of $v = \partial u/\partial n$ by v_p. Also, as in both Section 7.2 and Section 7.4, we again have an exact representation for the leading-order part of the solution V_0 in (3.49) (see Theorem 3.12). Our measure of relative error is defined in this case (as in (6.54) and (7.4)) by

$$e_p = \frac{\|v - v_p\|}{\|v - V_0\|}, \tag{7.7}$$

where the 'exact' reference solution v is computed with $p = 7$ (and hence $N = 800$) in each case.

In Table 7.6 we show the scaled absolute L^2 errors $\|v - v_p\|/k$, and the relative L^2 errors e_p defined as in (7.7), for $k = 5$ and $k = 160$ and for $p = 1, \ldots, 5$. The last column shows the ratio e_p/e_{p-1}, and the roughly constant value of this ratio demonstrates exponential convergence with respect to p for fixed k. Moreover, for fixed p, the scaled absolute errors decrease as k increases (we return to this point below) and the relative errors remain more or less bounded.

Further, in Table 7.7 we fix $p = 4$ and show the scaled absolute and relative errors for a range of values of k. In this table, $N/(L/\lambda)$ (where L is the length of the boundary) is the number of degrees of freedom per wavelength (which, for conventional boundary element solvers would typically need to be of the order of 10 or so for 'engineering accuracy'). In the final column of Table 7.7 we also show relative $L^1(\Gamma)$ errors, defined by

$$e_p^1 = \frac{\|v - v_p\|_{L^1(\Gamma)}}{\|v - V_0\|_{L^1(\Gamma)}}. \tag{7.8}$$

Our interest in these stems from the fact that the error in the far-field pattern and in solutions in the interior of Ω_+ can be estimated in terms of the error in $L^1(\Gamma)$ (see Remark 6.16). Hence it is interesting to note that in Table 7.7, the relative $L^1(\Gamma)$ error is (over 20 times) smaller in magnitude than the relative $L^2(\Gamma)$ error. (Recall that $\|\cdot\|$ always denotes the L^2 norm on Γ.) The theory in Chandler-Wilde *et al.* (2012*a*) and Hewett *et al.* (2012) only proves $L^2(\Gamma)$ error bounds (and indeed these deteriorate in the polygonal case if an interior corner angle at any corner decreases to zero), and it remains an open question to explain theoretically the observation that the far-field pattern, for example, remains well approximated, even in the case of such extreme angles. (This would follow, as noted in Remark 6.16, if error bounds in $L^1(\Gamma)$ could be established, uniform in the corner angles.)

In Table 7.8, we show the relative error of the solution in the domain,

$$\frac{\|u - u_p\|_{L^2(G)}}{\|u\|_{L^2(G)}} \tag{7.9}$$

(recall (6.55)), where G represents the circle plotted in Figure 7.14 (and $L^2(G)$ is the L^2 norm on the 1D manifold G), for $k = 5$ and $k = 160$, and for $p = 0, \ldots, 5$ (recall that the 'exact' reference solution is that computed with $p = 7$; the L^2 norms in (7.9) are computed using the trapezoidal rule with 30 000 nodes). For fixed k, the relative error appears to decrease exponentially with respect to p, and the errors for fixed p are comparable in magnitude for the two values of k. Moreover, these errors are much smaller than the $L^2(\Gamma)$ errors given in Tables 7.6 and 7.7, and are much closer in size to the relative $L^1(\Gamma)$ errors presented above.

Table 7.8. Relative L^2 error (given by (7.9)) for the solution computed on the circle shown in Figure 7.14.

p	N	$k=5$	$k=160$
0	16	4.7×10^{-2}	1.3×10^{-2}
1	56	3.4×10^{-3}	4.3×10^{-3}
2	120	9.2×10^{-4}	2.6×10^{-4}
3	208	3.0×10^{-4}	9.4×10^{-5}
4	320	1.2×10^{-4}	4.0×10^{-5}
5	456	3.1×10^{-5}	1.6×10^{-5}

Table 7.9. Relative L^2 error for the computation of the far-field pattern, non-convex polygon.

p	Error, $k=5$	Error, $k=160$
0	6.7×10^{-2}	1.9×10^{-2}
1	5.0×10^{-3}	6.1×10^{-3}
2	1.4×10^{-3}	3.6×10^{-4}
3	4.6×10^{-4}	1.3×10^{-4}
4	1.8×10^{-4}	5.6×10^{-5}
5	4.8×10^{-5}	2.2×10^{-5}

In Table 7.9, we show the relative L^2 error in the approximation of the far-field patterns (recall (6.59)),

$$\frac{\|F-F_N\|_{L^2(\mathbb{S}^1)}}{\|F\|_{L^2(\mathbb{S}^1)}}, \tag{7.10}$$

again for $k=5$ and $k=160$ (computed, as above, using the trapezoidal rule with 30 000 nodes). The errors are comparable in magnitude and behaviour with those found in Table 7.8 for the domain solution.

The results of Tables 7.6–7.9 suggest that, for fixed p, the accuracy of our approximation to the solution on the boundary (measured by (6.53)), the solution in the domain (measured by (7.9)) and the far-field pattern (measured by (7.10)) all improve as k increases. We conclude this subsection with a closer look at how the results in Table 7.7 compare with the best approximation error estimate given in Theorem 3.13.

To investigate this, we make the hypothesis that $\text{error}(k) := \|v-v_p\|/k \sim k^\mu$ as $k\to\infty$, where $\text{error}(k)$ refers to the scaled absolute L^2 error for a particular value of k, and μ denotes the estimated order of growth ($\mu>0$) or decay ($\mu<0$). Under this hypothesis, we estimate μ by calculating the gradient of the best fitting least-squares linear approximation to $\log\text{error}(k)$ as a function of $\log k$. The results in Table 7.7 give an estimate $\mu\approx-0.47$.

Now Theorem 3.13 predicts that, for fixed p, the best approximation satisfies

$$\inf_{w_N\in\mathcal{V}_N}\|v-w_N\|/k \lesssim M(u)k^{\alpha-1/2},$$

where $\alpha = 1-\min_{m=1,\dots,n_s}(1-\pi/\omega_m)\in(1/2,1)$, with ω_m the external angles at the corners of the polygon. For the geometry of the example considered here, $\min_{m=1,\dots,n_s}(1-\pi/\omega_m)\approx0.4638$, and hence we expect

$$\inf_{w_N\in\mathcal{V}_N}\|v-w_N\|/k \lesssim M(u)k^{1/2-0.4638}. \tag{7.11}$$

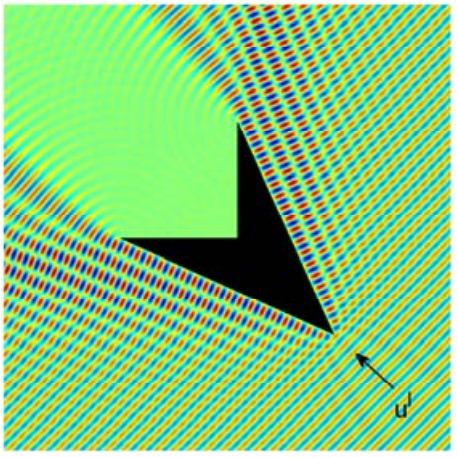
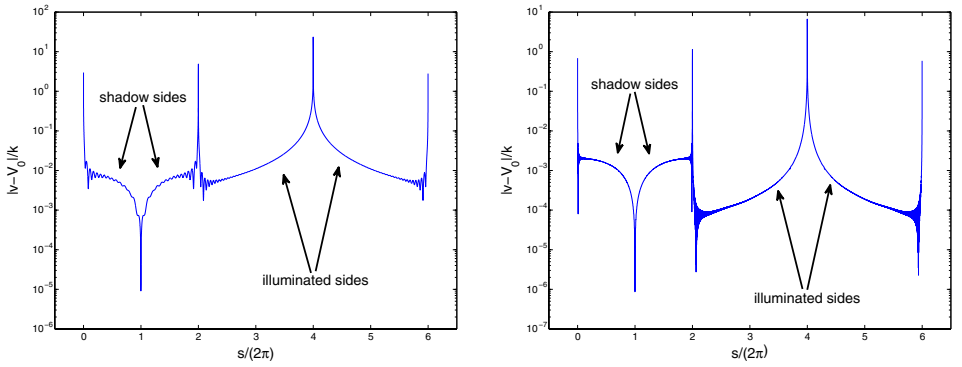


Figure 7.15. Total field, scattering by a non-convex polygon, non-convex sides in shadow.

As discussed in Section 3.3.1, the dependence of the constant $M(u)$ on the wavenumber k is not yet fully understood. If (3.38) were sharp, we would expect $\inf_{w_N \in \mathcal{V}_N} \|v - w_N\|/k \lesssim k^{0.5362} \log^{1/2} k$. However, the results in Table 7.7 suggest that the scaled absolute error $\|v - v_p\|/k$ is decaying, not growing, as $k \to \infty$, and moreover our estimate $\mu \approx -0.47$ tallies remarkably well with the best approximation estimate (7.11) under the assumptions that $M(u) = O(1)$, as $k \to \infty$, and further that the extra factor of $k^{1/2}$ in our best approximation estimate (3.50) for non-convex polygons, compared to our best approximation estimate (3.48) for convex polygons, is spurious.

To investigate this further, we conclude this subsection with a second example on the same geometry but for which the two non-convex sides are both in shadow. The incident direction and total field for $k = 10$ are shown for this example in Figure 7.15. In Figure 7.16 we plot $|(v - V_0)(s)|/k$ for $k = 10$ and $k = 160$. The corner between the two non-convex sides is at $s/(2\pi) = 1$, the corners between convex and non-convex sides are at $s/(2\pi) = 0$ (equivalently $s/(2\pi) = 6$) and $s/(2\pi) = 2$, and the corner between the two convex sides is at $s/(2\pi) = 4$. The singularity in the boundary solution at all corners except for the one between the non-convex sides can be seen in each case (compare with Figure 7.4), as can the increased oscillations for larger k (where there is a shaded region, that represents high oscillation; note also that we are plotting $|(v - V_0)(s)|/k$, with both $\mathrm{Re}\,(v - V_0)$ and $\mathrm{Im}\,(v - V_0)$ oscillating very rapidly). The exact solution is zero at the corner between the non-convex sides, and the apparent spike there is an artefact of the logarithmic scale.

In Table 7.10 we show the scaled absolute and relative errors for this example, computed with $p = 4$ as for the first example above, again for a



(a) $k = 10$ (b) $k = 160$

Figure 7.16. Scattering by a non-convex polygon, with non-convex sides in shadow.

Table 7.10. Non-convex polygon: scaled absolute and relative errors (L^2 and L^1), $p = 4$; example with non-convex sides in shadow.

$p = 4$					
k	N	N/λ	$\|v - v_p\|/k$	e_p	e_p^1
5	320	10.7	0.461	0.279	0.011
10	320	5.3	0.338	0.290	0.013
20	320	2.7	0.249	0.302	0.015
40	320	1.3	0.184	0.316	0.016
80	320	0.7	0.135	0.329	0.017
160	320	0.3	0.100	0.344	0.016

range of values of k. In terms of k-dependence, the results in Table 7.10 closely mimic those in Table 7.7. Making the same hypothesis as above that $\text{error}(k) := \|v - v_p\|/k \sim k^\mu$ as $k \to \infty$, we obtain the estimate $\mu \approx -0.44$. This provides further support for the suggestions that $M(u) = O(1)$ as $k \to \infty$ and that the factor of $k^{1/2}$ on the right-hand side of (3.50) is spurious, as outlined above. These conclusions are further supported by additional numerical results in Chandler-Wilde *et al.* (2012*a*), including an example for which re-reflections occur (as in Figure 3.3(a)).

7.6. Three-dimensional screen

We thank D. P. Hewett for the numerical results in this subsection. Here we consider the problem of scattering of an incident plane wave u^I by a

sound-soft three-dimensional screen, $\Gamma = \{(x_1, x_2, 0) : (x_1, x_2) \in (0,1) \times (0,1)\}$. We denote the exterior domain by $\Omega_+ = \mathbb{R}^3 \backslash \overline{\Gamma}$. The precise BVP that we wish to solve is as follows: find $u \in C^2(\Omega_+) \cap H^1_{\mathrm{loc}}(\Omega_+)$ such that (1.1) is satisfied in Ω_+, $u = -u^I$ on Γ, where $u^I(x) = \exp(\mathrm{i}kx \cdot \hat{a})$, and u satisfies the Sommerfeld radiation condition (2.9) with $d = 3$. The precise sense in which the boundary condition holds needs to be expressed in terms of carefully defined trace operators (see Chandler-Wilde and Hewett 2012 for details).

The equivalent 2D problem has been studied by Stephan and Wendland (1984), and more recently by Davis and Chew (2008), who used hybrid numerical-asymptotic methods. Our goal in this subsection is to show how an ansatz of the form (3.1) can be used for this challenging 3D problem to represent the key oscillatory components of the solution. (Some key ingredients for a k-explicit error analysis of this problem are discussed briefly in Remark 5.11.)

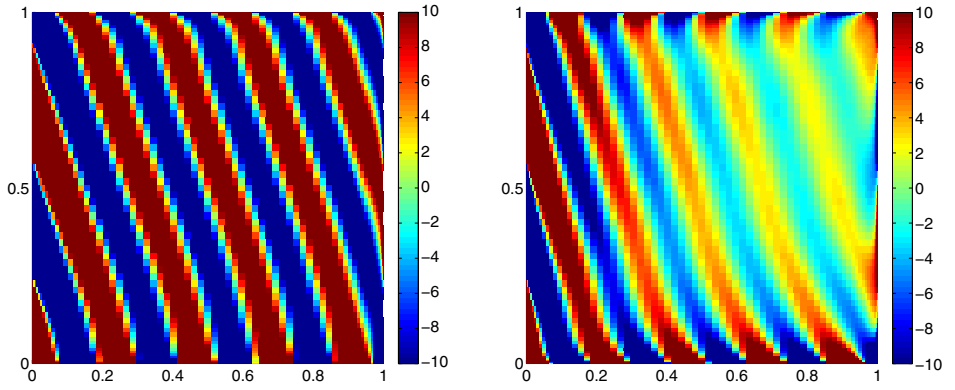
The BVP specified above is equivalent to the BIE (see, *e.g.*, Sauter and Schwab 2011, Stephan 1987)

$$u^I(x) = \int_\Gamma \Phi_k(x,y)[\partial_n u](y)\,\mathrm{d}s(y), \quad x \in \Gamma,$$

where $[\partial_n u]$ denotes the jump in $\partial u/\partial n$ across Γ. For the equivalent 2D problem (see Davis and Chew 2008), an appropriate approximation space is that used on each side of a sound-soft convex polygon in the hybrid schemes described in Sections 3.3.1 and 3.3.4 (see also Section 7.2 above). In this case, the correction to the leading-order behaviour (*i.e.*, $v - V_0$ in (3.1)) consists of two 'diffracted' waves, each travelling along the screen from one end to the other, and being rediffracted back from either end *ad infinitum*. For the 3D problem, however, the construction of a hybrid approximation space is rather more difficult. Here, although we can again separate the leading-order behaviour, writing

$$[\partial_n u](x) = 2[\partial_n u^I](x) + \sum_{m=1}^{M} V_m(x,k)\exp(\mathrm{i}k\psi_m(x)), \quad x \in \Gamma, \tag{7.12}$$

it turns out to be much more difficult to identify M and the phase functions $\psi_m(x)$, $m = 1, \ldots, M$, such that the corresponding amplitudes $V_m(x,k)$ are relatively non-oscillatory. The reason for this is that 'edge waves' and 'corner waves', diffracted by the edges and corners of the screen respectively, are rediffracted infinitely often by the other edges and corners of the screen, taking a different direction of travel after each rediffraction. Although the waves lose energy on each rediffraction, the difficulties in representing all phases of this series of rediffractions in such a way that the amplitudes are (completely) non-oscillatory is significantly harder than in 2D.



(a) $[\partial_n u]$ (b) $[\partial_n u] - 2[\partial u^I/\partial n]$

Figure 7.17. Solution $\mathrm{Re}\,[\partial_n u]$ to (7.12), computed with standard BEM, for $\lambda = 0.2$ and $\hat{a} = (3,1,1)/\sqrt{11}$.

To illustrate this, in Figure 7.17(a) we plot the real part of $[\partial_n u]$ (away from the edges of the screen), calculated using a standard BEM, with piecewise constant basis functions on a rectangular mesh with at least ten grid points per wavelength, graded towards the edges. The solution is singular at the edges, hence we exclude a narrow region close to the edge of the screen from our plot, so that the detail elsewhere can be more clearly seen. For this example $\hat{a} = (3,1,1)/\sqrt{11}$, and $\lambda = 0.2$ (and hence $k = 2\pi/\lambda = 10\pi$); the screen is thus five wavelengths long in each direction, and our standard boundary element space has more than 2500 degrees of freedom. In Figure 7.17(b) we plot the same quantity, but with the leading-order behaviour $2[\partial_n u^I]$ subtracted off. This remainder is what we seek to approximate numerically, and the question is how to choose functions ψ_m in (7.12) such that amplitude functions $V_m(x,k)$ are slowly oscillating. Figure 7.17(b) makes clear that this will not be a simple task.

We now demonstrate that, with a judicious choice of ψ_m in (7.12), the solution $v := [\partial_n u]$ can be represented to a high degree of accuracy away from the edges of the screen using only a small M. To investigate this, we consider a similar example to that plotted in Figure 7.17, but now with $\lambda = 0.05$, so $k = 40\pi$, in which case the screen occupies twenty wavelengths in each direction. We compute the solution v_h to this problem by piecewise constant BEM on a fine mesh with at least ten grid points per wavelength, graded towards the boundary. Using v_h as an 'exact' solution, we consider how to achieve a good approximation to v_h in the interior of Γ by an ansatz of the form (7.12). Our choice of M and ψ_m, $m = 1,\dots,M$, is discussed below. Moreover, $V_m(x,k)$ are chosen to be constant on each element of a coarse mesh (consisting, for this example, of sixteen squares, arranged in

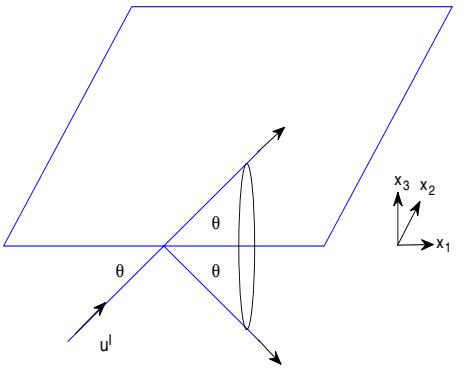


Figure 7.18. Incident wave u^I, diffracted by an edge of the screen; the angle the incident wave makes with the edge is θ, and this is the angle that the waves described in (A) and (E), which travel across the surface of the screen, make with the edge.

a four-by-four grid, each occupying approximately five wavelengths in each direction). More precisely, on each element of the coarse mesh we compute constants ν_m so that

$$v_H := 2[\partial_n u^I](x) + \sum_{m=1}^{M} \nu_m \exp(\mathrm{i}k\psi_m(x)) \tag{7.13}$$

is the best approximation to v_h with respect to a discrete L^2 norm on the fine mesh over all choices of constants $\{\nu_m\}_{m=1}^M$. Although this is not a numerical method for the 3D screen problem, it demonstrates the potential of hybrid methods for 3D problems like this.

In Table 7.11 we investigate the following possible ways of choosing ψ_m (some of which can be sensibly used in combination with each other).

(A) Plane waves propagating in the direction of the singly edge-diffracted rays predicted by the Geometrical Theory of Diffraction (*e.g.*, Keller 1962, Borovikov and Kinber 1994); see Figure 7.18. There is one such wave associated with each of the four edges.

(B) Radial waves (emanating from the corners), where $\psi_m(x) = |x - x_m|$, with x_m, $m = 1, \ldots, 4$, the four corners of the screen.

(C) Rediffractions of the plane waves described in (A). These represent the first 'reflection' of each plane wave in the first edge it hits as it travels across the surface of the screen.

(D) Uniformly distributed plane waves; in each case a uniform distribution of directions was used, but the results shown in Table 7.11 represent the average over a large number of experiments, with in each case the evenly spaced directions being rotated by the same random perturbation, different in each experiment.

Table 7.11. Comparison between various approximation schemes, for scattering by a 3D screen of size twenty wavelengths in each direction, using only sixteen coarse elements (away from the edges).

Approximation space	M	e_2	e_∞
(D)	4	15%	28%
(D)	16	13%	23%
(A)	4	8.0%	16%
(A) and (C)	8	7.9%	16%
(E)	4	1.4%	5.0%
(E) and (B)	8	1.2%	4.4%

In addition we also investigated a variation on the above, which we label (E) in Table 7.11, where we tried the same plane waves described in (A), but with a slightly more sophisticated approximation to the singly diffracted component (incorporating decay and the edge singularity), so that instead of approximating $V_m(x,k)$ on each element of the coarse mesh by a constant, we instead approximate $V_m(x,k)$ by a constant multiplied by $1/\sqrt{kR}$, where R represents the distance from the edge in the direction of propagation. These 'Sommerfeld waves' represent the exact solution for scattering by an infinite half-plane (again, see, *e.g.*, Keller 1962, Borovikov and Kinber 1994), and have singularities at the edges, which are not apparent here as we have excluded in the optimization procedure that part of the screen that lies within a wavelength of the edges.

For any suitable $D \subset \Gamma$, we denote by $\|f\|_{2,h,D}$ the approximation to $\|f\|_{L^2(D)}$ obtained by replacing f by its piecewise constant interpolant on the fine mesh at the element centroids. Denoting the elements of the coarse mesh by Γ_m, $m = 1, \ldots, 16$ (for this example), and letting $\tilde{\Gamma} := \cup_{m=1}^{16} \Gamma_m$, in Table 7.11 we present values of

$$e_2 := \frac{\|v_h - v_H\|_{2,h,\tilde{\Gamma}}}{\|v_h\|_{2,h,\tilde{\Gamma}}} \quad \text{and} \quad e_\infty := \max_{m=1,\ldots,16} \frac{\|v_h - v_H\|_{2,h,\Gamma_m}}{\|v_h\|_{2,h,\Gamma_m}}.$$

The column M in Table 7.11 refers to the number of terms in the summation on the right-hand side of (7.13). Note that the first row of the table indicates a relative least-squares error of 15% and a relative maximum error of 28%, and this turns out to be no better than taking $M = 0$ in (7.13). However, we see that the edge plane waves (A) and particularly the

Sommerfeld waves (E) are far more effective. Thus in this case, while standard BEM approximation of $[\partial_n u]$ would require approximately 2500 degrees of freedom in each coarse element in order to achieve 'engineering accuracy' (approximately 1%), applying the ansatz (7.12) with a judicious choice of Sommerfeld waves (E) can lead to an overall error of approximately 1.4% with only four degrees of freedom per coarse element, so 64 degrees of freedom overall, a very significant reduction indeed.

Appendix: Function spaces on Lipschitz domains

Large sections of this review, namely those where we give details of algorithms and show numerical results, can be understood for the most part without any ideas from functional analysis or many notions of function spaces. But both of these play an essential role in the mathematical analysis of the algorithms that we propose. In this appendix we collect some technical details concerning function spaces on Lipschitz domains. There is an emphasis on Sobolev spaces, for which our notations and definitions follow McLean (2000), but we also provide what appears to be the only account in the boundary element literature of spaces defined in terms of maximal functions, and their relationship to Sobolev spaces. These results are relevant to Sections 2 and 5.

Large parts of Sections 2, 5, and 6 use standard notions and results of linear functional analysis (one relevant reference is Chapter 2 of McLean (2000)). In these sections we assume that the reader is familiar with the idea of a Banach space, a linear space equipped with a norm $\|\cdot\|$, which is complete with respect to convergence in this norm, and with the basic theory of bounded and compact linear operators on Banach spaces. If $A : X \to Y$ is a bounded linear operator from a Banach space X to a Banach space Y we will say that A is invertible if A is bijective: by the Banach theorem this is the case if and only if the inverse operator A^{-1} is bounded. We will sometimes classify $A : X \to Y$ as Fredholm, and talk about the index of a Fredholm operator (see, *e.g.*, McLean 2000). The main facts from this theory that we will need are that A is Fredholm of index zero if and only if A is the sum of an invertible and a compact operator, and that if A is Fredholm of index zero then it is injective if and only if it is surjective.

We shall use the notion of a dual space. Following Kato (1995), for example, we shall define the dual space of a Banach space V to be the set of bounded *anti-linear* functionals on V. We will assume also that the reader is familiar with the idea of a Hilbert space (a linear space V equipped with an inner product $(\cdot, \cdot)$, which induces a norm on the linear space defined by $\|v\| := (v, v)^{1/2}$, and which is a Banach space with respect to this norm), and with the idea of the adjoint of a bounded linear operator on a Hilbert space and with some of its elementary properties.

A.1. Function spaces

For $D \subset \mathbb{R}^d$ (we shall suppose that $d = 2$ or 3 throughout, though of course most of our definitions work for arbitrary space dimensions), let $C(D)$ denote the set of continuous functions $\phi : D \to \mathbb{C}$, and let $BC(D)$ denote those $\phi \in C(D)$ that are also bounded (of course, $C(D) = BC(D)$ if D is compact). $BC(D)$ is a Banach space with norm $\|\phi\|_{BC(D)} = \sup_{x\in D} |\phi(x)|$. We will frequently use the shorter notation $\|\cdot\|_\infty$ for $\|\cdot\|_{BC(D)}$ when the set D is clear from the context.

In the case that D is measurable (with respect to d-dimensional Lebesgue measure), with non-zero measure, which in particular is the case if D is an open set or its closure $\overline{D}$, we will denote by $L^p(D)$, for $1 \le p < \infty$, the set of functions $\phi : D \to \mathbb{C}$ that are Lebesgue-measurable with $\int_D |\phi|^p \,\mathrm{d}x < \infty$. $L^p(D)$ is a Banach space with the norm $\|\cdot\|_{L^p(D)}$ defined by $\|\phi\|_{L^p(D)} = (\int_D |\phi|^p \,\mathrm{d}x)^{1/p}$, with the understanding that elements of $L^p(D)$ are regarded as equal if they are equal almost everywhere. Of course, equipped with the inner product $(\cdot,\cdot)_{L^2(D)}$, defined by

$$(u, v)_{L^2(D)} := \int_D u\bar{v} \,\mathrm{d}x,$$

which we will frequently abbreviate as $(\cdot,\cdot)$, $L^2(D)$ is a Hilbert space, and $\|u\|_{L^2(D)} = (u, u)^{1/2}_{L^2(D)}$.

Similarly, $L^\infty(D)$ denotes the set of functions $\phi : D \to \mathbb{C}$ that are Lebesgue-measurable and essentially bounded, in which case $\|\phi\|_{L^\infty(D)} := \|\phi\|_\infty := \operatorname{ess\,sup}_{x\in D} |\phi(x)| < \infty$. By *essentially bounded* we mean here that there is some bounded function ψ such that $\phi = \psi$ almost everywhere, and $\|\phi\|_\infty = \operatorname{ess\,sup}_{x\in D} |\phi(x)|$ denotes the infimum of $\sup_{x\in D} |\psi(x)| < \infty$ over all $\psi : D \to \mathbb{C}$ with $\phi = \psi$ almost everywhere. Note that $BC(D)$ is a closed subspace of $L^\infty(D)$ and our two definitions of $\|\cdot\|_\infty$ coincide on $BC(D)$.

For $1 \le p \le \infty$, and a measurable $D \subset \mathbb{R}^d$, $L^p_{\mathrm{loc}}(D)$ denotes the set of $u : D \to \mathbb{C}$ which are locally L^p: this means that, for every bounded measurable $G \subset D$, $u|_G \in L^p(G)$,

Given an open set $D \subset \mathbb{R}^d$ and $u : D \to \mathbb{C}$, we denote the partial derivatives of u (when they exist) by

$$(\partial^\alpha u)(x) := \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x_1}\right)^{\alpha_1} \cdots \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x_d}\right)^{\alpha_d} u(x), \tag{A.1}$$

for every *multi-index* $\alpha = (\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_d) \in \mathbb{N}_0^d$. (Here $\mathbb{N}_0 = \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}$.) The *order* of the partial derivative $\partial^\alpha u$ is the number $|\alpha| = \alpha_1 + \cdots + \alpha_d$. For any integer $n \in \mathbb{N}_0$, let

$$C^n(D) := \{u : \partial^\alpha u \text{ exists and is continuous on } D \text{ for } |\alpha| \le n\},$$

let $C^n(\overline{D}) := \{v|_{\overline{D}} : v \in C^n(\mathbb{R}^d)\}$, and let $C^\infty(D) := \cap_{n\in\mathbb{N}_0} C^n(D)$. Com-

plementing this last notation, for any *closed* set $G \subset \mathbb{R}^d$, let

$$C^\infty(G) := \{v|_G : v \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)\}.$$

Of course, $C^0(D)$ is the same as $C(D)$. For $u \in C(D)$ the *support* of u, $\operatorname{supp} u$, is the closure in D of $\{x \in D : u(x) \neq 0\}$, and

$$C_0^\infty(D) := \{u \in C^\infty(D) : \operatorname{supp} u \text{ is a compact subset of } D\}.$$

As usual, for $u \in C^1(D)$, $\nabla u \in (C(D))^n$ will denote the vector whose jth component is $\frac{\partial u(x)}{\partial x_j}$.

Given a set $D \subset \mathbb{R}^d$ we will say that $u \in C(D)$ is Hölder-continuous with index $\mu \in (0, 1]$ if there exists an $L \geq 0$ such that

$$|u(x) - u(y)| \leq L|x - y|^\mu, \quad x, y \in D. \tag{A.2}$$

Note that, by this definition, every Hölder-continuous function is uniformly continuous. If (A.2) holds with $\mu = 1$ then we say that u is Lipschitz-continuous and will call L a *Lipschitz constant* for u. We let $C^{0,\mu}(D) \subset BC(D)$ denote the set of functions that are Hölder-continuous with index μ and also bounded. This set is a Banach space with norm $\|\cdot\|_{C^{0,\mu}(D)}$ defined by

$$\|u\|_{C^{0,\mu}(D)} := \|u\|_\infty + \sup_{x,y \in D,\, x \neq y} \frac{|u(x) - u(y)|}{|x - y|^\mu}.$$

Given an open set $D \subset \mathbb{R}^d$, $u \in L^1_{\mathrm{loc}}(D)$, and a multi-index $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}_0^d$, we will say that $\partial^\alpha u$ exists in a weak sense if there exists $w \in L^1_{\mathrm{loc}}(D)$ such that

$$\int_D wv \, \mathrm{d}x = (-1)^{|\alpha|} \int_D u \partial^\alpha v \, \mathrm{d}x, \quad v \in C_0^\infty(D),$$

in which case we define $\partial^\alpha u := w$. This notation coincides with (A.1) in the case that $u \in C^n(D)$ for some $n \geq |\alpha|$.

This leads to our first definition of Sobolev spaces. For every non-empty open subset $D \subset \mathbb{R}^d$, $p \in [1, \infty]$, and $n \in \mathbb{N}_0$, we define the Sobolev space $W_p^n(D)$ of order n by

$$W_p^n(D) := \{u \in L^p(D) : \text{the weak derivative } \partial^\alpha u \text{ exists and is in } L^p(D) \text{ for } |\alpha| \leq n\}.$$

$W_p^n(D)$ is a Banach space when equipped with the norm $\|\cdot\|_{W_p^n(D)}$ defined by

$$\|u\|_{W_p^n(D)} := \begin{cases} \left(\sum_{|\alpha| \leq n} \int_D |\partial^\alpha u(x)|^p \, \mathrm{d}x\right)^{1/p} & 1 \leq p < \infty, \\ \max_{|\alpha| \leq n} \operatorname{ess\,sup}_{x \in D} |\partial^\alpha u(x)| & p = \infty. \end{cases}$$

A standard result is that $W_\infty^1(\mathbb{R}^d) = C^{0,1}(\mathbb{R}^d)$, with equivalence of norms.

In fact, for any open set D, if $u \in C^{0,1}(D)$ with Lipschitz constant L, then $\nabla u(x)$ exists for almost every $x \in D$, with $|\nabla u(x)| \leq L$; this is Rademacher's theorem (Rademacher 1919). Further, ∇u is the gradient of u in the sense of weak derivatives, so that $u \in W^1_\infty(D)$.

The following is a second standard definition of Sobolev spaces. For $u \in L^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$, let $\hat{u} = \mathcal{F}u$ denote the Fourier transform of u, defined by

$$\hat{u}(\xi) = (2\pi)^{-d/2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \exp(-\mathrm{i}x \cdot \xi) u(x) \, \mathrm{d}x, \quad \xi \in \mathbb{R}^d. \tag{A.3}$$

For $u, v \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)$ and $s \in \mathbb{R}$ define the inner product $(u, v)_{H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)}$ by

$$(u, v)_{H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)} := \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (1 + |\xi|^2)^s \hat{u}(\xi) \overline{\hat{v}}(\xi) \, \mathrm{d}\xi.$$

Equipped with $(\cdot, \cdot)_{H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)}$, $C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)$ is a pre-Hilbert space. The completion of this space is the Hilbert space $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$, with norm

$$\|u\|_{H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)} := (u, u)^{1/2}_{H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)} = \left(\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (1 + |\xi|^2)^s |\hat{u}(\xi)|^2 \, \mathrm{d}\xi \right)^{1/2}.$$

Clearly, $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d) \subset H^t(\mathbb{R}^d)$ for $s > t$. Our choice of normalization in the definition of the Fourier transform is such as to ensure that the extension of $\mathcal{F}$ to $L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$ is a unitary operator, in particular

$$(\mathcal{F}u, \mathcal{F}v)_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} = (u, v)_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}, \quad u, v \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^d). \tag{A.4}$$

It follows immediately from (A.3) that $\mathcal{F}$ maps $L^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$ to $L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)$ and is bounded with norm $\leq (2\pi)^{-d/2}$, and from (A.4) that $\mathcal{F}$ is an isometrice isomorphism on $L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$. It is a standard application of the Riesz–Thorin interpolation theorem (Stein and Weiss 1971, Chapter V, Theorem 1.3) that $\mathcal{F}$ is a bounded operator from $L^p(\mathbb{R}^d)$ to $L^q(\mathbb{R}^d)$, for $1 \leq p \leq 2$, where $p^{-1} + q^{-1} = 1$, with

$$\|\mathcal{F}\|_{L^q(\mathbb{R}^d) \leftarrow L^p(\mathbb{R}^d)} \leq (2\pi)^{-\theta d}, \tag{A.5}$$

where

$$\theta = \frac{1}{p} - \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{q}. \tag{A.6}$$

Note that (A.4) implies that, for $u, v \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)$,

$$(u, v)_{H^0(\mathbb{R}^d)} = (u, v)_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)},$$

so that $H^0(\mathbb{R}^d) = L^2(\mathbb{R}^d) = W^0_2(\mathbb{R}^d)$ and $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d) \subset L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$ for $s > 0$. Indeed,

$$H^n(\mathbb{R}^d) = W^n_2(\mathbb{R}^d), \quad n \in \mathbb{N}_0,$$

with equivalence of norms (McLean 2000). If s is large enough then we

can think of the elements of $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$ also as continuous functions, as the following theorem (see, *e.g.*, McLean 2000) shows.

Theorem A.1. (Sobolev embedding theorem) If $0 < \mu < 1$ and $s = d/2 + \mu$, then $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d) \subset C^{0,\mu}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ (in the sense that if $u \in H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$ then u is equal almost everywhere to some $v \in C^{0,\mu}(\mathbb{R}^d)$). Further, for some $C > 0$ depending only on d and s, $\|u\|_{C^{0,\mu}(\mathbb{R}^d)} \leq C \|u\|_{H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)}$, for all $u \in H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$.

Another important embedding theorem makes a connection between the spaces $L^p(\mathbb{R}^d)$ and $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$. An easy consequence of (A.5), the definition of the Sobolev norm, and Hölder's inequality is that, for $1 \leq p \leq 2$,

$$L^p(\mathbb{R}^d) \subset H^s(\mathbb{R}^d), \quad \text{for } s < -\theta d, \tag{A.7}$$

where θ is given by (A.6). Further, for some constant $C > 0$ depending only on d, s, and p, $\|u\|_{H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)} \leq C \|u\|_{L^p(\mathbb{R}^d)}$, for $s < -\theta d$.

For every $s \in \mathbb{R}$ we can extend the inner product $(\cdot,\cdot)_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}$ in a natural way to a sesquilinear form $\langle \cdot,\cdot \rangle$ on $H^{-s}(\mathbb{R}^d) \times H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$. If $u \in H^{-s}(\mathbb{R}^d)$, $v \in H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$, and (u_j) and (v_j) are sequences in $C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)$, converging to u and v, respectively, with respect to the norms on $H^{-s}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ and $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$, then

$$\langle u, v \rangle := \lim_{j \to \infty} (u_j, v_j)_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}.$$

The mapping u^* given by $v \mapsto u^*(v) := \langle u, v \rangle$ is a bounded anti-linear functional on $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$, and so an element of the dual space $(H^s(\mathbb{R}^d))^*$ of $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$. In fact, as shown in McLean (2000), this mapping $u \mapsto u^*$ from $H^{-s}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ to $(H^s(\mathbb{R}^d))^*$ is an isometric isomorphism, so that $H^{-s}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ is an isometric realization of the dual space of $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$.

For every $s \in \mathbb{R}$, $u \in H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$, and open set $G \subset \mathbb{R}^d$ we say that $u|_G = 0$ if

$$\langle u, v \rangle = 0, \quad \text{for all } v \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d) \text{ with } \operatorname{supp} v \subset G.$$

We define the support of $u \in H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$ to be the largest closed subset G of $\mathbb{R}^d$ such that $u|_{\mathbb{R}^d \setminus G} = 0$.

Equip $C^\infty_{\text{comp}}(\overline{D}) := \{U|_D : U \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)\}$ with a norm $\|\cdot\|_{H^s(D)}$ defined by

$$\|u\|_{H^s(D)} := \inf_{U \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d),\, U|_D = u} \|U\|_{H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)}. \tag{A.8}$$

The completion of this normed space is the Sobolev space $H^s(D)$. More succinctly,

$$H^s(D) = \{U|_D : U \in H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)\},$$

where $U|_D$ denotes the restriction of U to D in the sense defined in McLean (2000). (For $s \geq 0$, $U|_D$ is just the restriction of the function U to D in the usual sense, *i.e.*, $u = U|_D$ means $u(x) = U(x)$, $x \in D$.)

A.2. Lipschitz domains

Following McLean (2000, §3), for example, we will say that an open set D is *Lipschitz* if its boundary ∂D is bounded and, roughly speaking, ∂D is everywhere locally the graph of a function which is Lipschitz-continuous.

Definition A.2. We say that the open set D is Lipschitz if ∂D is compact and there exist finite families $\{W_i\}$, $\{M_i\}$, $\{f_i\}$ and $\{D_i\}$ such that:

(i) the family $\{W_i \subset \mathbb{R}^d\}$ is a finite open cover of the boundary ∂D;

(ii) every $f_i : \mathbb{R}^{d-1} \to \mathbb{R}$ is Lipschitz-continuous with Lipschitz constant $M_i \geq 0$;

(iii) the family $\{D_i \subset \mathbb{R}^d\}$ is such that D and D_i have the same intersection with W_i, for each i;

(iii) for each i there exists a rigid motion $r_i : \mathbb{R}^d \to \mathbb{R}^d$ such that $r_i(D_i) = \{(x', x_d) \in \mathbb{R}^{d-1} \times \mathbb{R} : x_d > f_i(x')\}$, the hypograph of the function f_i;

As usual, by a *rigid motion* in (iii) we mean some composition of a rotation and translation. We note that we can, if we wish, without loss of generality, impose that the rigid motion r_i in (iii) be chosen to be a pure rotation.

We note that our Definition A.2 of a Lipschitz open set coincides with the definition in McLean (2000) of a Lipschitz domain. But we will, as is standard, use the word *domain* exclusively to mean a *connected* open set. So, for us (as in Sauter and Schwab 2011, for example), a Lipschitz domain will mean a Lipschitz open set which is connected.

It is easy to see that D is a Lipschitz open set as defined above if and only D is the union of a finite family of Lipschitz domains whose closures are pairwise disjoint. The concept of a Lipschitz open set is slightly more general, and has the advantage over the concept of a Lipschitz domain that D is a Lipschitz open set if and only if $\mathbb{R}^d \setminus \overline{D}$ is a Lipschitz open set, the point being that D can be connected without $\mathbb{R}^d \setminus \overline{D}$ being connected.

Throughout this review we will say that ∂D is Lipschitz if D is a Lipschitz open set. If the conditions in Definition A.2 hold and, additionally, each $f_i \in C^m(\mathbb{R}^{d-1})$, for some $m \in \mathbb{N}$, then we will say that D is a boundary of class C^m (or that ∂D is C^m for short). If the above conditions hold with each $f_i \in C^m$ and, additionally, for some $\mu \in (0, 1]$, all the partial derivatives of f_i of order m are in $C^{0,\mu}(\mathbb{R}^{d-1})$, then we will say that D is of class $C^{m,\mu}$ (or that ∂D is $C^{m,\mu}$, for short). We will say that ∂D is C^∞ if ∂D is C^m for every $m \in \mathbb{N}$.

The following theorem (McLean 2000, Theorem 3.30) connects the Sobolev spaces that we introduced in the previous subsection.

Theorem A.3. If $D \subset \mathbb{R}^d$ is a Lipschitz open set, then $W_2^n(D) = H^n(D)$ for $n \in \mathbb{N}_0$.

A.3. Sobolev spaces on the boundary and trace operators

We will need to work with Sobolev spaces on the boundary of Lipschitz open sets. Let us consider first the case when $f : \mathbb{R}^{d-1} \to \mathbb{R}$ is in $C^{0,1}(\mathbb{R}^{d-1}) = W^{1,\infty}(\mathbb{R}^{d-1})$ and $D = \{(x', x_d) \subset \mathbb{R}^d : x' \in \mathbb{R}^{d-1}, x_d > f(x')\}$ (we say that D is a *Lipschitz hypograph* in this case), and let $\Gamma = \partial D = \{(x', f(x')) : x' \in \mathbb{R}^{d-1}\}$. In the obvious way, we say that $\Gamma_S = \{(x', f(x')) : x' \in S\} \subset \Gamma$ is measurable if $S \subset \mathbb{R}^{d-1}$ is Lebesgue-measurable, and define a surface measure $\mathrm{d}s$ and surface integrals of functions $\phi \in L^1(\Gamma)$ that are Lebesgue-integrable with respect to this surface measure, by

$$\int_\Gamma \phi \,\mathrm{d}s := \int_{\mathbb{R}^{d-1}} \phi((x', f(x')))\sqrt{1 + |\nabla f(x')|^2}\,\mathrm{d}x'. \tag{A.9}$$

In the natural way, $L^p(\Gamma)$ is defined to be the set of those measurable $\phi : \Gamma \to \mathbb{C}$ for which $\int_\Gamma |\phi|^p \,\mathrm{d}s < \infty$, with $\|\phi\|_{L^p(\Gamma)} = (\int_\Gamma |\phi|^p \,\mathrm{d}s)^{1/p}$, for $1 \le p < \infty$. $L^\infty(\Gamma)$ is the set of essentially bounded functions, with $\|\phi\|_{L^\infty(\Gamma)} := \operatorname{ess\,sup}_{x\in\Gamma} |\phi(x)|$. We note that, with respect to the surface measure, for almost every $x \in \Gamma$, there exists a unit normal $n(x)$ to Γ, given by

$$n(x) = \frac{(-\nabla f(x'), 1)}{\sqrt{1 + |\nabla f(x')|^2}}. \tag{A.10}$$

For every $\psi \in L^2(\Gamma)$ define $\psi_f \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^{d-1})$ by

$$\psi_f(x') = \psi((x', f(x'))), \quad x' \in \mathbb{R}^{d-1}.$$

For $u \in C^\infty_{\mathrm{comp}}(\overline{D})$ define $\phi = \gamma u \in C^\infty(\Gamma) \cap L^2(\Gamma)$, the *trace* of u, by $\gamma u = u|_\Gamma$. Note that $\phi_f \in W^1_2(\mathbb{R}^{d-1}) = H^1(\mathbb{R}^{d-1})$ since, for almost all $x' \in \mathbb{R}^{d-1}$, namely all x' for which $\nabla f(x')$ exists, it holds that

$$\nabla \phi_f(x') = \nabla_{x'} u(x) + \frac{\partial u(x)}{\partial x_d} \nabla f(x'), \tag{A.11}$$

where $\nabla_{x'} := \sum_{m=1}^{d-1} e_m \frac{\partial}{\partial x_m}$ and e_m is the unit vector in the direction x_m. It is then easy to see that $\nabla\phi_f$ given by (A.11) is also the weak derivative of ϕ_f. Unless Γ is smoother than Lipschitz, one cannot expect that $\phi_f \in H^s(\mathbb{R}^{d-1})$ for any $s > 1$.

These observations motivate our definition of boundary Sobolev spaces. For $0 \le s \le 1$, let

$$H^s(\Gamma) := \{\phi \in L^2(\Gamma) : \phi_f \in H^s(\mathbb{R}^{d-1})\}.$$

$H^s(\Gamma)$ is a Hilbert space equipped with the inner product defined by

$$(\phi, \psi)_{H^s(\Gamma)} = (\phi_f, \psi_f)_{H^s(\mathbb{R}^{d-1})}, \tag{A.12}$$

and the above observations imply that $C^\infty_{\mathrm{comp}}(\Gamma) := \{u|_\Gamma : u \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^d)\} \subset$

$H^1(\Gamma) \subset H^s(\Gamma)$, $0 \le s \le 1$; a little more work shows that $C^\infty_{\rm comp}(\Gamma)$ is dense in $H^s(\Gamma)$, for $0 \le s \le 1$.

If $u \in C^\infty_{\rm comp}(\overline{D})$ then, for almost all $x \in \Gamma$, namely all $x = (x', f(x')) \in \Gamma$ for which $\nabla f(x')$ exists, we have

$$\nabla u(x) = n(x)\,(n(x) \cdot \nabla u(x)) + \nabla_\Gamma \phi(x), \tag{A.13}$$

where $\phi = \gamma u \in H^1(\Gamma)$ and $\nabla_\Gamma \phi$ is the *surface gradient* of ϕ. This surface gradient is defined implicitly by (A.13) and explicitly by

$$\nabla_\Gamma \phi(x) = (\nabla_\Gamma \phi)((x', f(x'))) = \sum_{m=1}^{d-1} t_m (e_m + f_m e_d), \tag{A.14}$$

where, for $m = 1, \dots, d-1$, f_m and t_m are the mth components of $\nabla f(x')$ and $\nabla_\Gamma \phi(x)$, respectively, and $e_m + f_m e_d$ is a surface tangent vector. The vector of coefficients $t = (t_1, \dots, t_{d-1})^T$ is the unique solution of the linear system $At = r$, where $r = (r_1, \dots, r_{d-1})^T$, with

$$r_m = \frac{\partial \phi_f(x')}{\partial x_m},$$

and the matrix A has entry $\delta_{mn} + f_m f_n$ in row m column n, where δ_{mn} is the Kronecker delta. A is symmetric and positive definite, with $a^H A a \ge |a|^2$, for every $a \in \mathbb{C}^{d-1}$, where a^H is the conjugate transpose of a. This last inequality implies that $|t| \le |r|$. Explicitly, in 2D, $t_1 = r_1/(1 + f_1^2)$. In 3D,

$$t_1 = \frac{(1+f_2^2)r_1 - f_1 f_2 r_2}{1 + |\nabla f|^2} \quad \text{and} \quad t_2 = \frac{-f_1 f_2 r_1 + (1+f_1)^2 r_2}{1 + |\nabla f|^2}. \tag{A.15}$$

It is clear that, if $\phi \in H^1(\Gamma)$, $\nabla_\Gamma \phi(x)$ is well-defined by (A.14) for almost all $x \in \Gamma$, and $\nabla_\Gamma \phi \in (L^2(\Gamma))^d$. Indeed, $\phi \in H^1(\Gamma)$ if and only if $\phi \in L^2(\Gamma)$ and $\nabla_\Gamma \phi \in (L^2(\Gamma))^d$, and an equivalent norm on $H^1(\Gamma)$ is

$$\|\phi\|' := \left(\int_\Gamma \left(|\nabla_\Gamma \phi|^2 + |\phi|^2 \right) \mathrm{d}s \right)^{1/2}, \tag{A.16}$$

so that ∇_Γ is a bounded operator from $H^1(\Gamma)$ to $(L^2(\Gamma))^d$.

For $u \in C^\infty_{\rm comp}(\overline{D})$ we have defined above the trace of u, $\gamma u \in C^\infty_{\rm comp}(\Gamma) \cap L^2(\Gamma)$. It is a standard result, due in full to Costabel (1988), that $\gamma u \in H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma)$, for $1/2 < s < 3/2$. Further, for some constant $C_s > 0$ depending only on f and s,

$$\|\gamma u\|_{H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma)} \le C_s \|u\|_{H^s(D)}, \quad \frac{1}{2} < s < \frac{3}{2}. \tag{A.17}$$

Since, by definition, $C^\infty_{\rm comp}(\overline{D})$ is dense in $H^s(D)$, it follows that γ extends to a bounded operator $\gamma : H^s(D) \to H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma)$ and (A.17) holds for $1/2 < s < 3/2$ and all $u \in H^s(D)$.

Since ∇ is a bounded operator from $u \in H^2(D) = W_2^2(D)$ to $(H^1(D))^d$, the composition $\gamma \circ \nabla$ is a bounded operator from $H^2(D)$ to $(H^{1/2}(\Gamma))^d$, with $\gamma \circ \nabla u = \nabla u|_\Gamma$ for $u \in C^\infty_{\rm comp}(\overline{D})$. For $u \in C^\infty_{\rm comp}(\overline{D})$, define $\partial_n u \in L^2(\Gamma)$ by

$$\partial_n u(x) = \frac{\partial u}{\partial n}(x) := n(x) \cdot \nabla u(x), \tag{A.18}$$

for all $x = (x', f(x')) \in \Gamma$ for which $\nabla f(x')$ exists, which is almost all $x \in \Gamma$. Clearly, for some constants $C > 0$ and $C' > 0$ depending only on f,

$$\|\partial_n u\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \le C\|\gamma \nabla u\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \le C\|\gamma \nabla u\|_{H^{1/2}(\Gamma)} \le C'\|u\|_{H^2(\Gamma)}.$$

Since $C^\infty_{\rm comp}(\overline{D})$ is dense in $H^2(D)$ it follows that ∂_n can be extended to a bounded operator $\partial_n : H^2(D) \to L^2(\Gamma)$. We will extend the definition of ∂_n further to certain other subspaces of $H^1(D)$ below. Note that it follows from (A.13) and (A.18) and the density of $C^\infty_{\rm comp}(\overline{D})$ in $H^2(D)$ that

$$\gamma\, \nabla u = n\, \partial_n u + \nabla_\Gamma \gamma u, \quad u \in H^2(D). \tag{A.19}$$

Standard Sobolev space formulations of Neumann and impedance boundary value problems (see (2.5) and (2.13)) use negative order Sobolev spaces. For $-1 \le s < 0$ define an inner product $(\cdot, \cdot)_{H^s(\Gamma)}$ on $L^2(\Gamma)$ by (A.12), and let $H^s(\Gamma)$ denote the completion of $L^2(\Gamma)$ with respect to this inner product. This definition, and the results above for $0 \le s \le 1$, imply that $C^\infty_{\rm comp}(\Gamma)$ is dense in $H^s(\Gamma)$ for $|s| \le 1$. Since $H^{-s}(\mathbb{R}^{d-1})$ is an isometric realization of the dual space $(H^s(\mathbb{R}^{d-1}))^*$, for $s \in \mathbb{R}$, it follows that the mapping $\phi \mapsto \phi^*$ from $H^{-s}(\Gamma)$ to $(H^s(\Gamma))^*$, given by $\phi^*(\psi) = \langle \phi, \psi \rangle_\Gamma$, $\psi \in H^s(\Gamma)$, where

$$\langle \phi, \psi \rangle_\Gamma := \langle \phi_f, \psi_f \rangle,$$

is an isometric isomorphism, for $|s| \le 1$, so that $H^{-s}(\Gamma)$ is an isometric realization of $(H^s(\Gamma))^*$ for $|s| \le 1$. Note that, for $\phi, \psi \in L^2(\Gamma)$,

$$\langle \phi, \psi \rangle_\Gamma = \int_{\mathbb{R}^{d-1}} \phi_f(x')\overline{\psi_f(x')}\, {\rm d}x' = \int_\Gamma \frac{\phi(x)\overline{\psi(x)}}{\sqrt{1 + |\nabla f(x')|^2}}\, {\rm d}s(x).$$

Clearly, for $\phi \in H^1(\Gamma)$, $\nabla_\Gamma \phi \in L^2_t(\Gamma)$, where $L^2_t(\Gamma) := \{\psi \in (L^2(\Gamma))^d : n \cdot \psi = 0\}$ is the closed subspace of $(L^2(\Gamma))^d$ consisting of tangential vector fields. $L^2_t(\Gamma)$ is a Hilbert space with inner product defined by

$$(\phi, \psi)_{L^2_t(\Gamma)} = \int_\Gamma \phi \cdot \bar{\psi}\, {\rm d}s.$$

Let $\nabla^*_\Gamma : L^2_t(\Gamma) \to (H^1(\Gamma))^* = H^{-1}(\Gamma)$ denote the adjoint of $\nabla_\Gamma : H^1(\Gamma) \to L^2_t(\Gamma)$, so that

$$(\nabla_\Gamma \phi, \psi)_{L^2_t(\Gamma)} = \langle \phi, \nabla^*_\Gamma \psi \rangle_\Gamma, \quad \phi \in H^1(\Gamma),\ \psi \in L^2_t(\Gamma). \tag{A.20}$$

(The operator $-\nabla_\Gamma^*$ is closely related to the surface divergence operator; see, *e.g.*, §3.4 in Monk 2003.) Like ∇_Γ, ∇_Γ^* is a local operator, in the sense that $\mathrm{supp}(\nabla_\Gamma^*\psi) \subset \mathrm{supp}(\psi)$, for $\psi \in L_t^2(\Gamma)$ (which is clear from (A.20)). A further important observation, which we justify for $d = 2$ and 3, is that there exists a dense subspace $X_t \subset L_t^2(\Gamma)$ such that $\nabla_\Gamma^*(X_t) \subset L^2(\Gamma)$. In 2D, since $L_t^2(\Gamma) = \{\phi s_t : \phi \in L^2(\Gamma)\}$, where $s_t := (e_1 + f_1 e_2)/\sqrt{1+f_1^2}$ is a particular tangential vector field in $(L^\infty(\Gamma))^2$, such a subspace is $X_t := \{\phi s_t : \phi \in C_{\mathrm{comp}}^\infty(\Gamma)\}$. For, if $\phi \in C_{\mathrm{comp}}^\infty(\Gamma)$, then

$$\nabla_\Gamma^*(\phi s_t)(x) = -\phi_f'(x_1),$$

for almost all $x \in \Gamma$. In 3D, a suitable choice is $X_t = \{u \times n : u \in (C_{\mathrm{comp}}^\infty(\Gamma))^3\}$ (where $\times$ here is the standard vector product). This is easily seen to be dense in $L_t^2(\Gamma)$. Further, by Stokes' theorem, which holds on Lipschitz surfaces as a consequence of the version of the divergence theorem, Theorem A.4 below (see, *e.g.*, Proposition 1.4 in Buffa and Christiansen (2003)), if $\phi \in C_{\mathrm{comp}}^\infty(\Gamma)$ and $\psi = U|_\Gamma \times n \in X_t$, for some $U \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)$, it follows that

$$\int_\Gamma \nabla_\Gamma \phi \cdot \psi \, \mathrm{d}s = -\int_\Gamma \phi \, (\nabla \times U)|_\Gamma \cdot n \, \mathrm{d}s. \tag{A.21}$$

Further, this equation extends to the case $\phi \in H^1(\Gamma)$ by density of $C_{\mathrm{comp}}^\infty(\Gamma)$ in $H^1(\Gamma)$. Thus $\nabla_\Gamma^*\psi = -\sqrt{1+|\nabla f|^2}\,(\nabla \times U)|_\Gamma \cdot n \in L^2(\Gamma)$.

The above definitions concern the case when D is a Lipschitz hypograph. If $r(D)$ is the Lipschitz hypograph of some $f \in C^{0,1}(\mathbb{R}^{d-1})$, for some rigid motion $r : \mathbb{R}^d \to \mathbb{R}^d$, then we define $H^s(\Gamma)$ in the same way as when D is a Lipschitz hypograph, except that $\phi_f(x') := \phi[r^{-1}((x', f(x')))]$, for $\phi \in L^2(\Gamma)$.

Now we describe the extension of this procedure to the case when D is a Lipschitz open set with boundary $\partial D = \Gamma$, so that D satisfies the conditions in Definition A.2. We first choose a partition of unity $\{\chi_i\}$ subordinate to the open cover $\{W_i\}$ in that definition. This means that we choose $\chi_i \in C_0^\infty(W_i)$ for each i in such a way that each $\chi_i \geq 0$ and $\sum_i \chi_i(x) = 1$ for all $x \in \Gamma$. (As a first step it is enough to find positive functions $\psi_i \in C_0^\infty(W_i)$ so that $\sum_i \psi_i(x) \neq 0$ for each $x \in \Gamma$, and then define $\chi_i(x) = \psi_i(x)/\sum_m \psi_m(x)$.) For each i let $\Gamma_i := \partial D_i$, where D_i is as in Definition A.2. In terms of these notations we can define a surface measure $\mathrm{d}s$ and surface integrals of functions $\phi \in L^1(\Gamma)$ that are Lebesgue-integrable with respect to this surface measure, by

$$\int_\Gamma \phi \, \mathrm{d}s := \sum_i \int_{\Gamma_i} \chi_i \phi \, \mathrm{d}s. \tag{A.22}$$

(The integrals on the right-hand side make sense since the support of $\chi_i\phi_i$ is a subset of $\Gamma \cap \Gamma_i$ and should be interpreted as in (A.9).) Both the set

$L^1(\Gamma)$ and the value of the integral (A.22) are independent of the choice of the families in Definition A.2 and independent of the choice of the partition of unity.

Define an inner product on $C^\infty(\Gamma)$ by

$$(\phi,\psi)_{H^s(\Gamma)} := \sum_i (\chi_i\phi, \chi_i\psi)_{H^s(\Gamma_i)}. \tag{A.23}$$

For $|s| \le 1$ the Sobolev space $H^s(\Gamma)$ is defined to be the completion of $C^\infty(\Gamma)$ with respect to the norm this inner product induces. For $0 \le s \le 1$, equivalently, $H^s(\Gamma)$ is the set of those $\phi \in L^2(\Gamma) = H^0(\Gamma)$ such that $\chi_i\phi \in H^s(\Gamma_i)$ for each i. Define a mapping $\phi \mapsto \phi^*$, from $C^\infty(\Gamma)$ to $(H^s(\Gamma))^*$, for $0 \le s \le 1$, by $\phi^*(\psi) = \langle \phi, \psi\rangle_\Gamma$, $\psi \in H^s(\Gamma)$, where

$$\langle \phi, \psi\rangle_\Gamma := \int_\Gamma \phi\,\bar\psi \,\mathrm{d}s = (\phi,\psi)_{L^2(\Gamma)}. \tag{A.24}$$

It is not difficult to see that this mapping extends to a bounded linear map from $H^{-s}(\Gamma)$ to $(H^s(\Gamma))^*$; indeed this map is an isomorphism since $H^{-s}(\Gamma)$ is a realization of $(H^s(\Gamma))^*$, for $|s| \le 1$, when Γ is a Lipschitz graph. Thus $H^{-s}(\Gamma)$ is a realization of $(H^s(\Gamma))^*$ for $0 \le s \le 1$ also in the general Lipschitz case; indeed we see this holds for $|s| \le 1$ by passing to duals. Considered as a mapping from $H^{-s}(\Gamma) \times H^s(\Gamma) \to \mathbb{C}$, $\langle\cdot,\cdot\rangle_\Gamma$ is a sesquilinear form which we will refer to as the *duality pairing*. We will sometimes make the usual slight abuse of notation and write $\langle \phi, \psi\rangle_\Gamma$ as the integral $\int_\Gamma \phi\,\bar\psi\,\mathrm{d}s$ in cases where, for some $-1 \le s < 0$, $\phi \in H^{-s}(\Gamma)$, $\psi \in H^s(\Gamma) \subset L^2(\Gamma)$ but $\phi \notin L^2(\Gamma)$.

As discussed in McLean (2000), the space $H^s(\Gamma)$ does not depend on the particular choice of families in Definition A.2 or on the choice of the partition of unity. Further, while these choices affect the definition of the inner product (A.23), the norms arising from distinct choices are equivalent. In particular, the norms on $L^2(\Gamma)$ and $H^0(\Gamma)$ are equivalent.

For general Lipschitz Γ, at each point $x \in \Gamma \cap W_i = \Gamma_i \cap W_i$, the formulae for the unit normal and the surface gradient are given in terms of the definitions (A.10) and (A.14), for $\phi \in H^1(\Gamma)$, in the obvious way, and (A.16) is again an equivalent norm on $H^1(\Gamma)$ and $\nabla_\Gamma : H^1(\Gamma) \to (L^2(\Gamma))^d$ a bounded operator. The normal derivative operator ∂_n is extended to the general Lipschitz case, as a bounded operator $H^2(D) \to L^2(\Gamma)$ through (A.18), and (A.19) holds. The trace operator $\gamma : H^s(D) \to H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma)$ remains a bounded operator in the general Lipschitz case for $1/2 < s < 3/2$ (*i.e.*, (A.17) holds for $u \in H^s(D)$), and has a continuous right inverse for $1/2 < s \le 1$: in particular there exists a bounded linear operator

$$\gamma^\dagger : H^{1/2}(\Gamma) \to H^1(D)$$

such that $\gamma\gamma^\dagger\phi = \phi$, $\phi \in H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$ (McLean 2000, Theorem 3.37). It follows from (A.7) that, for $1 \le p \le 2$, $L^p(\Gamma) \subset H^s(\Gamma)$, for $s < -\theta(d-1)$, where θ

is given by (A.6), and that, for some constant $C > 0$ depending only on p, s, and Γ,

$$\|\phi\|_{H^s(\Gamma)} \leq C\|\phi\|_{L^p(\Gamma)}, \quad \phi \in L^p(\Gamma). \tag{A.25}$$

For example, this inequality holds for $2(d-1)/d < p \leq 2$ if $s = -1/2$.

An essential tool throughout is the following version of the divergence theorem (*e.g.*, McLean 2000, Theorem 3.34).

Theorem A.4. (Divergence theorem) If D is a Lipschitz open set and $F \in (C^\infty_{\rm comp}(\overline{D}))^d$ then

$$\int_D \nabla \cdot F \,\mathrm{d}x = \int_\Gamma n \cdot \gamma F \,\mathrm{d}s,$$

where n is the unit normal outwards from D.

An important consequence of the divergence theorem, of the density of $C^\infty_{\rm comp}(\overline{D})$ in $H^s(D)$, and of the continuity of the trace and normal derivative operators, is Green's first identity:

$$\int_D \nabla u \cdot \nabla \bar{v} \,\mathrm{d}x = -\int_D \bar{v}\, \Delta u \,\mathrm{d}x + \int_\Gamma \gamma \bar{v}\, \partial_n u \,\mathrm{d}s, \quad u \in H^2(D),\ v \in H^1(D). \tag{A.26}$$

For every Lipschitz open set $D \subset \mathbb{R}^d$, let $H^1(D;\Delta)$ denote the set of $v \in H^2(D) = W^1_2(D)$ such that $\Delta v \in L^2(D)$ exists in a weak sense, that is, there exists $w \in L^2(D)$ such that $\int_D wu \,\mathrm{d}x = \int_D v\Delta u \,\mathrm{d}x$, for all $u \in C^\infty_0(D)$, in which case we define $\Delta v := w$. $H^1(D;\Delta)$ is a Hilbert space with the inner product

$$(u,v)_{H^1(D;\Delta)} := \int_D \big(\Delta u\, \Delta \bar{v} + \nabla u \cdot \nabla \bar{v} + u\, \bar{v}\big) \,\mathrm{d}x.$$

A standard result (Theorem 3.40 in McLean 2000) is that $C^\infty_0(D)$ is dense in $H^1_0(D) := \{u \in H^1(D) : \gamma u = 0\}$. This, together with (A.26) and the weak definition of Δv, imply the following version of Green's first identity:

$$\int_D \nabla u \cdot \nabla \bar{v} \,\mathrm{d}x = -\int_D \bar{v}\, \Delta u \,\mathrm{d}x, \quad u \in H^1(D;\Delta),\ v \in H^1_0(D). \tag{A.27}$$

In the case that D is Lipschitz, the above formula (A.26) provides a means of extending the definition of ∂_n to a bounded operator $\partial_n : H^1(D;\Delta) \to H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$. Recalling that $H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ is a realization of the dual space of $H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$ and recalling the isomorphism $\phi \mapsto \phi^*$ which takes $H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ to $(H^{1/2}(\Gamma))^*$, one defines $\phi = \partial_n u \in H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$, for every $u \in H^1(D;\Delta)$, and an associated $\phi^* \in (H^{1/2}(\Gamma))^*$, by

$$\langle \phi, \psi \rangle_\Gamma = \phi^*(\psi) := \int_D \big(\nabla u \cdot \nabla \bar{v} + \bar{v}\, \Delta u\big) \,\mathrm{d}x, \quad \psi \in H^{1/2}(\Gamma), \tag{A.28}$$

where $v := \gamma^\dagger \psi \in H^1(D)$ satisfies $\gamma v = \psi$. We will use the definition (A.28)

of $\partial_n u \in H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ particularly with $\psi = \gamma w$, for some $w \in H^1(D)$, when $v = \gamma^\dagger \gamma w$ on the right-hand side of this equation. In general $\gamma^\dagger \gamma w \neq w$, but $w - \gamma^\dagger \gamma w \in H^1_0(D)$ so that it follows from the definition (A.28) and (A.27) that

$$\langle \partial_n u, \gamma w \rangle_\Gamma = \int_D \big(\nabla u \cdot \nabla \bar{w} + \bar{w}\, \Delta u \big)\, \mathrm{d}x, \quad u \in H^1(D;\Delta),\ w \in H^1(D), \tag{A.29}$$

another version of Green's first identity. When $u \in H^2(D) \subset H^1(D;\Delta)$, it follows, comparing (A.26) and (A.29), that the two definitions we have made for $\partial_n u$ coincide.

The following regularity theorem (see McLean 2000, Theorem 4.24, or Nečas 1967) will be very useful in this article. This result is proved using Rellich-identity-type arguments, of the sort that are central to many of our results in Section 5.

Theorem A.5. Suppose D is a Lipschitz open set and $u \in H^1(D;\Delta)$. Then $\partial_n u \in L^2(\Gamma)$ if and only if $\gamma u \in H^1(\Gamma)$. Further, if $\partial_n u \in L^2(\Gamma)$ then, for some $C > 0$ depending only on Γ,

$$\|\gamma u\|_{H^1(\Gamma)} \leq C\big(\|\partial_n u\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} + \|u\|_{H^1(D;\Delta)} \big)$$

and

$$\|\partial_n u\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \leq C\big(\|\gamma u\|_{H^1(\Gamma)} + \|u\|_{H^1(D;\Delta)} \big).$$

As an important application of this theorem, note that $\partial_n u \in L^2(\Gamma)$ if $u \in H^1(D,\Delta)$ and $\gamma u = 0$.

Roughly speaking, for $u \in H^1(D)$, γu is the value of u on Γ and, for $u \in H^1(D;\Delta)$, $\partial_n u$ is the value of $\frac{\partial u}{\partial n}$ on Γ: these statements are true precisely as they stand when $u \in C^\infty_{\mathrm{comp}}(\overline{D})$. It is thus not surprising that, if $v \in C^\infty_{\mathrm{comp}}(\overline{D})$ and $v = 1$ in a neighbourhood of Γ, then $\gamma(uv) = \gamma u$, for $u \in H^1(D)$, and $\partial_n(uv) = \partial_n u$ for $u \in H^1(D;\Delta)$.

In the scattering problems that we study in this article, when D is an unbounded open set, the solution is not in $H^1(D)$ but is in the linear spaces

$$H^1_{\mathrm{loc}}(D) := \{u \in L^2_{\mathrm{loc}}(D) : vu \in H^1(D),\ v \in C^\infty_{\mathrm{comp}}(\overline{D})\} \tag{A.30}$$

and

$$H^1_{\mathrm{loc}}(D;\Delta) := \{u \in L^2_{\mathrm{loc}}(D) : \nabla u \in (L^2_{\mathrm{loc}}(D))^d, \Delta u \in L^2_{\mathrm{loc}}(D)\}. \tag{A.31}$$

The trace and normal derivative operators, γ and ∂_n, extend in a natural way as linear operators $\gamma : H^1_{\mathrm{loc}}(D) \to H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$ and $\gamma : H^1_{\mathrm{loc}}(D;\Delta) \to H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$, defined by $\gamma u = \gamma(uv)$ and $\partial_n u = \partial_n(uv)$, where v is an arbitrary $v \in C^\infty_{\mathrm{comp}}(\overline{D})$ with $v = 1$ in a neighbourhood of Γ.

A.4. Maximal functions

The Sobolev spaces and trace operators introduced in the subsections above provide powerful and widely used tools to formulate and study elliptic boundary value problems in Lipschitz domains. Indeed, we use these tools for precisely this purpose in Section 2. But, to develop some of our key theoretical results, we need to supplement these methods with results associated with the study, in the harmonic analysis community, of Calderón–Zygmund operators and singular integral operators on the boundaries of Lipschitz domains.

These additional results provide other benefits which we briefly exhibit. In particular they enable us define a sense in which the trace operator γ, defined as a mapping from $H^s(D)$ to $H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma)$, for $1/2 < s < 3/2$, can be extended to the limiting values $s = 1/2, 3/2$, provided that we restrict the domain of the operator to a subspace of $H^s(D)$. They also enable us to explain in what sense $\partial_n u$, for $u \in H^1(D;\Delta)$, is connected to limiting values of $n(y) \cdot \nabla u(x)$ as $x \in D$ approaches $y \in \Gamma$.

Key notions that we will need are those of non-tangential convergence and non-tangential maximal functions. Let D be a Lipschitz open set with boundary Γ. Given $x \in \Gamma$, we call the set $\Theta(x)$ a *non-tangential approach set* (*to x from D*) if $\Theta(x) \subset D$, $\overline{\Theta(x)} \cap \Gamma = \{x\}$, and, for some constant $C > 1$,

$$|x - y| \leq C\mathrm{dist}(y, \Gamma), \quad y \in \Theta(x). \tag{A.32}$$

Now suppose that we are given families specifying the Lipschitz open set as in Definition A.2, in particular an open cover $\{W_i\}$ and an associated family of rigid motions $\{r_i\}$. We choose $\{r_i\}$, as we note we are able to do immediately below the definition, to be a family of pure rotations. Further, suppose that we are given a partition of unity $\{\chi_i\}$ subordinate to this open cover, as defined before equation (A.22). We will call a family $\{\Theta(x) : x \in \Gamma\}$ of non-tangential approach sets *sufficient* (*with respect to these families* $\{W_i\}$, $\{r_i\}$, *and* $\{\chi_i\}$) if, for some $\varepsilon > 0$,

$$\ell_{i,\varepsilon}(x) := \{x + t\hat{b}_i : 0 < t \leq \varepsilon\} \subset \Theta(x), \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathrm{supp}(\chi_i) \cap \Gamma. \tag{A.33}$$

Here $\hat{b}_i$ is the unit vector that satisfies $\hat{b}_i = r_i^{-1}(e_d)$, so that, for every $x \in W_i \cap \Gamma$, $x + t\hat{b}_i \in D$ for all sufficiently small $t > 0$. Further, we will call the family $\{\Theta(x) : x \in \Gamma\}$ *uniform* if the condition (A.32) holds with the same constant $C > 1$ for all $x \in \Gamma$, and if, for some constant $c > 0$, the diameter of $\Theta(x)$ is $\leq c$, for every $x \in \Gamma$.

It is easy to see that there exists $\varepsilon > 0$ such that (A.33) holds, that is, there exists, given any Lipschitz open set defined as in Definition A.2 and an associated subordinate partition of unity $\{\chi_i\}$, a sufficient family of non-tangential approach sets. Indeed, choosing $\varepsilon > 0$ such that $\ell_{i,\varepsilon}(x) \subset D$ for

all i and $x \in \mathrm{supp}(\chi_i) \cap \Gamma$, an example of such a sufficient family is

$$\Theta(x) := \bigcup_{i,\, x \in \mathrm{supp}(\chi_i)} \ell_{i,\varepsilon}(x). \tag{A.34}$$

If $\varepsilon > 0$ is chosen sufficiently small then this choice is also uniform. On the other hand, an obvious example of a uniform family of non-tangential approach sets is obtained by choosing $C > 1$ and $c > 0$ and defining

$$\Theta(x) := \{y \in D : |x - y| < \max(c, C\mathrm{dist}(y, \Gamma)\}. \tag{A.35}$$

If C is chosen sufficiently large then this choice is also sufficient.

Given a family of non-tangential approach sets and a function $u \in C(D)$, we define a *maximal function* $u^* : \Gamma \to [0, \infty]$ by

$$u^*(x) := \sup_{y \in \Theta(x)} |u(y)|, \quad x \in \Gamma. \tag{A.36}$$

In the case that $u \in C^1(D)$, one can define also a maximal function for the gradient by

$$(\nabla u)^*(x) := \sup_{y \in \Theta(x)} |\nabla u(y)|, \quad x \in \Gamma. \tag{A.37}$$

Commonly, in these definitions, the non-tangential approach sets are chosen to be open finite cones, the finite cone $\Theta(x)$ having its vertex at x (see, *e.g.*, Verchota 1984).

Recall that the trace operator γ is well-defined as a mapping from $H^s(D)$ to $H^{s-1/2}(D)$ for $1/2 < s < 3/2$. Formulations of the trace operator in terms of non-tangential convergence enable us to extend the trace operator as a mapping from certain subspaces of $H^{1/2}(D)$ to $L^2(\Gamma)$. In particular, we will see that we can choose this subspace as a subspace of solutions of the Helmholtz equation. This result, which is contained in Corollary A.8 and Lemma A.9 below, is based on the following equivalence result for harmonic functions ($u \in C^2(D)$ is said to be harmonic if $\Delta u = 0$ in D) (see Jerison and Kenig 1995, §5). In this result we introduce the notation

$$\delta(x) := \mathrm{dist}(x, \Gamma), \quad \text{for } x \in D.$$

Theorem A.6. (Jerison and Kenig 1995, Corollaries 5.5 and 5.7) Suppose that D is a bounded Lipschitz open set, $u \in C^2(D)$ is harmonic and let $\{\Theta(x) : x \in \Gamma\}$ be any uniform and sufficient family of tangential approach sets. Then the following statements are equivalent:

(i) $u \in H^{1/2}(D)$;

(ii) $u^* \in L^2(\Gamma)$;

(iii) $\|u\|_{1,\delta} := \left(\int_D \left(|u|^2 + \delta \, |\nabla u|^2 \right) \mathrm{d}x \right)^{1/2} < \infty.$

Further, if $u^* \in L^2(\Gamma)$ then

$$\phi(x) := \lim_{y \to x, y \in \Theta(x)} u(y) \tag{A.38}$$

exists for almost all $x \in \Gamma$, with $\phi \in L^2(\Gamma)$. Moreover, $\|\phi\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}$, $\|u^*\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}$, $\|u\|_{H^{1/2}(D)}$, and $\|u\|_{1,\delta}$ are equivalent norms on the space of harmonic functions u in D for which $u \in H^{1/2}(D)$.

Similarly, the following statements are equivalent:

(a) $u \in H^{3/2}(D)$;

(b) $(\nabla u)^* \in L^2(\Gamma)$;

(c) $\|u\|_{2,\delta} := \left(\int_D \left(|u|^2 + |\nabla u|^2 + \delta \sum_{|\alpha|=2} |\partial^\alpha u|^2 \right) \mathrm{d}x \right)^{1/2} < \infty.$

Further, if $(\nabla u)^* \in L^2(\Gamma)$ then

$$\psi(x) := \lim_{y \to x, y \in \Theta(x)} \nabla u(y) \tag{A.39}$$

exists for almost all $x \in \Gamma$, with $\psi \in (L^2(\Gamma))^d$. Moreover, $\|\phi\|^2_{L^2(\Gamma)} + \|\psi\|^2_{L^2(\Gamma)}$, $\|u^*\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} + \|(\nabla u)^*\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}$, $\|u\|_{H^{3/2}(D)}$, and $\|u\|_{2,\delta}$ are equivalent norms on the space of harmonic functions u in D for which $u \in H^{3/2}(D)$.

The above result enables us to extend the definition of the trace operator γ to harmonic functions in $H^{1/2}(D)$, defining γu to be the non-tangential limit ϕ. This holds also for solutions of the Helmholtz equation in D. In dimensions $d = 2$ and 3 this is a consequence of the next result, which follows from the embedding theorem, Theorem A.1, and from properties of the Newtonian potential.

Theorem A.7. Suppose that D is a bounded Lipschitz open set, let $u \in C^2(D)$, and let $\{\Theta(x) : x \in \Gamma\}$ be any uniform and sufficient family of tangential approach sets.

(A) If $\Delta u \in L^2(D)$, then (i)–(iii) of Theorem A.6 are equivalent and, if $u^* \in L^2(\Gamma)$, then the limit (A.38) exists for almost all $x \in \Gamma$, with $\|\phi\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \leq \|u^*\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}$. Moreover, $\|u^*\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} + \|\Delta u\|_{L^2(D)}$, $\|u\|_{H^{1/2}(D)} + \|\Delta u\|_{L^2(D)}$, and $\|u\|_{1,\delta} + \|\Delta u\|_{L^2(D)}$ are all equivalent norms for u.

(B) If $\Delta u \in H^1(D)$, then (a)–(c) of Theorem A.6 are also equivalent and, if $(\nabla u)^* \in L^2(\Gamma)$, then the limit (A.39) exists for almost all $x \in \Gamma$, with $\|\psi\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \leq \|(\nabla u)^*\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}$. Moreover, $\|u^*\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} + \|(\nabla u)^*\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} + \|\Delta u\|_{H^1(D)}$, $\|u\|_{H^{3/2}(D)} + \|\Delta u\|_{H^1(D)}$, and $\|u\|_{2,\delta} + \|\Delta u\|_{H^1(D)}$ are all equivalent norms for u.

Proof. **(A)** Let $g = \Delta u$ and write u as $u = v + w$, where $w = W|_D$ and W is the Newtonian potential

$$W(x) = -\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \Phi_0(x,y)\,\tilde{g}(y)\,\mathrm{d}y, \quad x \in \mathbb{R}^d,$$

where $\tilde{g}$ is the extension of g by zero from D to $\mathbb{R}^d$. Then, where $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)$, with $\chi(x) = 1$ for $x \in D$, it holds that $\chi W \in H^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$ with $\|\chi W\|_{H^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} \le C\|g\|_{L^2(D)}$ (McLean 2000, Theorem 6.1), and that $\Delta W = \tilde{g}$, so that $\Delta w = g$. Further, by the Sobolev embedding theorem, Theorem A.1, since $d \le 3$, $\chi W \in BC(\mathbb{R}^d)$, with $\|\chi W\|_{BC(\mathbb{R}^d)} \le C\|g\|_{L^2(D)}$. Thus $w \in C(\overline{D}) \cap H^2(D)$, with $\Delta w = g$. Further, $\|w\|_{C(\overline{D})} + \|w\|_{H^2(D)} \le C\|g\|_{L^2(D)}$, so that (i)–(iii) hold for w with $\|w^*\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} + \|w\|_{H^{1/2}(D)} + \|w\|_{1,\delta} \le C\|g\|_{L^2(D)}$. It follows that $v \in C(D)$ satisfies $\Delta v = 0$, so hence that $v \in C^2(D)$ by elliptic regularity. So, by Theorem A.6, (i)–(iii) are equivalent for v and hence also for u, and the equivalence of the norms on u stated in (A) follows.

(B) This follows similarly, except that now $\tilde{g}$ is chosen to be any compactly supported function in $H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$ such that $\tilde{g}|_D = g$ and $\|\tilde{g}\|_{H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)} \le 2\|g\|_{H^1(D)}$. (That such a choice is possible is a consequence of (A.8).) Then $\chi W \in H^3(\mathbb{R}^d)$ with $\|\chi W\|_{H^3(\mathbb{R}^d)} \le C\|g\|_{H^1(D)}$ (McLean 2000, Theorem 6.1) so that $\|\nabla(\chi W)\|_{H^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} \le C\|g\|_{H^1(D)}$ and, by the Sobolev embedding theorem, Theorem A.1, $w \in C^1(\overline{D})$ with $\|w\|_{C^1(\overline{D})} \le C\|g\|_{H^1(D)}$. □

An immediate corollary is that Theorem A.6 extends to solution of the Helmholtz equation.

Corollary A.8. Suppose that D is a bounded Lipschitz open set, $u \in C^2(D)$ and, for some constant $k \in \mathbb{C}$, $\Delta u + k^2 u = 0$ in D, and let $\{\Theta(x) : x \in \Gamma\}$ be any uniform and sufficient family of tangential approach sets. Then (i)–(iii) in Theorem A.6 are equivalent, as are (a)–(c). If $u^* \in L^2(\Gamma)$, then the limit (A.38) exists for almost all $x \in \Gamma$, with $\|\phi\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \le \|u^*\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}$, while if $(\nabla u)^* \in L^2(\Gamma)$, then the limit (A.39) exists for almost all $x \in \Gamma$, with $\|\psi\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \le \|(\nabla u)^*\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}$. Moreover, defining, for $s \ge 0$,

$$H^s_{\mathrm{HE}}(D) := \{v \in H^s(D) \cap C^2(D) : \Delta v + k^2 v = 0\}, \tag{A.40}$$

which is a closed subspace of $H^s(D)$, it holds that $\|u^*\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} + \|u\|_{L^2(D)}$, $\|u\|_{H^{1/2}(D)}$, and $\|u\|_{1,\delta}$ are equivalent norms on $H^{1/2}_{\mathrm{HE}}(D)$ and $\|(\nabla u)^*\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} + \|u\|_{H^1(D)}$, $\|u\|_{H^{3/2}(D)}$, and $\|u\|_{2,\delta}$ are equivalent norms on $H^{3/2}_{\mathrm{HE}}(D)$.

Proof. This follows immediately from Theorem A.7: in the case that any one of (i)–(iii) holds it follows that $g := \Delta u = -k^2 u \in L^2(D)$; in the case that any one of (a)–(c) holds it follows that $g \in H^1(D)$. □

Define a trace operator $\tilde{\gamma} : H^{1/2}_{\mathrm{HE}}(D) \to L^2(\Gamma)$ by $\tilde{\gamma}u = \phi$, where ϕ is defined by (A.38). By Corollary A.8, $\tilde{\gamma}$ is a bounded linear operator, and the next lemma shows that this trace operator extends the trace operator γ to a subspace of $H^{1/2}(\Gamma)$.

Lemma A.9. If D is a bounded Lipschitz open set and $u \in H^s_{\mathrm{HE}}(D)$, with $s > 1/2$, then $\tilde{\gamma}u = \gamma u$.

Proof. Suppose that $s > 1/2$ and $u \in H^s_{\mathrm{HE}}(D)$. Since $\Delta u + k^2 u = 0$ in D, $u \in C^\infty(D)$ by standard interior elliptic regularity results (*e.g.*, Theorem 3.5 in Colton and Kress 1983).

Let $\{\Theta(x) : x \in \Gamma\}$ be a family of non-tangential approach sets that is uniform and sufficient with respect to particular families $\{W_i\}$, $\{r_i\}$, and $\{\chi_i\}$ (see the definition just above (A.33)). It is enough that we show that $\int_\Gamma (\tilde{\gamma}u - \gamma u)\phi \, \mathrm{d}s = 0$ for all $\phi \in C^\infty(\Gamma)$. Indeed, it is enough to show that this holds for all $\phi \in C^\infty(\Gamma)$ with $\mathrm{supp}(\phi) \subset \mathrm{supp}(\chi_i)$, for some i. Let ϕ be such a function, and let $\Gamma^* = \mathrm{supp}(\phi) \subset \mathrm{supp}(\chi_i) \cap \Gamma$. Now, as in (A.33), let $\hat{b}_i = r_i^{-1}(e_d)$, and define $U_t \in C(\Gamma^*)$, for all sufficiently small $t > 0$, by $U_t(x) = u(x + \hat{b}_i t)$, for $x \in \Gamma^*$. (Thus U_t is essentially u evaluated on a parallel surface to Γ^*, distance t away.) Since $\{\Theta(x) : x \in \Gamma\}$ is sufficient, for all sufficiently small $\epsilon > 0$ we have $\ell_{i,\epsilon}(x) \subset \Theta(x)$ for all $x \in \Gamma^*$ (our notation here is that of (A.33)). Since $u \in H^{1/2}_{\mathrm{HE}}(D)$, Corollary A.8 implies that $u^* \in L^2(\Gamma)$, from which it follows that

$$\int_{\Gamma^*} U_t \, \phi \, \mathrm{d}s \to \int_{\Gamma^*} \tilde{\gamma}u \, \phi \, \mathrm{d}s = \int_\Gamma \tilde{\gamma}u \, \phi \, \mathrm{d}s,$$

as $t \to 0$, by the dominated convergence theorem.

On the other hand, choose $v \in H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$ such that $u = v|_D$ and, for $t > 0$, define $v_t \in H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$ by $v_t(x) = v(x + t\hat{b}_i)$, $x \in \mathbb{R}^d$, and let $u_t := v_t|_D \in H^s(D)$. Since $u \in C^\infty(D)$, u_t is C^∞ in a neighbourhood of Γ^*, for all sufficiently small $t > 0$. Thus, for all sufficiently small $t > 0$, $\gamma u_t(x) = u_t(x) = U_t(x)$, $x \in \Gamma^*$. So, for some constant $C > 0$,

$$\left| \int_{\Gamma^*} (U_t - \gamma u)\phi \, \mathrm{d}s \right| = \left| \int_\Gamma \gamma(u_t - u)\phi \, \mathrm{d}s \right| \leq C \|u_t - u\|_{H^s(D)} \leq C \|v_t - v\|_{H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)},$$

since γ is a bounded map from $H^s(D)$ to $H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma)$. But that $\|v_t - v\|_{H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)} \to 0$ as $t \to 0$ is clear if $v \in C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^d)$, and follows for all $v \in H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$ by density of $C^\infty_0(\mathbb{R}^d)$ in $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$. □

Similarly, the mapping $u \mapsto \psi$, where ψ is given by (A.39), from $H^{3/2}_{\mathrm{HE}}(D)$ to $(L^2(\Gamma))^d$, is a bounded linear operator, connected to the operators we have already introduced by the following lemma.

Lemma A.10. If D is a bounded Lipschitz open set, $u \in H^{3/2}_{\rm HE}(D)$ and ψ is defined by (A.39), then $\partial_n u \in L^2(\Gamma)$, $\gamma u \in H^1(\Gamma)$ and, for almost every $x \in \Gamma$,

$$\psi(x) = n(x)\partial_n u + \nabla_\Gamma \gamma u(x).$$

Proof. We note that $H^{3/2}_{\rm HE}(D) \subset H^1(D;\Delta)$, and recall that $\partial_n u \in H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$ is defined by (A.28). We first prove that $\partial_n u \in L^2(\Gamma)$ and that

$$\partial_n u(x) = \frac{\partial u}{\partial n}(x) := n(x) \cdot \lim_{y \to x, y \in \Theta(x)} \nabla u(y), \tag{A.41}$$

for almost all $x \in \Gamma$. (Here – recall the definition of sufficient above (A.33) – $\{\Theta(x) : x \in \Gamma\}$ is any family of non-tangential approach sets that is uniform and sufficient with respect to particular families $\{W_i\}$, $\{r_i\}$, and $\{\chi_i\}$, with $\{\chi_i\}$ a partition of unity on Γ subordinate to the finite open cover $\{W_i\}$.) Since, by Corollary A.8, $\psi \in (L^2(\Gamma))^d$, it holds that $\partial u/\partial n \in L^2(\Gamma)$. Recalling the definition (A.28), we see that, if we can show the following version of Green's identity, that

$$\int_\Gamma \frac{\partial u}{\partial n}\, \gamma \bar{v}\ {\rm d}s = \int_D \big(\nabla u \cdot \nabla \bar{v} + \bar{v}\, \Delta u\big)\, {\rm d}x, \quad v \in H^1(D), \tag{A.42}$$

then (A.41) and $\partial_n u \in L^2(\Gamma)$ will follow. This version of Green's identity, proved under an assumption that $(\nabla u)^* \in L^2(\Gamma)$, is standard in the harmonic analysis literature (*e.g.*, §4.4 in Taylor 2000, §15.5 in Meyer and Coifman 2000). To see how it is obtained, making clear how the Lipschitz character of D and the condition $(\nabla u)^* \in L^2(\Gamma)$ are relevant, we give a proof different from, and arguably simpler than, that in, *e.g.*, Taylor (2000).

Let $\{1, 2, \ldots, N\}$ be the finite index set for the family $\{\chi_i\}$, *i.e.*, $\{\chi_i\} = \{\chi_i : i = 1, \ldots, N\}$. Define $\chi_0 \in C^\infty(\bar{D})$ by

$$\chi_0(x) = 1 - \sum_{i=1}^N \chi_i(x), \quad x \in \bar{D}.$$

Since $C^\infty(\bar{D})$ is dense in $H^1(D)$ and $\Delta u = -k^2 u \in L^2(D)$, it is enough to show (A.42) for $v \in C^\infty(\bar{D})$. But to show (A.42) for $v \in C^\infty(\bar{D})$ it is enough to show that (A.42) holds for v replaced by $v_i := \chi_i v$, $i = 0, \ldots, N$. For if this holds then, since $\sum_{i=0}^N \nabla \chi_i = 0$ in D,

$$\begin{aligned}\int_\Gamma \frac{\partial u}{\partial n}\, \gamma \bar{v}\ {\rm d}s &= \sum_{i=0}^N \int_\Gamma \frac{\partial u}{\partial n}\, \gamma \bar{v}_i\ {\rm d}s \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^N \int_D \big(\nabla u \cdot \nabla \bar{v}_i + \bar{v}_i\, \Delta u\big)\, {\rm d}x\end{aligned}$$

$$= \sum_{i=0}^{N} \int_D \chi_i \big(\nabla u \cdot \nabla \bar{v} + \bar{v}\, \Delta u\big)\, \mathrm{d}x$$
$$= \int_D \big(\nabla u \cdot \nabla \bar{v} + \bar{v}\, \Delta u\big)\, \mathrm{d}x.$$

So it remains to show (A.42) with v replaced by v_i, for $i = 0, \ldots, N$. For $i = 0$, since $\gamma\chi_0 = 0$ so that $\chi \in H_0^1(D)$, this follows from (A.29). For $i = 1, \ldots, N$, write $u = U|_D$, for some $U \in H^{3/2}(\mathbb{R}^d)$, and $v = V|_D$, for some $V \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)$, and, where D_i is as in Definition A.2, let $\Gamma_i := \partial D_i$, and $\hat{b}_i := r_i^{-1}(e_d)$. Further, for $t > 0$, let $D_{i,t} := D_i + t\hat{b}_i$ and $\Gamma_{i,t} := \partial D_{i,t} = \Gamma_i + t\hat{b}_i$. Then, for $t > 0$, where $G := \mathrm{supp}(\chi_i) \cap \bar{D}_{i,t}$, $U|_G = u|_G \in C^\infty(G)$, so that, by (A.26),

$$\int_{\Gamma_{i,t}} \frac{\partial U}{\partial n}\, V_i \, \mathrm{d}s = \int_{D_{i,t}} \big(\nabla U \cdot \nabla \bar{V}_i + \bar{V}_i\, \Delta U\big)\, \mathrm{d}x, \tag{A.43}$$

for $t > 0$, where $V_i = \chi_i V$. Noting that, for $x \in \Gamma_{i,t} \cap W_i$ and all sufficiently small $t > 0$, we have, for some constant $C > 0$ independent of x and t, that

$$\left| V_i(x) \frac{\partial U}{\partial n}(x) \right| = \left| v_i(x) \frac{\partial u}{\partial n}(x) \right| \le C(\nabla u)^*(x - t\hat{b}_i),$$

taking the limit as $t \to 0$ in (A.43) and using the dominated convergence theorem we see that

$$\int_{\Gamma_i} \frac{\partial U}{\partial n}\, \gamma \bar{V}_i \, \mathrm{d}s = \int_{D_i} \big(\nabla U \cdot \nabla \bar{V}_i + \bar{V}_i\, \Delta U\big)\, \mathrm{d}x.$$

But this is just (A.42) with v replaced by v_i, since $\mathrm{supp}(\chi_i) \subset W_i$, $D_i \cap W_i = D \cap W_i$, and $U = u$ and $V_i = v_i$ in D.

We have shown that $\partial_n u \in L^2(\Gamma)$ and that (A.41) is true. It follows from Theorem A.5 that $\gamma u \in H^1(\Gamma)$. It remains to show that, for almost every $x \in \Gamma$,

$$\psi_T(x) := \psi(x) - n(x)(n(x) \cdot \psi(x)) = \nabla_\Gamma \gamma u(x).$$

Noting that $\gamma u = \tilde{\gamma} u$ by Lemma A.9, and arguing as in the proof of that lemma, we see that it is enough to show that $\int_\Gamma (\psi_T - \nabla_\Gamma \tilde{\gamma} u) \cdot \phi \, \mathrm{d}s = 0$, for all $\phi \in (L^2(\Gamma))^d$ with $\mathrm{supp}(\phi) \subset \mathrm{supp}(\chi_i)$, for some i. But, for such a ϕ, since $\mathrm{supp}(\phi) \subset \Gamma_i \cap \Gamma$, with a slight abuse of notation we have

$$\int_\Gamma (\psi_T - \nabla_\Gamma \tilde{\gamma} u) \cdot \phi \, \mathrm{d}s = \int_{\Gamma_i} (\psi_T - \nabla_\Gamma \tilde{\gamma} u) \cdot \phi_T \, \mathrm{d}s, \tag{A.44}$$

where $\phi_T \in L_t^2(\Gamma_i)$ is the tangential part of ϕ, *i.e.*, $\phi_T := \phi - n(n \cdot \phi)$. It is sufficient to show that the integral on the right-hand side of (A.44) is zero for all $\phi_T \in X_t$ with $\mathrm{supp}(\phi_T) \subset \mathrm{supp}(\chi_i)$, where X_t is the dense subset of $L_t^2(\Gamma_i)$ that satisfies $\nabla_\Gamma^*(X_t) \subset L^2(\Gamma_i)$ introduced just below (A.20). But,

for such a ϕ_T, and using the notations Γ^* and U_t introduced in the proof of Lemma A.9, it follows from (A.20), $(\nabla u)^* \in L^2(\Gamma)$, and the dominated convergence theorem, that

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_{\Gamma_i} \nabla_\Gamma \tilde{\gamma} u \cdot \phi_T \, \mathrm{d}s &= \int_{\Gamma_i} \frac{\tilde{\gamma} u \nabla_\Gamma^* \phi_T}{\sqrt{1+|\nabla f|^2}} \, \mathrm{d}s \\
&= \int_{\Gamma^*} \frac{\tilde{\gamma} u \nabla_\Gamma^* \phi_T}{\sqrt{1+|\nabla f|^2}} \, \mathrm{d}s \\
&= \lim_{t\to 0} \int_{\Gamma^*} \frac{U_t \nabla_\Gamma^* \phi_T}{\sqrt{1+|\nabla f|^2}} \, \mathrm{d}s \\
&= \lim_{t\to 0} \int_{\Gamma_i} \frac{U_t \nabla_\Gamma^* \phi_T}{\sqrt{1+|\nabla f|^2}} \, \mathrm{d}s \\
&= \lim_{t\to 0} \int_{\Gamma_i} \nabla_\Gamma U_t \cdot \phi_T \, \mathrm{d}s \\
&= \int_{\Gamma_i} \psi_T \cdot \phi_T \, \mathrm{d}s. \qquad \square
\end{aligned}$$

In this subsection, and in the related material in Section 2.2, we have provided an introduction, aimed specifically at the Helmholtz equation, to the large body of research in the harmonic analysis literature on boundary value problems in Lipschitz domains with L^2 boundary data and on associated properties of layer potentials. For more detail we refer the reader to Coifman *et al.* (1982), Verchota (1984), Torres and Welland (1993), Liu (1995), Jerison and Kenig (1995), Mitrea (1996), Chandler-Wilde and Langdon (2007), Spence *et al.* (2011) and to the monographs by Kenig (1994), Meyer and Coifman (2000), Taylor (2000), and Mitrea, Mitrea and Taylor (2001).

A.5. Exterior and interior traces

To study the properties of boundary integral representations we will need to consider functions defined on both sides of a Lipschitz boundary. So suppose that Ω_- is a bounded Lipschitz open set and let $\Omega_+ := \mathbb{R}^d \setminus \overline{\Omega_-}$ and $\Gamma = \partial\Omega_- = \partial\Omega_+$. Then Ω_+ is an unbounded Lipschitz open set, and Γ is the Lipschitz boundary of both Ω_- and Ω_+, with Ω_- the interior and Ω_+ the exterior of Γ. In this configuration, we will use the notation $\gamma_\pm$ to denote the trace operator γ from $H^s(\Omega_\pm) \to H^{s-1/2}(\Gamma)$, for $1/2 < s < 3/2$, and $\partial_n^\pm$ will be our notation for the normal derivative operator ∂_n from $H^1(\Omega_\pm; \Delta)$ to $H^{-1/2}(\Gamma)$, with the normal n directed out of Ω_- into Ω_+. Thus γ_+ and ∂_n^+ are trace and normal derivatives operators from the exterior side of Γ and γ_- and ∂_n^- those from the interior.

Acknowledgements

This review has benefited greatly from the contributions of our collaborators and also from the comments and suggestions of a number of people. We would like to acknowledge the contributions of the following (listed in alphabetical order): L. Banjai, T. Betcke, V. Domínguez, M. Ganesh, D. P. Hewett, R. Hiptmair, D. Huybrechs, V. Ivrii, I. V. Kamotski, T. Kim, E. Lakshtanov, M. Lindner, J. M. Melenk, A. Moiola, M. Mokgolele, V. P. Smyshlyaev, A. Twigger, B. R. Vainberg, A. Vasy and J. Wunsch.

REFERENCES[1]

T. Abboud, J.-C. Nédélec and B. Zhou (1994), 'Méthode des équations intégrales pour les hautes fréquences', *CR Acad. Sci.* I **318**, 165–170.

T. Abboud, J.-C. Nédélec and B. Zhou (1995), Improvement of the integral equation method for high frequency problems. In *Mathematical and Numerical Aspects of Wave Propagation: Mandelieu–La Napoule, 1995*, SIAM, pp. 178–187.

K. R. Aberegg and A. F. Peterson (1995), 'Application of the integral equation-asymptotic phase method to two-dimensional scattering', *IEEE Trans. Antennas Propagat.* **43**, 534–537.

M. Abramowitz and I. A. Stegun (1964), *Handbook of Mathematical Functions with Formulas, Graphs, and Mathematical Tables*, Dover.

M. Ainsworth and H. A. Wajid (2010), 'Optimally blended spectral-finite element scheme for wave propagation and nonstandard reduced integration', *SIAM J. Numer. Anal.* **48**, 346–371.

S. Amini (1990), 'On the choice of the coupling parameter in boundary integral formulations of the exterior acoustic problem', *Appl. Anal.* **35**, 75–92.

S. Amini (1993), 'Boundary integral solution of the exterior acoustic problem', *Comput. Mech.* **13**, 2–11.

S. Amini and N. D. Maines (1998), 'Preconditioned Krylov subspace methods for boundary element solution of the Helmholtz equation', *Internat. J. Numer. Methods Engng* **41**, 875–898.

A. Anand, Y. Boubendir, F. Ecevit and F. Reitich (2009), 'Analysis of multiple scattering iterations for high-frequency scattering problems II: The three-dimensional scalar case', *Numer. Math.* **114**, 373–427.

X. Antoine and M. Darbas (2012), Integral equations and iterative schemes for acoustic scattering problems. Chapter 2 of *Numerical Methods for Acoustics Problems* (F. Magoules, ed.), Saxe-Coburg Publications.

S. Arden, S. N. Chandler-Wilde and S. Langdon (2007), 'A collocation method for high-frequency scattering by convex polygons', *J. Comput. Appl. Math.* **204**, 334–343.

[1] The URLs cited in this work were correct at the time of going to press, but the publisher and the authors make no undertaking that the citations remain live or are accurate or appropriate.

A. Asheim (2008), 'A combined Filon/asymptotic quadrature method for highly oscillatory problems', *BIT Numer. Math.* **48**, 425–448.

A. Asheim and D. Huybrechs (2010*a*), 'Asymptotic analysis of numerical steepest descent with path approximations', *Found. Comput. Math.* **10**, 647–671.

A. Asheim and D. Huybrechs (2010*b*), 'Local solutions to high frequency 2D scattering problems', *J. Comput. Phys.* **229**, 5357–5372.

K. E. Atkinson (1997), *The Numerical Solution of Integral Equations of the Second Kind*, Cambridge Monographs on Applied and Computational Mathematics, Cambridge University Press.

V. M. Babich and V. S. Buldyrev (1991), *Short-Wavelength Diffraction Theory*, Springer.

V. M. Babich and V. S. Buldyrev (2008), *Asymptotic Methods in Short-Wavelength Diffraction Theory*, Alpha Science Series on Wave Phenomena.

V. M. Babich and N. Y. Kirpichnikova (1979), *The Boundary-Layer Method in Diffraction Problems*, Springer.

I. Babuška and J. M. Melenk (1997), 'The partition of unity method', *Internat. J. Numer. Methods Engng* **40**, 727–758.

I. M. Babuška and S. A. Sauter (2000), 'Is the pollution effect of the FEM avoidable for the Helmholtz equation considering high wave numbers?', *SIAM Review* **42**, 451–484.

N. S. Bakhvalov and L. G. Vasilčeva (1968), 'Evaluation of the integrals of oscillating functions by interpolation at nodes of Gaussian quadrature', *USSR Comp. Math. Phys.* **8**, 241–249.

L. Banjai and W. Hackbusch (2008), 'Hierarchical matrix techniques for low and high frequency Helmholtz equation', *IMA J. Numer. Anal.* **28**, 46–79.

L. Banjai and S. Sauter (2007), 'A refined Galerkin error and stability analysis for highly indefinite variational problems', *SIAM J. Numer. Anal.* **45**, 37–53.

J.-D. Benamou (2003), 'An introduction to Eulerian geometrical optics (1992–2002)', *J. Sci. Comput.* **19**, 63–93.

H. Berestycki and P. L. Lions (1983), 'Nonlinear scalar field equations I: Existence of a ground state', *Arch. Rat. Mech. Anal.* **82**, 313–345.

T. Betcke and E. A. Spence (2011), 'Numerical estimation of coercivity constants for boundary integral operators in acoustic scattering', *SIAM J. Numer. Anal.* **49**, 1572–1601.

T. Betcke, S. N. Chandler-Wilde, I. G. Graham, S. Langdon and M. Lindner (2011), 'Condition number estimates for combined potential boundary integral operators in acoustics and their boundary element discretisation', *Numer. Methods Partial Diff. Equations* **27**, 31–69.

T. Betcke, S. N. Chandler-Wilde, I. G. Graham and S. Langdon (2012*a*), On trapping domains and exponential ill-conditioning in acoustic scattering. In preparation.

T. Betcke, J. Phillips and E. A. Spence (2012*b*), Spectral decompositions and non-normality of boundary integral operators in acoustic scattering. Submitted for publication.

N. Bleistein and R. A. Handelsman (1986), *Asymptotic Expansions of Integrals*, Dover.

E. Bleszynski, M. Bleszynski and T. Jaroszewicz (2004), 'Development of new algorithms for high frequency electromagnetic scattering', *Comput. Model. Engng Sci.* **5**, 295–317.

V. A. Borovikov and B. Y. Kinber (1994), *Geometrical Theory of Diffraction*, Vol. 37 of *IEE Electromagnetic Waves Series*, IEE.

H. Brakhage and P. Werner (1965), 'Über das dirichletsche Aussenraumproblem für die helmholtzsche Schwingungsgleichung', *Archiv Math.* **16**, 325–329.

M. Bronstein and V. Ivrii (2003), 'Sharp spectral asymptotics for operators with irregular coefficients I: Pushing the limits', *Comm. Partial Diff. Equations* **28**, 83–102.

O. P. Bruno and C. A. Geuzaine (2007), 'An $O(1)$ integration scheme for three-dimensional surface scattering problems', *J. Comput. Appl. Math.* **204**, 463–476.

O. P. Bruno and L. A. Kunyansky (2001), 'Surface scattering in three dimensions: an accelerated high-order solver', *Proc. Royal Soc. London* A **457**, 2921–2934.

O. P. Bruno and F. Reitich (2007), High order methods for high-frequency scattering applications. In *Modeling and Computations in Electromagnetics* (H. Ammari, ed.), Springer, pp. 129–164.

O. P. Bruno, V. Domínguez and F. Sayas (2012), Convergence analysis of a high-order Nyström integral-equation method for surface scattering problems. Submitted for publication. Arxiv: 1109.6352.

O. P. Bruno, C. A. Geuzaine, J. A. Monro and F. Reitich (2004), 'Prescribed error tolerances within fixed computational times for scattering problems of arbitrarily high frequency: The convex case', *Phil. Trans. Royal Soc. London* A **362**, 629.

A. Buffa and S. H. Christiansen (2003), 'The electric field integral equation on Lipschitz screens: Definitions and numerical approximation', *Numer. Math.* **94**, 229–267.

A. Buffa and R. Hiptmair (2005), 'A coercive combined field integral equation for electromagnetic scattering', *SIAM J. Numer. Anal.* **42**, 621–640.

A. Buffa and P. Monk (2008), 'Error estimates for the ultra weak variational formulation of the Helmholtz equation', *M2AN: Math. Model. Numer. Anal.* **42**, 925–940.

A. Buffa and S. Sauter (2006), 'On the acoustic single layer potential: Stabilization and Fourier analysis', *SIAM J. Sci. Comput.* **28**, 1974–1999.

W. D. Burnside, C. L. Yu and R. J. Marhefka (1975), 'A technique to combine the geometrical theory of diffraction and the moment method', *IEEE Trans. Antennas Propagat.* **23**, 551–557.

N. Burq (2002), 'Semi-classical estimates for the resolvent in nontrapping geometries', *Internat. Math. Res. Not.* **2002**, 221–241.

A. J. Burton and G. F. Miller (1971), 'The application of integral equation methods to the numerical solution of some exterior boundary-value problems', *Proc. Royal Soc. London* A **323**, 201–210.

V. S. Buslaev (1962), 'Formulas for the short-wave asymptotic behavior in the diffraction problem by convex bodies' (in Russian), *Vestnik Leningrad. Univ.* **17**, 5–21.

V. S. Buslaev (1964), 'Short wave asymptotic behavior in the problem of diffraction by smooth convex contours' (in Russian), *Trudy Matematicheskogo Instituta imeni Steklova* **73**, 14–117.

V. S. Buslaev (1975), 'On the asymptotic behavior of the spectral characteristics of exterior problems for the Schrödinger operator', *Izvestiya Rossiiskoi Akademii Nauk. Seriya Matematicheskaya* **39**, 149–235.

O. Cessenat and B. Després (1998), 'Application of an ultra weak variational formulation of elliptic PDEs to the two-dimensional Helmholtz problem', *SIAM J. Numer. Anal.* **35**, 255–299.

O. Cessenat and B. Després (2003), 'Using plane waves as base functions for solving time harmonic equations with the ultra weak variational formulation', *J. Comput. Acoust.* **11**, 227–238.

G. A. Chandler (1980), Superconvergence for second kind integral equations. In *The Application and Numerical Solution of Integral Equations*, Sijthoff and Nordhoff, pp. 103–117.

S. N. Chandler-Wilde (1988), Ground effects in environmental sound propagation. PhD thesis, University of Bradford.

S. N. Chandler-Wilde and I. G. Graham (2009), Boundary integral methods in high frequency scattering. In *Highly Oscillatory Problems* (B. Engquist, A. Fokas, E. Hairer and A. Iserles, eds), Cambridge University Press.

S. N. Chandler-Wilde and D. P. Hewett (2012), High frequency scattering by screens: Frequency-explicit coercivity estimates. University of Reading preprint MPS-2012-03. Submitted for publication.

S. N. Chandler-Wilde and D. C. Hothersall (1995), 'Efficient calculation of the Green function for acoustic propagation above a homogeneous impedance plane', *J. Sound Vib.* **180**, 705–724.

S. N. Chandler-Wilde and S. Langdon (2007), 'A Galerkin boundary element method for high frequency scattering by convex polygons', *SIAM J. Numer. Anal.* **45**, 610–640.

S. N. Chandler-Wilde and P. Monk (2005), 'Existence, uniqueness, and variational methods for scattering by unbounded rough surfaces', *SIAM J. Math. Anal.* **37**, 598–618.

S. N. Chandler-Wilde and P. Monk (2008), 'Wave-number-explicit bounds in time-harmonic scattering', *SIAM J. Math. Anal.* **39**, 1428–1455.

S. N. Chandler-Wilde and E. A. Spence (2012), Coercive modifications of the double-layer potential operator on Lipschitz domains. In preparation.

S. N. Chandler-Wilde, I. G. Graham, S. Langdon and M. Lindner (2009), 'Condition number estimates for combined potential boundary integral operators in acoustic scattering', *J. Integral Equations Appl.* **21**, 229–279.

S. N. Chandler-Wilde, E. Heinemeyer and R. Potthast (2006), 'A well-posed integral equation formulation for three-dimensional rough surface scattering', *Proc. Royal Soc.* A **462**, 3683–3705.

S. N. Chandler-Wilde, D. P. Hewett, S. Langdon and A. Twigger (2012*a*), A high frequency boundary element method for scattering by a class of non-convex obstacles. University of Reading preprint MPS-2012-04. Submitted for publication.

S. N. Chandler-Wilde, S. Langdon and M. Mokgolele (2012*b*), 'A high frequency boundary element method for scattering by convex polygons with impedance boundary conditions', *Commun. Comput. Phys.* **11**, 573–593.

S. N. Chandler-Wilde, S. Langdon and L. Ritter (2004), 'A high-wavenumber boundary-element method for an acoustic scattering problem', *Phil. Trans. Royal Soc. London* A **362**, 647–671.

S. N. Chandler-Wilde, M. Rahman and C. R. Ross (2002), 'A fast two-grid and finite section method for a class of integral equations on the real line with application to an acoustic scattering problem in the half-plane', *Numer. Math.* **93**, 1–51.

W. C. Chew, J. M. Song, T. J. Cui, S. Velamparambil, M. L. Hastriter and B. Hu (2004), 'Review of large scale computing in electromagnetics with fast integral equation solvers', *Comput. Model. Engng Sci.* **5**, 361–372.

S. H. Christiansen and J. C. Nédélec (2000), 'Preconditioners for the numerical solution of boundary integral equations from electromagnetism', *CR Acad. Sci.* I **331**, 733–738.

P. G. Ciarlet (2002), *The Finite Element Method For Elliptic Problems*, Classics in Applied Mathematics, SIAM.

X. Claeys and H. Haddar (2007), 'Scattering from infinite rough tubular surfaces', *Math. Methods Appl. Sci.* **30**, 389–414.

F. Cobos, D. E. Edmunds and A. J. B. Potter (1990), 'Real interpolation and compact linear operators', *J. Funct. Anal.* **88**, 351–365.

R. R. Coifman, A. McIntosh and Y. Meyer (1982), 'L'intégrale de Cauchy définit un opérateur borné sur L^2 pour les courbes lipschitziennes', *Ann. of Math.* **116**, 361–387.

D. Colton and R. Kress (1998), *Inverse Acoustic and Electromagnetic Scattering Theory*, Springer.

D. L. Colton and R. Kress (1983), *Integral Equation Methods in Scattering Theory*, Wiley.

M. Costabel (1988), 'Boundary integral operators on Lipschitz domains: Elementary results', *SIAM J. Math. Anal.* **19**, 613–626.

M. Costabel (2004), Time-dependent problems with the boundary integral equation method, Chapter 22 of *Encyclopedia of Computational Mechanics*, Wiley.

M. Costabel (2007), Some historical remarks on the positivity of boundary integral operators. In *Boundary Element Analysis* (M. Schanz and O. Steinbach, eds), Vol. 29 of *Lecture Notes in Applied and Computational Mechanics*, Springer, pp. 1–27.

P. Cummings and X. Feng (2006), 'Sharp regularity coefficient estimates for complex-valued acoustic and elastic Helmholtz equations', *Math. Models Methods Appl. Sci.* **16**, 139.

E. Darrigrand (2002), 'Coupling of fast multipole method and microlocal discretization for the 3-D Helmholtz equation', *J. Comput. Phys.* **181**, 126–154.

E. Darve and P. Havé (2004), 'A fast multipole method for Maxwell equations stable at all frequencies', *Phil. Trans. Royal Soc. London* A **362**, 603–628.

C. P. Davis and W. C. Chew (2008), 'Frequency-independent scattering from a flat strip with TE_z-polarized fields', *IEEE Trans. Antennas Propagat.* **56**, 1008–1016.

A. de La Bourdonnaye (1994), 'A microlocal discretization method and its utilization for a scattering problem', *CR Acad. Sci.* I **318**, 385–388.
A. de La Bourdonnaye and M. Tolentino (2004), 'Reducing the condition number for microlocal discretization problems', *Phil. Trans. Royal Soc. London* A **362**, 541–559.
A. Deaño and D. Huybrechs (2009), 'Complex Gaussian quadrature of oscillatory integrals', *Numer. Math.* **112**, 197–219.
G. H. Derrick (1964), 'Comments on nonlinear wave equations as models for elementary particles', *J. Math. Phys.* **5**, 1252–1254.
M. Djordjević and B. M. Notaroš (2005), 'Higher order hybrid method of moments-physical optics modeling technique for radiation and scattering from large perfectly conducting surfaces', *IEEE Trans. Antennas Propagat.* **53**, 800–813.
V. Domínguez (2007), private communication.
V. Domínguez (2009), Modified Clenshaw Curtis rule package for a class of highly oscillatory integrals.
http://www.unavarra.es/personal/victor_dominguez/clenshawcurtisrule
V. Domínguez, I. G. Graham and T. Kim (2012), Filon–Clenshaw–Curtis rules for highly oscillatory integrals with algebraic singularities and stationary points. In preparation.
V. Domínguez, I. G. Graham and V. P. Smyshlyaev (2007), 'A hybrid numerical-asymptotic boundary integral method for high-frequency acoustic scattering', *Numer. Math.* **106**, 471–510.
V. Domínguez, I. G. Graham and V. P. Smyshlyaev (2011), 'Stability and error estimates for Filon–Clenshaw–Curtis rules for highly-oscillatory integrals', *IMA J. Numer. Anal.* **31**, 1253–1280.
V. Domínguez, I. G. Graham, T. Kim and V. P. Smyshlyaev (2009), 'Recent progress on hybrid numerical asymptotic boundary integral methods for high-frequency scattering problems', *Proc. UKBIM7* (H. Power, A. La Rocca and S. T. Baker, eds), Faculty of Engineering, University of Nottingham, pp. 15–23.
K. C. Donepudi, J. M. Jin and W. C. Chew (2003), 'A grid-robust higher-order multilevel fast multipole algorithm for analysis of 3-D scatterers', *Electromagnetics* **23**, 315–330.
F. Ecevit (2005), Integral equation formulations of electromagnetic and acoustic scattering problems: High-frequency asymptotic expansions and convergence of multiple scattering iterations. PhD thesis, University of Minnesota.
F. Ecevit and F. Reitich (2009), 'Analysis of multiple scattering iterations for high-frequency scattering problems I: The two-dimensional case', *Numer. Math.* **114**, 271–354.
J. Elschner (1992), 'The double layer potential operator over polyhedral domains I: Solvability in weighted Sobolev spaces', *Appl. Anal.* **45**, 117–134.
S. Engleder and O. Steinbach (2007), 'Modified boundary integral formulations for the Helmholtz equation', *J. Math. Anal. Appl.* **331**, 396–407.
S. Engleder and O. Steinbach (2008), 'Stabilized boundary element methods for exterior Helmholtz problems', *Numer. Math.* **110**, 145–160.
B. Engquist and O. Runborg (2003), Computational high frequency wave propagation. In *Acta Numerica*, Vol. 12, Cambridge University Press, pp. 181–266.

B. Engquist and L. Ying (2007), 'Fast directional multilevel algorithms for oscillatory kernels', *SIAM J. Sci. Comput.* **29**, 1710–1737.

B. Engquist and L. Ying (2012), Fast algorithms for high frequency wave propagation. In *Numerical Analysis of Multiscale Problems* (I. G. Graham, T. Y. Hou, O. Lakkis and R. Scheichl, eds), Vol. 83 of *Lecture Notes in Computational Science and Engineering*, Springer, pp. 127–161.

Y. A. Erlangga, C. W. Oosterlee and C. Vuik (2006), 'A novel multigrid based precconditioner for heterogeneous Helmholtz problems', *SIAM J. Sci. Comput.* **27**, 1471–1492.

O. G. Ernst and M. J. Gander (2012), Why it is difficult to solve Helmholtz problems with classical iterative methods. In *Numerical Analysis of Multiscale Problems* (I. G. Graham, T. Y. Hou, O. Lakkis and R. Scheichl, eds), Vol. 83 of *Lecture Notes in Computational Science and Engineering*, Springer, pp. 325–363.

S. Esterhazy and J. M. Melenk (2012), On stability of discretizations of the Helmholtz equation. In *Numerical Analysis of Multiscale Problems* (I. G. Graham, T. Y. Hou, O. Lakkis and R. Scheichl, eds), Vol. 83 of *Lecture Notes in Computational Science and Engineering*, Springer, pp. 285–324.

G. A. Evans and J. R. Webster (1999), 'A comparison of some methods for the evaluation of highly oscillatory integrals', *J. Comput. Appl. Math.* **112**, 55–69.

L. C. Evans (1998), *Partial Differential Equations*, AMS.

E. B. Fabes, M. Jodeit and N. M. Riviere (1978), 'Potential techniques for boundary value problems on C^1 domains', *Acta Mathematica* **141**, 165–186.

C. Farhat, A. Macedo and M. Lesoinne (2000), 'A two-level domain decomposition method for the iterative solution of high frequency exterior Helmholtz problems', *Numer. Math.* **85**, 283–308.

V. Filippov (1976), 'Rigorous justification of the shortwave asymptotic theory of diffraction in the shadow zone', *J. Sov. Math.* **6**, 577–626.

L. N. G. Filon (1928), 'On a quadrature formula for trigonometric integrals', *Proc. Royal Soc. Edinburgh* **49**, 38–47.

V. A. Fock (1965), *Electromagnetic Diffraction and Propagation Problems*, Vol. 1, Pergamon Press.

M. Ganesh and I. G. Graham (2004), 'A high-order algorithm for obstacle scattering in three dimensions', *J. Comput. Phys.* **198**, 211–242.

M. Ganesh and S. Hawkins (2011), 'A fully discrete Galerkin method for high frequency exterior acoustic scattering in three dimensions', *J. Comput. Phys.* **230**, 104–125.

M. Ganesh, I. G. Graham and J. Sivaloganathan (1998), 'A new spectral boundary integral collocation method for three-dimensional potential problems', *SIAM J. Numer. Anal.* **35**, 778–805.

M. Ganesh, S. Langdon and I. H. Sloan (2007), 'Efficient evaluation of highly oscillatory acoustic scattering surface integrals', *J. Comput. Appl. Math.* **204**, 363–374.

P. Gérard and G. Lebeau (1993), 'Diffusion d'une onde par un coin', *J. Amer. Math. Soc.* **6**, 341–424.

C. Geuzaine, O. Bruno and F. Reitich (2005), 'On the $O(1)$ solution of multiple-scattering problems', *IEEE Trans. Magnetics* **41**, 1488–1491.

K. Giebermann (1997), Schnelle Summationsverfahren zur numerischen Lösung von Integralgleichungen für Streuprobleme im $\mathbb{R}^3$. PhD thesis, University of Karlsruhe.

E. Giladi (2007), 'Asymptotically derived boundary elements for the Helmholtz equation in high frequencies', *J. Comput. Appl. Math.* **198**, 52–74.

E. Giladi and J. B. Keller (2001), 'A hybrid numerical asymptotic method for scattering problems', *J. Comput. Phys.* **174**, 226–247.

E. Giladi and J. B. Keller (2004), An asymptotically derived boundary element method for the Helmholtz equations. In *Proc. 20th Annual Review of Progress in Applied Computational Electromagnetics*, Applied Computational Electromagnetics Society, USA.

C. J. Gittelson, R. Hiptmair and I. Perugia (2009), 'Plane wave discontinuous Galerkin methods: Analysis of the h-version', *M2AN: Math. Model. Numer. Anal.* **43**, 297–331.

I. G. Graham and I. H. Sloan (2002), 'Fully discrete spectral boundary integral methods for Helmholtz problems on smooth closed surfaces in $\mathbb{R}^3$', *Numer. Math.* **92**, 289–323.

I. G. Graham, M. Löhndorf, J. M. Melenk and E. A. Spence (2012), Wavenumber explicit h-BEM for high frequency scattering. In preparation.

P. Grisvard (1985), *Elliptic Problems in Nonsmooth Domains*, Vol. 24, Pitman.

K. E. Gustafson and D. K. M. Rao (1997), *Numerical Range: The Field of Values of Linear Operators and Matrices*, Universitext, Springer.

T. Ha-Duong (1990), 'On the transient acoustic scattering by a flat object', *Japan J. Appl. Math.* **7**, 489–513.

T. Ha-Duong (1992), 'On the boundary integral equations for the crack opening displacement of flat cracks', *Integral Equations and Operator Theory* **15**, 427–453.

T. Ha-Duong (2003), On retarded potential boundary integral equations and their discretisation. In *Topics in Computational Wave Propagation*, Vol. 31 of *Lecture Notes in Computational Science and Engineering*, Springer, pp. 301–336.

H. Haddar and A. Lechleiter (2011), 'Electromagnetic wave scattering from rough penetrable layers', *SIAM J. Math. Anal.* **43**, 2418–2443.

T. Harge and G. Lebeau (1994), 'Diffraction par un convexe', *Invent. Math.* **118**, 161–196.

P. J. Harris and K. Chen (2003), 'On efficient preconditioners for iterative solution of a Galerkin boundary element equation for the three-dimensional exterior Helmholtz problem', *J. Comput. Appl. Math.* **156**, 303–318.

U. Hetmaniuk (2007), 'Stability estimates for a class of Helmholtz problems', *Commun. Math. Sci.* **5**, 665–678.

D. P. Hewett, S. Langdon and J. M. Melenk (2012), A high frequency hp boundary element method for scattering by convex polygons. University of Reading preprint MPS-2011-18. Submitted for publication.

L. Hillairet (2005), 'Contribution of periodic diffractive geodesics', *J. Funct. Anal.* **226**, 48–89.

R. Hiptmair, A. Moiola and I. Perugia (2011*a*), 'Plane wave discontinuous Galerkin methods for the 2D Helmholtz equation: Analysis of the p-version', *SIAM J. Numer. Anal.* **49**, 264–284.

R. Hiptmair, A. Moiola and I. Perugia (2011*b*), 'Stability results for the time-harmonic Maxwell equations with impedance boundary conditions', *Math. Mod. Methods Appl. Sci.* **21**, 2263–2287.

M. E. Honnor, J. Trevelyan and D. Huybrechs (2010), 'Numerical evaluation of the two-dimensional partition of unity boundary integrals for Helmholtz problems', *J. Comput. Appl. Math.* **234**, 1656–1662.

L. Hörmander (1954), Uniqueness theorems and estimates for normally hyperbolic partial differential equations of the second order. In *Tolfte Skandinaviska Matematikerkongressen*, Lunds Universitets Matematiska Institution, pp. 105–115.

L. Hörmander (1983*a*), *The Analysis of Linear Partial Differential Operators I: Distribution Theory and Fourier Analysis*, Springer.

L. Hörmander (1983*b*), *The Analysis of Linear Partial Differential Operators II: Differential Operators With Constant Coefficients*, Springer.

L. Hörmander (1985*a*), *The Analysis of Linear Partial Differential Operators III: Pseudo-Differential Operators*, Springer.

L. Hörmander (1985*b*), *The Analysis of Linear Partial Differential Operators IV: Fourier Integral Operators*, Springer.

T. Huttunen, P. Monk and J. P. Kaipio (2002), 'Computational aspects of the ultra-weak variational formulation', *J. Comput. Phys.* **182**, 27–46.

D. Huybrechs and S. Olver (2009), Highly oscillatory quadrature. In *Highly Oscillatory Problems* (B. Engquist, A. Fokas, E. Hairer and A. Iserles, eds), Cambridge University Press.

D. Huybrechs and S. Olver (2012), 'Superinterpolation in highly oscillatory quadrature', *Found. Comput. Math.* **12**, 203–228.

D. Huybrechs and S. Vandewalle (2006), 'On the evaluation of highly oscillatory integrals by analytic continuation', *SIAM J. Numer. Anal.* **44**, 1026–1048.

D. Huybrechs and S. Vandewalle (2007*a*), 'The construction of cubature rules for multivariate highly oscillatory integrals', *Math. Comp.* **76**, 1955–1980.

D. Huybrechs and S. Vandewalle (2007*b*), 'A sparse discretization for integral equation formulations of high frequency scattering problems', *SIAM J. Sci. Comput.* **29**, 2305–2328.

M. Ikawa (1983), 'On the poles of the scattering matrix for two strictly convex obstacles', *J. Math. Kyoto Univ* **23**, 127–194.

A. Iserles (2004), 'On the numerical quadrature of highly-oscillating integrals I: Fourier transforms', *IMA J. Numer. Anal.* **24**, 365–391.

A. Iserles (2005), 'On the numerical quadrature of highly-oscillating integrals II: Irregular oscillators', *IMA J. Numer. Anal.* **25**, 25–44.

A. Iserles and S. Nørsett (2004), 'On quadrature methods for highly oscillatory integrals and their implementation', *BIT* **44**, 755–772.

A. Iserles and S. P. Nørsett (2005), 'Efficient quadrature of highly oscillatory integrals using derivatives', *Proc. Royal Soc. London* A **461**, 1383–1399.

A. Iserles and S. P. Nørsett (2006), 'Quadrature methods for multivariate highly oscillatory integrals using derivatives', *Math. Comp.* **75**, 1233–1258.

A. Iserles, S. P. Nørsett and S. Olver (2005), Highly-oscillatory quadrature: The story so far. In *Proc. ENuMath, Santiago de Compostela* (A. Bermudez de Castro *et al.*, eds), Springer, pp. 97–118.

V. Ivrii (2003), 'Sharp spectral asymptotics for operators with irregular coefficients II: Domains with boundaries and degenerations', *Comm. Partial Diff. Equations* **28**, 103–128.

R. M. James (1990), 'A contribution to scattering calculation for small wavelengths: The high frequency panel method', *IEEE Trans. Antennas Propagat.* **38**, 1625–1630.

D. Jerison and C. E. Kenig (1995), 'The inhomogeneous Dirichlet problem in Lipschitz domains', *J. Funct. Anal.* **130**, 161–219.

D. S. Jones (1972), 'Asymptotic behavior of integrals', *SIAM Rev.* **14**, 286–317.

K. Jörgens (1982), *Linear Integral Operators*, Pitman

T. Kato (1995), *Perturbation Theory for Linear Operators*, corrected printing of second edition, Springer.

J. B. Keller (1962), 'Geometrical theory of diffraction', *J. Optical Soc. Amer.* A **52**, 116–130.

C. E. Kenig (1994), *Harmonic Analysis Techniques for Second Order Elliptic Boundary Value Problems*, AMS.

T. Kim (2012), Asymptotic and numerical methods in high frequency scattering. PhD thesis, University of Bath.

A. Kirsch (1989), 'Surface gradients and continuity properties for some integral operators in classical scattering theory', *Math. Methods Appl. Sci.* **11**, 789–804.

R. Kress (1985), 'Minimizing the condition number of boundary integral operators in acoustic and electromagnetic scattering', *Quart. J. Mech. Appl. Math.* **38**, 323–341.

R. Kress and W. T. Spassov (1983), 'On the condition number of boundary integral operators in acoustic and electromagnetic scattering', *Numer. Math.* **42**, 77–95.

O. Laghrouche, P. Bettess and R. J. Astley (2002), 'Modelling of short wave diffraction problems using approximating systems of plane waves', *Internat. J. Numer. Meth. Engng* **54**, 1501–1533.

O. Laghrouche, P. Bettess, E. Perrey-Debain and J. Trevelyan (2005), 'Wave interpolation finite elements for Helmholtz problems with jumps in the wave speed', *Comput. Meth. Appl. Mech. Engng* **194**, 367–381.

E. Lakshtanov and B. Vainberg (2012), 'A priori estimates for high frequency scattering by obstacles of arbitrary shape', *Comm. Partial Diff. Equations*, to appear.

S. Langdon and S. N. Chandler-Wilde (2003*a*), A Galerkin boundary element method for an acoustic scattering problem, with convergence rate independent of frequency. In *Proc. 4th UK Conference on Boundary Integral Methods* (S. Amini, ed.), Salford University Press, pp. 67–76.

S. Langdon and S. N. Chandler-Wilde (2003*b*), 'A GTD-based boundary element method for a surface scattering problem', *Proc. Institute Acoustics* **25**, 224–233.

S. Langdon and S. N. Chandler-Wilde (2006), 'A wavenumber independent boundary element method for an acoustic scattering problem', *SIAM J. Numer. Anal.* **43**, 2450–2477.

S. Langdon, M. Mokgolele and S. N. Chandler-Wilde (2010), 'High frequency scattering by convex curvilinear polygons', *J. Comput. Appl. Math.* **234**, 2020–2026.

P. D. Lax and R. S. Phillips (1989), *Scattering Theory*, Vol. 26 of *Pure and Applied Mathematics*, second edition, Academic Press.

V. Lazutkin (1999), Semiclassical asymptotics of eigenfunctions. In *Partial Differential Equations V*, Vol. 34 of *Encyclopedia of Mathematical Sciences*, Springer.

G. Lebeau (1984), 'Régularité Gevrey 3 pour la diffraction', *Comm. Partial Diff. Equations* **9**, 1437–1494.

A. Lechleiter and S. Ritterbusch (2010), 'A variational method for wave scattering from penetrable rough layers', *IMA J. Appl. Math.* **75**, 366–391.

R. Leis (1965), 'Zur dirichletschen Randwertaufgabe des Außenraumes der Schwingungsgleichung', *Math. Z.* **90**, 205– 211.

C. Liu (1995), The Helmholtz equation on Lipschitz domains. IMA Preprint Series No. 1356, Institute of Mathematics and its Applications, Minnesota.

I. Livschits and A. Brandt (2006), 'Accuracy properties of the wave-ray multigrid algorithm for Helmholtz problems', *SIAM J. Sci. Comput.* **28**, 1228–1251.

M. Löhndorf and J. M. Melenk (2011), 'Wavenumber-explicit *hp*-BEM for high frequency scattering', *SIAM J. Numer. Anal.* **49**, 2340–2363.

D. Ludwig (1967), 'Uniform asymptotic expansion of the field scattered by a convex object at high frequencies', *Comm. Pure Appl. Math.* **20**, 103–138.

Y. L. Luke (1954), 'On the computation of oscillatory integrals', *Math. Proc. Cambridge Phil. Soc.* **50**, 269–277.

T. Luostari, T. Huttunen and P. Monk (2009), Plane wave methods for approximating the time harmonic wave equation. In *Highly Oscillatory Problems: Computation, Theory and Applications* (B. Engquist, A. Fokas, E. Hairer and A. Iserles, eds), Cambridge University Press.

C. H. Makridakis, F. Ihlenburg and I. Babuška (1996), 'Analysis and finite element methods for a fluid–solid interaction problem in one dimension', *Math. Models Methods Appl. Sci.* **6**, 1119–1141.

W. C. H. McLean (2000), *Strongly Elliptic Systems and Boundary Integral Equations*, Cambridge University Press.

J. M. Melenk (1995), On generalized finite element methods. PhD thesis, The University of Maryland.

J. M. Melenk (2006), private communication.

J. M. Melenk (2008), On the convergence of Filon quadrature. ASC Report 08/2008, Institute for Analysis and Scientific Computing, TU Wien.

J. M. Melenk (2010), 'On the convergence of Filon quadrature', *J. Comput. Appl. Math.* **234**, 1692–1701.

J. M. Melenk (2012), 'Mapping properties of combined field Helmholtz boundary integral operators', *SIAM J. Math. Anal.*, to appear.

J. M. Melenk and I. Babuška (1996), 'The partition of unity finite element method: Basic theory and applications', *Comput. Meth. Appl. Math.* **139**, 289–314.

J. M. Melenk and S. Langdon (2007), An *hp*-BEM for high frequency scattering by convex polygons. In *Proc. WAVES2007*, University of Reading, pp. 93–95.

J. M. Melenk and S. Langdon (2012), A fully discrete *hp* boundary element method for high frequency scattering by convex polygons. In preparation.
J. M. Melenk and S. Sauter (2010), 'Convergence analysis for finite element discretizations of the Helmholtz equation with Dirichlet-to-Neumann boundary conditions', *Math. Comp.* **79**, 1871–1914.
J. M. Melenk and S. Sauter (2011), 'Wavenumber explicit convergence analysis for Galerkin discretizations of the Helmholtz equation', *SIAM J. Numer. Anal.* **49**, 1210–1243.
R. Melrose (1979), 'Singularities and energy decay in acoustical scattering', *Duke Math. J.* **46**, 43–59.
R. B. Melrose (1995), *Geometric Scattering Theory*, Stanford Lectures, Cambridge University Press.
R. Melrose and J. Sjöstrand (1978), 'Singularities of boundary value problems I', *Comm. Pure Appl. Math.* **31**, 593–617.
R. Melrose and J. Sjöstrand (1982), 'Singularities of boundary value problems II', *Comm. Pure Appl. Math.* **35**, 129–168.
R. B. Melrose and M. E. Taylor (1985), 'Near peak scattering and the corrected Kirchhoff approximation for a convex obstacle', *Adv. Math.* **55**, 242–315.
R. Melrose, A. Vasy and J. Wunsch (2008), 'Propagation of singularities for the wave equation on edge manifolds', *Duke Math. J.* **144**, 109–193.
R. Melrose, A. Vasy and J. Wunsch (2012), 'Diffraction of singularities for the wave equation on manifolds with corners', *Astérisque*, to appear.
Y. Meyer and R. Coifman (2000), *Wavelets: Calderón–Zygmund and Multilinear Operators*, Cambridge University Press.
M. Mitrea (1996), 'Boundary value problems and Hardy spaces associated to the Helmholtz equation in Lipschitz domains', *J. Math. Anal. Appl.* **202**, 819–842.
D. Mitrea, M. Mitrea and M. Taylor (2001), *Layer Potentials, the Hodge Laplacian, and Global Boundary Problems in Nonsmooth Riemannian Manifolds*, Vol. 150, no. 713 of *Memoirs of the American Mathematical Society*.
P. Monk (2003), *Finite Element Methods for Maxwell's Equations*, Clarendon Press.
P. Monk and D.-Q. Wang (1999), 'A least-squares method for the Helmholtz equation', *Comput. Meth. Appl. Mech. Engng* **175**, 121–136.
C. S. Morawetz (1961), 'The decay of solutions of the exterior initial-boundary value problem for the wave equation', *Comm. Pure Appl. Math.* **14**, 561–568.
C. S. Morawetz (1968), 'Time decay for the nonlinear Klein–Gordon equation', *Proc. Royal Soc. London* A **306**, 291–296.
C. S. Morawetz (1975*a*), 'Decay for solutions of the exterior problem for the wave equation', *Comm. Pure Appl. Math.* **28**, 229–264.
C. S. Morawetz (1975*b*), *Notes on Time Decay and Scattering for Some Hyperbolic Problems*, Vol. 19 of *Regional Conference Series in Applied Mathematics*, SIAM.
C. S. Morawetz and D. Ludwig (1968), 'An inequality for the reduced wave operator and the justification of geometrical optics', *Comm. Pure Appl. Math.* **21**, 187–203.
C. S. Morawetz, J. V. Ralston and W. A. Strauss (1977), 'Decay of solutions of the wave equation outside nontrapping obstacles', *Comm. Pure Appl. Math.* **30**, 447–508.

M. Motamed and O. Runborg (2009), Approximation of high frequency wave propagation problems. In *Highly Oscillatory Problems: Computation, Theory and Applications* (B. Engquist, A. Fokas, E. Hairer and A. Iserles, eds), Cambridge University Press.

J. Nečas (1967), *Les Méthodes Directes en Théorie des Équations Elliptiques*, Masson.

J. C. Nédélec (2001), *Acoustic and Electromagnetic Equations: Integral Representations for Harmonic Problems*, Springer.

F. Oberhettinger and L. Badii (1973), *Tables of Laplace Transforms*, Springer.

F. J. W. Olver (1974), *Asymptotics and Special Functions*, Computer Science and Applied Mathematics, Academic Press.

P. J. Olver (1993), *Applications of Lie Groups to Differential Equations*, second edition, Springer.

S. Olver (2007), 'Moment-free numerical approximation of highly oscillatory integrals with stationary points', *Eur. J. Appl. Math.* **18**, 435–447.

S. Olver (2010), 'Fast, numerically stable computation of oscillatory integrals with stationary points', *BIT Numer. Math.* **50**, 149–171.

O. Osipov, K. Hongo and H. Kobayashi (2002), 'High-frequency approximations for electromagnetic field near a face of an impedance wedge', *IEEE Trans. Antennas Propagat.* **50**, 930–940.

O. I. Panič (1965), 'On the solubility of exterior boundary-value problems for the wave equation and for a system of Maxwell's equations' (in Russian), *Uspehi Mat. Nauk* **20**, 221–226.

L. E. Payne and H. F. Weinberger (1955), 'New bounds in harmonic and biharmonic problems', *J. Math. Phys.* **33**, 291–307.

L. E. Payne and H. F. Weinberger (1958), 'New bounds for solutions of second order elliptic partial differential equations', *Pacific J. Math.* **8**, 551–573.

E. Perrey-Debain, O. Laghrouche, P. Bettess and J. Trevelyan (2004), 'Plane-wave basis finite elements and boundary elements for three-dimensional wave scattering', *Phil. Trans. Royal Soc. London* A **362**, 561–577.

E. Perrey-Debain, J. Trevelyan and P. Bettess (2003*a*), 'Plane wave interpolation in direct collocation boundary element method for radiation and wave scattering: numerical aspects and applications', *J. Sound Vib.* **261**, 839–858.

E. Perrey-Debain, J. Trevelyan and P. Bettess (2003*b*), 'Use of wave boundary elements for acoustic computations', *J. Comput. Acoust.* **11**, 305–321.

E. Perrey-Debain, J. Trevelyan and P. Bettess (2005), 'On wave boundary elements for radiation and scattering problems with piecewise constant impedance', *IEEE Trans. Antennas Propagat.* **53**, 876–879.

B. Perthame and L. Vega (1999), 'Morrey–Campanato estimates for Helmholtz equations', *J. Funct. Anal.* **164**, 340–355.

S. I. Pohozaev (1965), 'Eigenfunctions of the equation $\Delta u + \lambda f(u) = 0$', *Soviet Math. Dokl.* **6**, 1408–1411.

G. Popov (1987), 'Some estimates of Green's functions in the shadow', *Osaka J. Math.* **24**, 1–12.

S. Prössdorf and B. Silbermann (1991), *Numerical Analysis for Integral and Related Operator Equations*, Birkhäuser.

H. Rademacher (1919), 'Über partielle und totale Differenzierbarkeit von Funktionen mehrer Variabeln und über die Transformation der Doppelintegrale (in German)', *Math. Ann.* **79**, 340–359.

F. Rellich (1940), 'Darstellung der Eigenwerte von $\Delta u + \lambda u = 0$ durch ein Randintegral', *Math. Z.* **46**, 635–636.

G. J. Rodin and O. Steinbach (2003), 'Boundary element preconditioners for problems defined on slender domains', *SIAM J. Sci. Comput.* **24**, 1450–1464.

V. Rokhlin (1990), 'Rapid solution of integral equations of scattering theory in two dimensions', *J. Comput. Phys.* **86**, 414–439.

S. A. Sauter and C. Schwab (2011), *Boundary Element Methods*, Springer.

V. Y. Shelepov (1969), 'The index of an integral operator of potential type in the space L_p', *Soviet Math. Dokl.* **10**, 754–757.

E. A. Spence (2012), Wave-number-explicit bounds in time harmonic scattering. In preparation.

E. A. Spence, S. N. Chandler-Wilde, I. G. Graham and V. P. Smyshlyaev (2011), 'A new frequency-uniform coercive boundary integral equation for acoustic scattering', *Comm. Pure Appl. Math.* **64**, 1384–1415.

E. A. Spence, I. V. Kamotski and V. P. Smyshlyaev (2012), Coercivity of combined boundary integral equations in high frequency scattering. In preparation.

P. Stefanov (1999), 'Quasimodes and resonances: Sharp lower bounds', *Duke Math. J.* **99**, 75–92.

P. Stefanov (2003), 'Sharp upper bounds on the number of resonances near the real axis for trapping systems', *Amer. J. Math.* **125**, 183–224.

P. Stefanov and G. Vodev (1995), 'Distribution of resonances for the Neumann problem in linear elasticity outside a strictly convex body', *Duke Math. J.* **78**, 677–714.

P. Stefanov and G. Vodev (1996), 'Neumann resonances in linear elasticity for an arbitrary body', *Commun. Math. Phys.* **176**, 645–659.

E. M. Stein (1993), *Harmonic Analysis: Real-Variable Methods, Orthogonality, and Oscillatory Integrals*, Princeton University Press.

E. M. Stein and G. Weiss (1971), *Introduction to Fourier Analysis on Euclidean Spaces*, Princeton University Press.

O. Steinbach (2008), *Numerical Approximation Methods for Elliptic Boundary Value Problems: Finite and Boundary Elements*, Springer.

O. Steinbach and W. L. Wendland (2001), 'On C. Neumann's method for second-order elliptic systems in domains with non-smooth boundaries', *J. Math. Anal. Appl.* **262**, 733–748.

O. Steinbach and M. Windisch (2011), 'Stable boundary element domain decomposition methods for the Helmholtz equation', *Numer. Math.* **118**, 171–195.

E. P. Stephan (1987), 'Boundary integral equations for screen problems in R^3', *Integral Equations and Operator Theory* **10**, 236–257.

E. P. Stephan and W. L. Wendland (1984), 'An augmented Galerkin procedure for the boundary integral method applied to two-dimensional screen and crack problems', *Appl. Anal.* **18**, 183–219.

W. A. Strauss (1975), 'Dispersal of waves vanishing on the boundary of an exterior domain', *Comm. Pure Appl. Math.* **28**, 265–278.

S. H. Tang and M. Zworski (1998), 'From quasimodes to resonances', *Math. Res. Lett.* **5**, 261–272.

G. Taraldsen and H. Jonasson (2011), 'Aspects of ground effect modelling', *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* **129**, 47–53.

M. E. Taylor (1976), 'Grazing rays and reflection of singularities of solutions to wave equations', *Comm. Pure Appl. Math.* **29**, 1–38.

M. E. Taylor (2000), *Tools for PDE: Pseudodifferential Operators, Paradifferential Operators, and Layer Potentials*, AMS.

G. A. Thiele and T. H. Newhouse (1975), 'A hybrid technique for combining moment methods with the geometrical theory of diffraction', *IEEE Trans. Antennas Propagat.* **23**, 62–69.

R. H. Torres and G. V. Welland (1993), 'The Helmholtz equation and transmission problems with Lipschitz interfaces', *Indiana Univ. Math. J.* **42**, 1457–1485.

L. N. Trefethen and M. Embree (2005), *Spectra and Pseudospectra*, Princeton University Press.

J. Trevelyan and M. E. Honnor (2009), 'A numerical coordinate transformation for efficient evaluation of oscillatory integrals over wave boundary elements', *J. Integral Equations Appl.* **21**, 447–468.

J. Trevelyan, M. Honnor and D. Huybrechs (2007), 'Numerical steepest descent evaluation of 2D partition of unity boundary integrals for Helmholtz problems', *Oberwolfach Reports* **4**, 354–357.

R. J. Uncles (1976), 'Numerical solution of acoustic scattering problems at intermediate frequencies', *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* **60**, 266–267.

F. Ursell (1968), 'Creeping modes in a shadow', *Proc. Cambridge Philos. Soc.* **64**, 171–191.

B. R. Vainberg (1975), 'On the short wave asymptotic behaviour of solutions of stationary problems and the asymptotic behaviour as $t \to \infty$ of solutions of non-stationary problems', *Russian Math. Surveys* **30**, 1–58.

B. R. Vainberg (1989), *Asymptotic Methods in Equations of Mathematical Physics* (E. Primrose, trans.), Gordon & Breach Science Publishers.

B. R. Vainberg (1999), Asymptotic expansion as $t \to \infty$ of the solutions of exterior boundary value problems for hyperbolic equations and quasiclassical approximations. In *Partial Differential Equations V*, Vol. 34 of *Encyclopedia of Mathematical Sciences*, Springer.

G. Verchota (1984), 'Layer potentials and regularity for the Dirichlet problem for Laplace's equation in Lipschitz domains', *J. Funct. Anal.* **59**, 572–611.

D.-S. Wang (1991), 'Current-based hybrid analysis for surface-wave effects on large scatterers', *IEEE Trans. Antennas Propagat.* **39**, 839–850.

K. F. Warnick and W. C. Chew (1999), 'Convergence of moment-method solutions of the electric field integral equation for a 2-D open cavity', *Microwave and Optical Technology Lett.* **23**, 212–218.

K. F. Warnick and W. C. Chew (2001), 'On the spectrum of the electric field integral equation and the convergence of the moment method', *Internat. J. Numer. Methods Engng* **51**, 31–56.

K. F. Warnick and W. C. Chew (2004), 'Error analysis of the moment method', *IEEE Antennas and Propagation Magazine* **46**, 38–53.

W. L. Wendland (2009), On the double layer potential. In *Analysis, Partial Differential Equations and Applications* (A. Cialdea *et al.*, eds), Birkhäuser, pp. 319–334.

L. Wienert (1990), Die Numerische Approximation von Randintegraloperatoren für die Helmholtzgleichung im $\mathbb{R}^3$. PhD thesis, University of Göttingen.

R. Wong (1989), *Asymptotic Approximation of Integrals*, Vol. 34 of *Classics in Applied Mathematics*, SIAM.

S. Xiang (2007), 'Efficient Filon-type methods for $\int_a^b f(x)\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega g(x)}\,\mathrm{d}x$', *Numer. Math.* **105**, 633–658.

A. Zayaev and V. Filippov (1985), 'Rigorous justification of the asymptotic solutions of sliding wave type', *J. Math. Sci.* **30**, 2395–2406.

A. Zayaev and V. Filippov (1986), 'Rigorous justification of the Friedlander–Keller formulas', *J. Math. Sci.* **32**, 134–143.

Y. Zhang, X.-W. Zhao, D. G. Doñoro, S.-W. Ting and T. K. Sarkar (2010), 'Parallelized hybrid method with higher-order MoM and PO for analysis of phased array antennas on electrically large platforms', *IEEE Trans. Antennas Propagat.* **58**, 4110–4115.

B. Zhou (1995), Méthode des équations intégrales pour la résolution des problèmes de diffraction à haut fréquence. PhD thesis, Université de Paris XI.

M. Zworski (1999), 'Resonances in physics and geometry', *Notices Amer. Math. Soc.* **46**, 319–328.